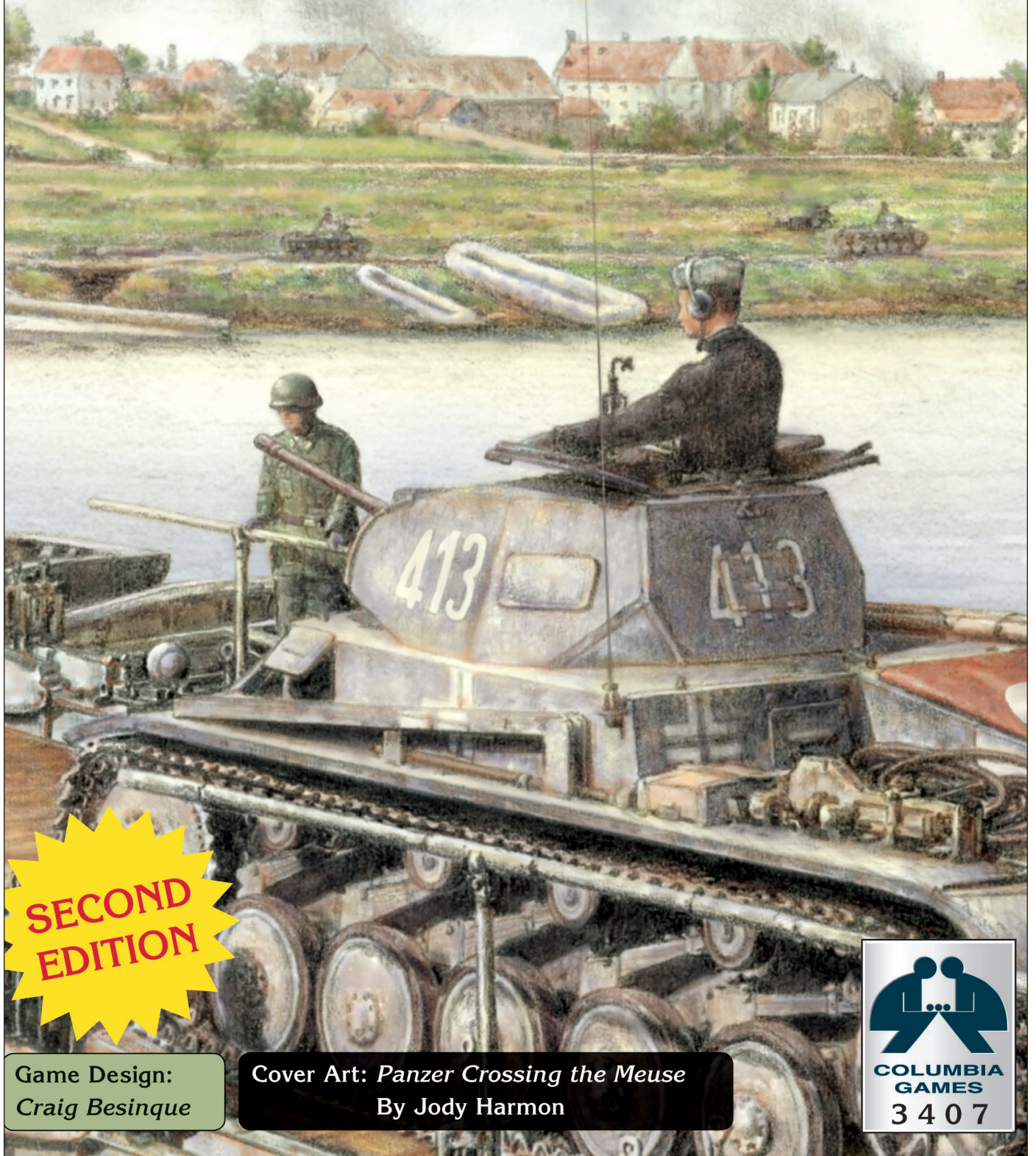


EuroFront™

The War in Europe 1936-45



**SECOND
EDITION**

Game Design:
Craig Besinque

Cover Art: *Panzer Crossing the Meuse*
By Jody Harmon



EuroFront

The War in Europe, 1936-45

Game Design

Craig Besinque

Graphics

Craig Besinque

Tom Dalgliesh

Cover Art

Jody Harmon

Major Contributors

Alex Aminoff

Grant Dalgliesh

Steven Goodman

Ron Hodwitz

Dave Lockwood

Pete Menconi

Tom Oleson

J.V. Pumphrey

David Robert

Contributors

Alex Besinque

Borger Borgerson

Tom Dalgliesh

Ken Hole

Robert Holzer

Mike Hoyt

Jerry Marty

Jay Muchnij

Chris Provenzano

Dieter Schlaepfer

Cal Stengel

Adrian Davis

v1.16

© 1992, 1995, 2006, 2014 Craig Besinque

EuroFront is a trademark of Columbia Games Inc.



COLUMBIA GAMES INC

POB 3457, Blaine, WA 98231, U.S.A.

www.columbiagames.com

1.0 THE MAP

1.1 The Maps	8
1.2 Hexes	8
1.3 Terrain	8
1.4 Cities	9
1.5 Resources	9
1.6 Railroads.....	10
1.7 National Territory	10
1.8 Zones & Areas.....	10
1.9 Off-Map Displays	10

2.0 THE UNITS

2.1 Unit Labels.....	11
2.2 Unit Types.....	11
2.3 Special Units	12
2.4 Headquarters	12
2.5 Combat Value	12
2.6 Step Reduction	12
2.7 Unit ID Codes.....	12
2.8 MF and NF Units	12

3.0 STARTING PLAY

3.1 Game Options	13
3.2 Game Setup	13
3.3 Game Continuity.....	13

4.0 SEQUENCE OF PLAY

4.1 The Game Month.....	14
4.2 Fortnights	14
4.3 Player-Turns	14

5.0 HEADQUARTERS

5.1 Headquarters	16
5.2 HQ Activation.....	16
5.3 HQ Command	16
5.4 HQ Airpower	17
5.5 HQ Deactivation	17
5.6 Blitz HQs	17
5.7 Supreme HQs	17
5.8 Theater HQs	18
5.9 Invasion/Paradrop HQs.....	18

6.0 MOVEMENT

6.1 Unit Movement	19
6.2 Stacking Limits	19
6.3 Engagement.....	19
6.4 Attacks.....	19
6.5 Retreats	20
6.6 Supreme Moves	20
6.7 Changing Fronts.....	20

7.0 COMBAT

7.1 Battles	21
7.2 Combat Resolution.....	21
7.3 Combat Fire.....	22
7.4 Unsupported Combat.....	22
7.5 Fortresses	22
7.6 Assaults	23
7.7 Unit Capitulation.....	23

8.0 HEX CONTROL

8.1 Hex Control	24
8.2 Zones of Control.....	24
8.3 Hex Status.....	24
8.4 Control Effects	24

9.0 RAILROADS

9.1 Rail Lines.....	25
9.2 Rail Movement	25
9.3 Rail Supply	25

10.0 SUPPLY

10.1 Supply Status.....	26
10.2 Supply Origin.....	26
10.3 Supply Sources.....	27
10.4 Supply Lines	27
10.5 Supply Checks.....	27
10.6 Supply Attrition.....	27
10.7 Fortress Supply	27
10.8 Siege Supply	27

11.0 PRODUCTION

11.1 Overview.....	28
11.2 Production Sequence	28
11.3 PP Sources	28
11.4 Available PPs.....	29
11.5 PP Allocations	29
11.6 PP Transfers	29
11.7 Unit Building.....	30
11.8 Reinforcements	30
11.9 MF/NF Production	31

12.0 WEATHER

12.1 Weather Determination	32
12.2 Dry Weather	32
12.3 Mud Weather.....	32
12.4 Snow Weather	32
12.5 Sea Storms.....	33
12.6 Assault Effects.....	33
12.7 Initiative	33

13.0 AIRPOWER

13.1 HQ Airpower	34
13.2 Airstrikes	34
13.3 Air Superiority	34

14.0 PARADROPS

14.1 Paratroops	35
14.2 Paradrops	35
14.3 Para Dispersal	35
14.4 Para Combat	35
14.5 Paradrop Linkup	35
14.6 Paratroop Grounding	35

15.0 SEAPOWER

15.1 Sea Areas	36
15.2 Sea Control	37
15.3 Sea Movement	37
15.4 Sea Supply	37
15.5 Sea Invasions	38
15.6 BeachHeads	39
15.7 Sea Interdiction	40
15.8 Naval Supremacy	41
15.9 MF/NF Seapower	41

16.0 WAR AND PEACE

16.0 War and Peace	42
16.1 Neutrality	42
16.2 Cooperation	42
16.3 Belligerence	42
16.4 Declarations of War	43
16.5 Alliance Reactions	43
16.6 Diplomatic Events	44
16.7 Politics	44
16.8 Surrender	45
16.9 Defeat	45

17.0 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES

17.1 Axis Oil Supply	46
17.2 Axis Ore Supply	46
17.3 Satellite Release	46
17.4 Balkan Pacification	46
17.5 Mare Nostro	46
17.6 Med Front Control	46
17.7 Spanish Volunteers	46
17.8 Soviet Oil Supply	46

18.0 MAP-EDGE AREAS

18.1 Map Edge Areas	47
18.2 Area Command	47
18.3 Area Movement	47
18.4 Area Combat	48
18.5 Area Supply	48
18.6 Area Production	48

19.0 VICTORY

19.1 Victory	49
19.2 Axis Victory	49
19.3 Allied Victory	49
19.4 Draw	49
19.5 The Struggle for Europe ...	49

20.0 THE POWERS

20.1 Germany	50
20.2 Italy	51
20.3 Britain/U.S.	52
20.4 France	53
20.5 Soviet Union	56
20.6 Minor Powers	58

21.0 THE FRONTS

21.1 West Front	60
21.2 East Front	60
21.3 Med Front	61
21.4 North Front	64

22.0 THE SCENARIOS

22.1 Scenarios	67
22.2 Scenario Setup	67
22.3 Startlines	67
22.4 Continuity	67
1939: Assault on Poland	68
1940: Assault on France	72
1941: Assault on Russia	76
1942: Axis High Tide	78
1943: Closing the Ring	80
1944: Anvil of Victory	82
1936: The Spanish Civil War	85

DIPLOMACY CHARTS 88

GAME AIDS 93

INDEX 97

GAME RECORD SHEET 105

THIS RULEBOOK

This rulebook updates **EuroFront**, including new map areas and nations in Scandinavia and the Middle East.

THE FACTIONS

The **AXIS** consists of Germany and all powers allied with it.

The **ALLIES** consist of all powers opposing the Axis except the Soviets.

The **SOVIETS** also oppose the Axis, but remain distinct from the ALLIES.

One player (or team) plays the **Axis side**, and the other player (or team) plays the **ALLIED - SOVIET side**.

THE NATIONS

Great Powers

Germany	Britain / USA
Soviet Union	

Major Powers

France	Italy
--------	-------

Minor Powers

Poland	Rumania
Hungary	Bulgaria
Yugoslavia	Greece
Belgium	Holland
Denmark	Vichy
Spain	Portugal
Finland	Sweden
Norway	Switzerland
Turkey	Syria
Iraq	Persia
Eire	

Special rules for various nations are found in rules section **20.0**.

NEUTRALITY

Play begins with most powers being **neutral**. Neutrals do not belong to any faction. Except for the **Soviets** (whose units are *always* in play on the map), neutral units are **not** deployed on the map.

Units cannot enter neutral territory: to do so, a *Declaration of War* (**16.4**) must first be issued, converting the neutral into a *belligerent*.

BELLIGERENCE

During play a neutral can become **belligerent** and join a faction. This can occur in three ways:

- 1) A *Declaration of War* is made upon it, and it immediately joins the opposing faction.

- 2) It makes a successful **Alliance Reaction** in response to another neutral becoming belligerent.
- 3) A **Diplomatic Event** makes it become belligerent in response to the pressure of events or great power diplomacy.

If a neutral becomes *belligerent*, the faction it joins gains control of its production, territory, and forces (which are then deployed on the map).

Minor power forces are shown on the Pro-Axis / Pro-Allied Neutral OB cards according to the faction they **usually** join, although neutrals can join either side. Units are shown as of **September 1939**, but when entering play, they are built up to allow for *Peacetime Production* (**16.32**) occurring since that date.

THE MAPS

The maps are divided into **hexes** (hexagons) to determine location and movement. Terrain features include rivers, forests, mountains, cities, and railways. Terrain affects both **hexes** and **hexsides**.

THE UNITS

Wooden blocks (called *units*) represent Axis, Allied, and Soviet forces. **Axis** blocks are **black**, and represent German corps or Italian / minor power armies.

Allied blocks are **blue**, and represent British/US corps or French / minor power armies. **Soviet** blocks are **red**, representing armies.

Attach an adhesive label showing unit-type, nationality and strength to each block. Units in play normally stand upright, with their labels facing the owning player, to prevent players from seeing the type or strength of opposing units ("fog of war").

The **type** of unit (armor, etc.) is shown by the symbol in the middle of each label. Unit types have defined movement and combat factors, so these are **not** shown on the label. Special units called *Headquarters* (HQs) control other friendly units.

Large numbers around the unit symbol on the label indicate the unit's strength or combat value ("cv"). The current *cv* of a unit is the number shown upright along its **top edge** when standing upright.

THE FRONTS

EuroFront is divided into **fronts** (*East Front*, *West Front*, *North Front*, and *Med Front*) for Production and Weather purposes. Special rules apply to the *Med Front* (see **21.3**) and *North Front* (see **21.4**).

Updated Rules

In these updated rules, new substantive changes are shown in **red**. Previous changes since v1.0 are shown in **brown**. Rewrites for clarity without changing meaning are in **blue**.

Historical Commentary

World War II was the defining event of the 20th century. When Adolf Hitler gained dictatorial power over Germany in 1933, his ambition went beyond the political control and economic exploitation of previous conquerors. He envisioned the extermination or enslavement of his victims, based on a ruthless ideology of racist totalitarianism. Hitler concealed his true aims behind a cloak of conventional nationalism for as long as possible, gaining a series of bloodless conquests by threat and duplicity.

Finally Britain, his main geopolitical opponent, lost patience, took courage, and drew the line at Poland. A 6-year struggle for the survival of democracy, freedom and basic human decency ensued, costing 100 million lives. It was a close-run thing.

Untold thousands of acts of bravery, resolution and sacrifice had telling effects in battle. Others had none. Technical advances had a profound impact (we know now that code-breaking played a key role).

But in the end, it is very possible that the issue was decided by strategy.

Team Play

While it is simplest to assign responsibility by geography (e.g., Allies/Soviets vs. **WF** Axis/**EF** Axis), there are times when one theatre is quiet when another is exploding.

For game interest (and to avoid dubious strategies being chosen out of boredom), it is good policy to assign command over some portion of an active Front to a teammate who nominally controls a currently quiet Front. Giving control over specified HQs and the units they command is a clean and simple method.

The Fronts

EuroFront divides the European theatre into **fronts**, each with distinct Production, Weather, and Airpower.

For the Axis and Allies, the *West Front* is the "home" front, where production originates. Production can be allocated from the home front to other fronts, but this requires long-term commitment and can be limited by transport.

Production can also be transferred between fronts on an emergency basis (at the cost of inefficiency and delay). Thus, distribution of Production is somewhat flexible, but good planning is rewarded.

Units are usually freely transferable between Fronts, but *Headquarters* (which represent logistical and command centers) are more constrained to reflect logistical realities.

NOTE: these fronts are denoted in these rules by two italic words ('*East Front*'), while the game of the same name is denoted by one bold word ('**EastFront**'). Both terms may be abbreviated as two letters (**EF/EF** respectively).

In general, combat units can move freely between *fronts*, but lose cv when entering *extreme fronts* (**NF/MF**). HQs are penalized for activating outside their "home" fronts. Production is *allocated* between the *fronts* every six months. Sending production to a *front* in excess of these allocations is possible, but costly.

Specific definitions of the *Fronts* and all *Special Rules* pertaining to them are summarized in **21.0**.

VICTORY

EuroFront is divided into *scenarios*, one beginning in each summer of the war. All scenario games end in **June 1945**, when Victory (**19.0**) is determined.

SEQUENCE OF PLAY

A game *Month* consists of *Production* and *Diplomacy* phases followed by two *Fortnights* of play.

Production awards Production Points (**PPs**) based on control of cities and resources, which are then spent to rebuild eliminated units or add cv to depleted units in play. Both sides do Production simultaneously.

Diplomacy gives each side a chance for a favorable event to occur.

A *Fortnight* consists of one **Player-Turn** for each player. The order of *Player Turns* can vary depending on factors such as *Weather* and *Diplomatic Events*. The current player is the *Active Player* and the opponent is the *Passive Player*.

Weather (*Dry*, *Snow* or *Mud*) applies for a *fortnight* to an entire *front*, and can be either fixed or variable (dieroll), depending on the game-Month. *Mud* and *Snow* hamper operations.

Player-Turns consist of distinct *phases* taken in order by the *Active Player* (Command, Movement, Combat, Supply, and Politics).

COMMAND

During the Command phase, players *activate* friendly HQs in order to command movement and provide *combat support* for friendly units within *Command Range* (equal to HQ CV). *Declarations of War* are made at the **beginning** of this phase.

MOVEMENT

Only units commanded by an activated HQ can move. Units can move a maximum distance according to their unit type. This distance can be modified by terrain and weather. Units must **stop** upon entering a hex that contains enemy units. Only **Supreme HQs (SHQs)** can command units to move strategically by sea or rail.

COMBAT

Combat occurs when opposing units occupy the same hex. Units in combat are revealed to the opponent.

Combat is resolved by exchange of fire between opposing units. Following a possible attacker *airstrike* (one per battle maximum), *passive* units fire first, then active units. Battles continue from turn to turn (often for months) until one side is destroyed or voluntarily retreats.

Passive ("defending") units benefit from reduced combat losses (e.g., *double defense*) in adverse terrain (mountains, forests, etc.), or when combat is not supported by a nearby activated enemy HQ.

Active ("attacking") units always apply full losses (never reduced).

SUPPLY

Units unable to trace a *Supply Line* to a *Supply Source* lose one cv per turn, a severe penalty.

Supply Sources are usually rail lines connecting to that faction's *Supply Origin* (normally its *Great Power* capital). *Sea Lanes* between controlled ports connect friendly rail lines.

POLITICS

Political Events such as *Defeat*, *Surrender*, and *Demoralization* can occur during the Politics phase at the end of the *Active Player's* turn.

EuroFront as History

EuroFront is designed to reflect historical strategic balances, but **Diplomacy** and **Alliance Reactions** can generate many variations as to which nations become entangled in war, with whom, and when.

Players are free to follow grand strategies of their own making. There are no requirements to mimic historical events and campaigns, but the opportunities to do so are there. Although the pursuit of historical strategies will often produce a close approximation of history, the design intent is to allow credible alternate strategies. It is up to the players to investigate these possibilities. The great appeal of grand strategic gaming lies in the "what-ifs" of alternate history.

In particular, the role of the *Med Front* is of interest. Gibraltar and the Middle East are strategic locations. Allied success in North Africa will greatly increase Allied naval capacity, multiplying Axis defensive problems. Axis success will put them in a commanding position economically. Neither side can easily bring extra power to bear in the *Med Front*, and operations there are expensive and unpredictable.

Major strategic decision forks occur during the resolution and immediate aftermath of the France '40 campaign. Allied defensive strategy and *Armistice* offer timing will affect Axis decisions regarding *French Armistice*, *Sea Lion*, the Mediterranean, and Russia.

Sea Lion (the sea invasion of Britain) is another costly and risky venture, but the Allies can be hard-pressed to defend both Britain and the Middle East at once. Barring a successful *Sea Lion*, the Axis must seek victory in the East or Middle East.

The Allies have the ability to *Mobilize* Russia and initiate a Russo-German conflict to embroil the Axis in two-front war, but the Soviets are initially disorganized and weak: a premature Soviet rush into war can result in disaster.

Game Storage Suggestion

The **EuF** map fits on a 4x6 plywood sheet. Between sessions, the game can be stored just under the ceiling in the corner of a room, using angle brackets to hold up three corners and screw eyes and wire to hold up the 4th corner. Use at least half-inch (12mm) plywood.

1.1 THE MAPS

1.11 Playable Area

The **EastFront** and **WestFront** maps constitute the play area. Along some map edges are **Zones** containing *Districts* and *Regions* (see **18.0** for governing rules). Partial hexes on the mapedge are playable.

1.12 The Fronts

In **EuroFront**, four separate *fronts* (*East Front*, *West Front*, *Med Front*, *North Front*) are distinguished (see **21.0** for *Front-specific* rules). *Front* boundaries appear on the map.

Active Fronts. Production on each *active front* is tracked separately (**exception:** the *North Front* has no separate Production, see **21.4**).

Initially only the *West Front* is **active**. The *East Front* and *Med Front* are *inactive* until the USSR and Italy (respectively) become *belligerent*.

Home Fronts: *Inactive Front* Production is incorporated into the *Home Front*, which is **WF** for the AXIS and ALLIES, and **EF** for the SOVIETS.

1.2 HEXES

The mapboard is divided into *hexes* [hexagons] to govern the location and movement of units. Hexes are identified by cities/towns or a direction (see: map compass rose) and distance from a city or town.

Example: "Paris NE1" is one hex northeast of Paris.

1.3 TERRAIN

Terrain is determined by the **predominant** terrain of a hex/hexside.

Note: in land/sea hexes, consider only land terrain.

Hex terrain affects movement, combat, and *stacking* (the maximum number of units per hex). **Hexside** terrain limits movement into and out of battles, termed the *Engagement Limit*.

1.31 Clear

Clear terrain allows full unit movement. The *engagement limit* is 2 units per hexside and *stacking* is 4 units/hex.

1.32 Forest/Hills

Forest and **Hill** terrain allow full movement. Passive units have **double defense**. The *engagement limit* is 1 unit per hexside. *Stacking* is 4 units per hex.

1.33 Marsh

Marshes halt movement (except cavalry). Passive units receive **double defense**, and attacking units have **SF** firepower. The *engagement limit* is 1 unit per hexside. *Stacking* is 3 units per hex. *Sea Invasions* are **prohibited**.

1.331 Tundra [NF Arctic]

Tundra has the same effects as *Mountain* terrain (see below).

1.34 Mountain

Mountains halt movement (not cavalry), and provide **double defense** to passive units. The *engagement limit* is 1 unit per hexside, and *stacking* is 2 units per hex. *Sea Invasions* and *Paradrops* are **prohibited**.

Alpine (high mountain) hexsides (white) are **impassable**.

1.35 Desert [MF]

Med Front light tan terrain is **Desert**. *Desert* is equivalent to *Clear* terrain, except Mech and armor units have enhanced offensive firepower. *Stacking* is 3 units per hex (the maximum stacking allowed in the **MF**).

1.351 Sand Seas [MF]

Sand Seas are *impassable*.

1.352 Depressions [MF]

Depressions are *impassable*.

1.36 Rivers and Lakes

Rivers follow hexsides. They do not impede movement, but the *engagement limit* is 1 unit per hexside. Initiating battles across rivers, called *River Assaults*, are subject to possible forced retreat, called *Repulse* (see **7.61**).

Rivers freeze in *Snow* weather (no *Repulse* possible) and swell in *Mud* weather (*Repulse* more likely).

Lakes are **impassable**.

1.37 Seas

Sea Areas, bounded by solid blue lines, are controlled by **Naval Bases** [or *Control Ports*, see **15.1**]. *Seas* can be traversed only by *Sea Movement* (**15.3**) or *Invasion Movement* (**15.5**).

Sea areas are grouped into **Sea Basins** for specific weather purposes (see **12.5 Sea Storms**). *Basin* boundaries are shown as thicker blue lines.

Interpreting the Map

The map is drawn in a 'realistic' style, meant to be interpreted in an intuitive manner. When map features slightly depart from the hex grid, they should be interpreted as conforming to it.

For example, small projections of land into sea hexes or small incursions of a rail line into the corner of an adjacent hex should be ignored.

TERRAIN KEY

TYPE	STACK	ENGAGE
Clear	4	2
Forest/Hill	4	1
Marsh	3	1
Mountain	2	1
Desert	3 ¹	2
Rivers	n.a.	1
Lakes	Imp ²	Imp ²

¹ Stacking 3 maximum in all **MF** terrain.

² Impassable

Italics = Double Defense

Map Errata/Clarifications

- In the British Empire display the "E Africa" region should be retitled "**SOMALILAND**."
- Add a short rail route **Dombas-Oslo** (Norway).
- **Copenhagen-Malmö** is a **Rail Straits** (red).
- **Stettin** is a **1 PP** city (not 2 PPs).
- The Rotterdam-Brussels hexside is **Sea**.
- The **Northern Seaway** does NOT include the Nordkapp Sea (ends in the Norwegian Sea).
- **Mallorca** belongs to **Spain** (not Britain).
- The hex west of **Naples** is a **forest** hex (all three hexsides are also *forest*).
- The Po River mouth is **River**, not Sea.
- The southern boundary of **Lithuania** follows the *Curzon Line*.
- The southernmost Soviet Military District boundary (red triangle) should be at the northernmost point of the **Jassy** hex.
- There is **no** direct sea connection between the **Atlantic** and **Indian Oceans**. Units moving between them **stop** in **South Africa**.
- In the Scandinavia display (south edge), the **Archangel-Petrozavodsk** rail connection shown *does not exist*. Also, the **Stavanger-Haugesund** hexside is **Sea**.
- **Grozny** is **forest** terrain.
- **Kanakkale** [Turkey] is misspelled 'Canakkale.'
- **Ismit E1** (Istanbul E2) is a **hill** hex with one mountain hexside.
- The Thebes-Patras hexside is **sea**.

1.371 Straits

Straits (crossing arrows) are treated as rivers, except units crossing *Straits* must **start** movement on one side, and **stop** on the other. Red crossing arrows are **rail ferry straits** (see 9.11).

A faction controlling **either** adjacent land hex (see 8.32) **commands** a *Straits*. This prohibits enemy Naval operations (*Sea Movement/Supply/Invasion*) through that *Straits*, but not *National Supply*.

A faction controlling **both** adjacent land hexes **controls** a *Straits*. This blocks enemy *National Supply* (10.21) as well.

Neutral-controlled *Straits* are passable to all naval operations and *National Supply* (**exception**: the fortified **Turkish Straits**, see sidebar).

1.372 Shoals

Shoals prevent *Sea Invasions* into a hex. However, *Sea Movement* and *Sea Supply* are still possible.

1.373 Canals

Kiel Canal. Hamburg borders on the North Sea, Western Baltic and Skagerrak. Units there can sea move into any adjacent sea regardless of the direction of arrival.

The **Suez Canal** is treated as a river / straits. Naval operations through it are restricted as with *straits*.

1.4 CITIES

Cities are of two types: major and minor. Cities have no effect on movement in addition to the terrain of the hex.

Home Cities. Cities within national territory are *home cities*, which are *Arrival Locations* (11.81) for great power units.

1.41 Major Cities

Major cities are black dots with white numbers (Production value). Passive units in major cities have **double defense** and **DF** in combat.

Exception: Rome is an open city, providing no defensive benefits.

1.411 Victory Cities

Victory Cities (black squares) are major cities used to determine Victory in the 1944 scenario (see 19.5). They are also *Arrival Locations* for Axis units.

1.42 Minor Cities

Minor Cities (circled dots) are arrival locations (11.81) for *major power* national units, but provide no Production or defensive benefits.

1.43 Towns

Towns (small dots) have no game function except to name a hex.

1.44 Ports

Coastal cities or towns with an anchor symbol in the hex/area are **ports**. Ports bordering on two seas have 2 crossbars on the symbol.

Major ports (large anchor symbol) have greater *capacity* (15.32) than *minor ports* (smaller anchor symbol).

A **Naval Base** (black port symbols) controls the adjacent sea area. When bordering two sea areas, the port symbol is located mostly in the controlled sea area.

Fortified Ports (hexagonal port symbols – **NF** only) are immune to *Surprise* (20.16): units defending a *Fortified Port* can repulse *sea invasions* when surprised. *Fortified Ports* are **not** the same as *Fortresses* (see below).

1.45 Fortresses

Fortress hexes (large hexagons in Leningrad, Sevastopol, Malta, etc.), give defenders (regardless of nationality) significant combat (7.5) and supply (10.7) advantages. Hexside terrain determines the engagement limit.

Important: *Stacking in Malta and Gibraltar is limited to two (2) units. The Allies may stack 4 units in either after the 2nd Front Diplomatic Event (16.6).*

1.451 Minor Fortresses

Tobruk is a *minor fortress* (7.51) which has reduced advantages.

1.452 Bases

Small squares with a center dot in the *Med Front* (Habbinaya, Basra, etc.) are **Bases**. They provide automatic Supply, but **no** Combat advantages (see 10.71).

1.46 Capitals

One city of each Power or Nation is its **National Capital**. See list in sidebar.

1.5 RESOURCES

A **Resource Center** is shown as a pick (mineral) or derrick (oil) symbol, with its production value below. When it's in the same hex as a major city, the resource value is *added* to the city value.

For the **Axis**, controlled resource centers count **double**.

Example: the *Lille* hex contains a 1 PP city and a 1 PP resource, yielding 3 PPs for the Axis, but only 2 PPs for the Allies.

Neutral Straits (correction)

Naval operations (*Sea Invasions, Sea Movement, Sea Supply*, etc.) **CAN** pass through neutral-controlled *Straits* like those adjacent to Cadiz and Copenhagen.

Exception: Turkey. The **Turkish Straits** (*Hellespont* and *Bosporus*) are fortified. Even while neutral, Turkey **commands** these straits: all naval operations through them are **prohibited** (but *Lines of Communication/National Supply* are still traceable).

Shoals

Ports have dredged channels through shoal waters, even if the rest of the nearby coast is inaccessible to shipping.

Capitals

Each Power/Nation has a Capital.

GREAT POWERS

GERMANY	BERLIN
BRITAIN	LONDON
SOVIETS	MOSCOW

MAJOR POWERS

FRANCE	PARIS
Italy	Rome

Minor Nations

Portugal	Lisbon
Spain	Madrid
Belgium	Brussels
Holland	Amsterdam
Denmark	Copenhagen
Norway	Oslo
Sweden	Stockholm
Finland	Helsinki
Czechoslovakia	Prague
Hungary	Budapest
Yugoslavia	Belgrade
Rumania	Bucharest
Bulgaria	Sofia
Greece	Athens
Turkey	Ankara
Persia	Teheran

For Colonial/Mandate Capitals, see 20.4/20.92.

Red Spanish Cities/Towns

Red cities/towns in Spain are Republican in the *Spanish Civil War* scenario. In *EuroFront*, this affects *Spanish Volunteers* (see 17.7).

Fortress hexes vs. Fort units

Fortress hexes provide defensive benefits to defending units. Fort units have inherent defensive advantages that go with the unit.

Axis Resource Centers

The *Resource Center* value is doubled for the Axis player because they were so crucial to the blockaded, resource-starved German economy.

Some *Resource Centers*, such as **Ploesti**, have special significance (see 17.1).

1.6 RAILROADS

Dashed red lines are railroads. These act as *Supply Sources* for units and a means of rapid strategic *Rail Movement* (see 9.0).

Railroads often connect *Areas* in mapedge *Zones*. **Short Rail Routes** (thin) are 2 hexes long; **Long Rail Routes** (thick) are 5 hexes long.

See 18.3 Area Movement.

1.61 Roads

In the *Med Front*, **Roads** are thin brown lines and also exist wherever railroads are shown.

Roads also can connect *Areas* in the mapedge *Zones*. **Short Roads** (thin dotted) are 2 hexes long, and **Long Roads** (thick dotted) are 5 hexes.

See 18.3 Area Movement.

Roads act as road supply sources and as a means of rapid strategic *Road Movement* (see 21.352).

1.7 NATIONAL TERRITORY

The area within a national boundary is termed **home territory**. In some cases other defined areas (e.g., islands) are also included in *home territory*.

Control of an area does **not** make it *home territory* but **Annexed** areas (16.6 sidebar) **do** become *home territory*.

Germany includes Austria and East Prussia (*home territory*). It **controls** Czechoslovakia (**not** *home territory*).

Italy includes Sicily and Sardinia. It controls Albania, **Libya**, Rhodes and Ethiopia.

France includes Corsica. It controls *French North Africa* (Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia and West Africa). NOTE: Syria is considered a separate *Minor Power*.

Greece includes Crete.

Spain includes Mallorca. It controls Spanish Morocco.

Note: "**Greater Italy**" / "**Greater Finland**", etc., are NOT considered *Home Territory*.

1.8 ZONES & AREAS

Along some map edges are *zones* that contain abstracted play *areas* instead of hexes.

Districts (circles) are small areas about **2 hexes** in diameter.

Regions (squares) are larger areas about **5 hexes** in diameter.

Areas have terrain which affects combat and stacking just as for hexes. *Areas* are connected by rail or road *Routes*. Some *Areas* contain ports, which allow *Sea Movement*.

See 18.0 for complete rules.

1.9 OFF-MAP DISPLAYS

The **British/French Empire** display (in the North Atlantic) and **Scandinavia** display (in Algeria) duplicate map locations that are difficult to reach for that player.

Place friendly units there for convenience **when those theaters are quiet**. When activity resumes, transfer units back onto the map.

MF Roads

Unlike Europe, where roads can be assumed to exist everywhere, North Africa is undeveloped, and roads exist only where shown and along rail lines.

Therefore, off-road movement and supply are inhibited in the **MF**. Except along roads, unit speed is reduced by one, and *Supply Lines* between a units and its *Supply Source* can only be 1 hex long.

MasterFront

For those playing **MasterFront** on this map (using abstracted *North Front* and *MidEast* campaigns), these areas are out of play:

- **Britain** north of the London hexrow
- **Finland, Norway, Sweden, Turkey, and the Middle East** (see 21.3).

Use Exit Zones and Transit boxes as defined in the *MasterFront* and abstracted rules.

2.1 UNIT LABELS

One adhesive unit label is attached to the face of each block. Blocks are placed with the label facing the owning player.

2.11 Unit Nationality

Axis units are **black** blocks. German units have gray or black (SS) labels. Other Axis labels are listed in the sidebar.

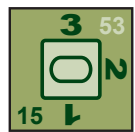
ALLIED units are **blue** blocks with bronze (British), tan (Common-wealth) or olive (US) labels. Other Allied labels are listed in the sidebar.

SOVIETS units are **red** blocks with tan labels.

2.2 UNIT TYPES

A unit's *type* is shown by the symbol in the center of its label. There are seven basic *types* of unit: Armor, Mechanized Infantry ("Mech"), Infantry, Cavalry, Static, Forts, and Headquarters (HQ). A unit's type determines its Speed and Firepower, as shown in the Table.

2.21 ARMOR



Armor represents units with large concentrations of tanks. They move 3 hexes in Dry weather and fire **DF** on offense and defense. In *Desert* terrain, they fire **TF** on offense and **DF** on defense.

DAK armor is elite in the MF firing TF there (QF/TF in desert).

2.22 MECHANIZED



Mech units represent highly motorized infantry with extra tank support. They move 3 hexes in Dry weather and fire **SF** on offense and **DF** on defense. In *Desert* terrain, they fire **DF** on offense and defense.

2.23 INFANTRY



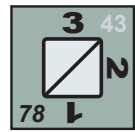
Infantry units move 2 hexes in dry weather and fire **SF** on offense and defense. Allied Infantry units are motorized and move 3 hexes.

2.24 MOUNTAIN



Mountain units fire **DF** in Mountains and in the *North Front*. They move like Infantry but have higher costs.

2.25 CAVALRY



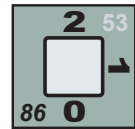
Cavalry units move 3 hexes in dry weather and fire **SF** on offense and defense. Cavalry are the only units which can move *through* Mountain and Marsh hexes and move 2 hexes in Mud.

2.26 SHOCK (Soviet)



Shock units move **one** hex in all weather and fire **DF** on offense and defense. Only the Soviet player has Shock. "Shock" units are special assault troops with massive artillery support.

2.27 STATIC



Static units are moveable by Supreme Command **only** (strategically or by normal land movement). They represent low-grade troops with minimal equipment.

Static units have a **0 cv** cadre step. *0cv static units are automatically eliminated if engaged alone at the end of a Combat phase.*

2.28 FORT



Fort units represent heavily fortified troops such as the Atlantic Wall. Only **one** fort unit can occupy a hex.

Fort units can be moved by strategic rail or sea movement **only** (supreme command required) and are reduced to cadre strength if moved. *They cannot be moved at all when engaged.*

Fort units fire **SF** on offense and **TF** on defense. They have triple defense which also protects **smaller** friendly units in combat: when a fort unit is the largest unit in a battle it absorbs 3 hits before losing a step. But equal-strength units absorb hits until they are smaller, upon which then next 3 hits apply to the Fort.

If unsupplied, Fort units lose **TF** and triple defense, but can only be reduced to 1cv cadres (not eliminated) by supply attrition (*exception: Maginot Line fort units, see 20.41*).

UNIT TYPE	SPEED			FIRE POWER
	DRY	MUD	SNOW	
ARMOR	3	1	2	DF
MECH	3	1	2	SF/DF ¹
INF	2 ²	1	1 ³	SF
MTN	2	1	1	SF ⁴
CAV	3	2	2	SF
SHOCK	1	1	1	DF
STATIC	1 ⁵	1 ⁵	1 ⁵	SF
FORT	0 ^{5/6}	0 ^{5/6}	0 ^{5/6}	SF/TF
AMPH	2 ²	1	2	SF ⁷
PARA	2	1	1	SF/DF
HQ	2	1	1	...

1 Offensive/Defensive Fire

2 British/US Inf /Amph move 3 in Dry

3 Ski troops move 2 in Snow

4 DF in mountains

5 By SHQ command only

6 Rail/Sea movement only

7 DF on own Beachhead

Pro-Axis Unit Labels

Nation	Label	Center
Italy	buff	light green
Finland	light gray	grey-blue
Vichy	violet	red
Rumania	grey-blue	light blue
Hungary	pink	light red
Bulgaria	buff	gold
Portugal	wine pink	tan
Spain (Nat)	yellow	tan
Sweden	light blue	yellow
Turkey	green	red
Iraq	red	green
Syria	purple	green
Persia	red	green
Palestine	tan	green

Pro-Allied Unit Labels

Nation	Label	Center
France	dk. blue	red
Poland	brown	red
Norway	red	dk. blue
Denmark	red	white
Belgium	orange	red
Holland	orange	blue
Greece	light blue	blue
Yugoslavia*	blue	red
Switzerland	white	red
Spain (Rep)	buff	orange

* 5 Pro-Allied Yugos/3 Pro-Axis, see 20.77

2.3 SPECIAL UNITS

2.31 AMPHIBIOUS



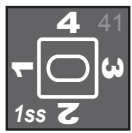
Amphibious units have enhanced sea invasion capabilities and attached beachheads (see: 15.6). They move and fight like Infantry but have a higher cadre cost.

2.32 PARATROOP CORPS



Paratroop units have special air movement capabilities (see: 14.1). They fire **SF** offensively and **DF** defensively.

2.33 SS UNITS



German SS units (black labels) have enhanced firepower: the SS Armor unit fires **TF**; the SS Mech unit fires **DF** offensively / **TF** defensively. SS mountain units fire **TF** in mountains. They have normal building costs for their type, but only one SS step may be rebuilt per Production per Front.

2.34 SIEGE GUN CORPS



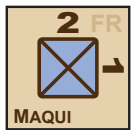
Starting with the S'42 scenario, the German 54th Corps has the 1st and 70th Heavy Mortar Regiments attached. Thenceforth, it fires **TF offensively** versus **Fortresses**. Rebuilding costs are normal, but it loses its special ability if eliminated and rebuilt.

2.35 TITO



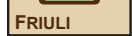
The Allied Tito unit can appear suddenly in Yugoslavian mountain hexes, and has special powers within that country (see 16.73).

2.36 VOLUNTEERS

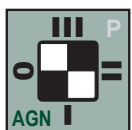


Italian and French volunteers can arrive to fight on

the Allied side under certain specified conditions.



2.4 HEADQUARTERS



Headquarters (HQ) units are special units that command other units (see 5.0). Their speed is two. They have **no** firepower but command offensive **Airstrikes**. They have a 0CV step (which is **not** eliminated if engaged).

Supreme HQs (SHQs) are high command HQs with special abilities to **command units on their Front without regard for distance** (see 5.7). **Theater HQs (THQs)** are low-cost SHQs with limited abilities (see 5.8). **Only these units can command Rail/Sea Strategic Movement.**

2.5 COMBAT VALUE

Around the unit symbol of each label are numbers (usually 4:3:2:1) that represent the current strength or **Combat Value (cv)** of the unit (not to be confused with its **firepower**).

2.6 STEP REDUCTION

Most units can have 1-4 possible levels, or "**steps**" of CV. Units can lose CV in combat and regain CV by production. When units sustain hits, they are rotated counter-clockwise so that their new (lesser) CV is on the "top" edge. Units reduced below their lowest CV step are removed from play, but can be rebuilt as **Cadres** (11.72).

2.7 UNIT ID CODES

In the **lower left** of each unit label at full strength is the historical **Unit ID** (in dark type). German, British, and USA units are **corps** ("54" = "54th Corps"). All other units are **armies** ("7" = 7th Army).

In the **upper right** of each label at full strength is its **Appearance** code (in light type), specifying its starting location or month of arrival (see OB Cards).

2.8 MF & NF UNITS

Only certain units can operate in the **Med Front** or **North Front** without penalty.

Special **MF** units have an **orange** circle on the label. Special **NF** units have a **blue** circle on the label. Inside the circle is a letter **R**, **V**, or **E**.

Residents (R) operate in that **front** without penalty, but are **restricted** to it (must remain there).

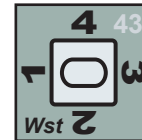
Veterans (V) operate on that **front** without penalty and may enter and leave.

Expeditions (E) are free to enter and leave that **front**, but avoid penalty only under certain conditions.

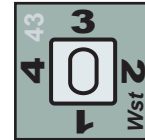
German SS Corps

Because of Hitler's favoritism, SS units always received the first, most, and best equipment. This is simulated by increasing the firepower of SS units, but keeping their building step cost the same as regular units.

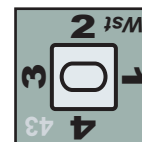
STEP REDUCTION EXAMPLE



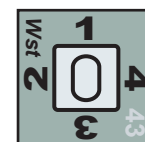
ARMOR 4



ARMOR 3



ARMOR 2



ARMOR 1

3.1 GAME OPTIONS

Players can play the complete *Campaign Game* or a *Scenario Game*.

3.11 The Campaign Games

The full *EuroFront* 1939-1945

Campaign Game starts with the **1939 Scenario** and ends after May 1945. A full-length game takes **60+** hours. Team play can speed things considerably.

3.12 Scenario Games

Scenarios are shorter games that begin at the start of **any** Summer campaign and ends after May 1945. They take 6-12 hours per game-year.

All *Scenarios* begin at critical points of the war strategically (see sidebar).

1940, **1941**, and **1942** cover the Axis expansion. **1943** and **1944** cover the Allied/Soviet counterattack.

We recommend that players start with a late-war scenario (**1942+**), working back to **1940** and finally the whole **1939 Campaign Game**.

3.2 GAME SETUP

Players first decide which Scenario to play and select sides.

3.21 OB Cards

GERMAN, SOVIET, ALLIED, PRO-AXIS NEUTRAL and PRO-ALLIED NEUTRAL **OB Cards** are provided to organize national forces, simplifying setup and play.

Starting Forces for each nation are shown with CVs as of **September, 1939**. When nations enter play at a later date, their forces are augmented to account for *Peacetime Production* (**16.32**) that has occurred since then.

Reinforcements are shown on the OB cards in chronological order. These arrive in the Production phase of the specified month at an *arrival location* (**11.81**). Unless noted, Allied units arrive in the **WF**, Soviets in the **EF**, and Axis units in either *front*.

To begin a game, place all friendly forces on the **OB** cards exactly as shown. Maintaining exact historical IDs is optional, but unit-type, cv, nationality, and parent game (**EF/ WF**, etc.) must be preserved.

Important: Axis **WF** units have italicized unit IDs on the labels.

Minor powers have **two** sets of blocks, one blue (Allied) and one black (Axis). Stack **both** units on the applicable OB card.

Note: Yugoslavia has 5 Allied units but only 3 Axis units (see **20.77**).

Once all units are placed on the *OB Cards*, see **22.0** for **Scenario** setup data, instructions, and special rules.

3.3 GAME CONTINUITY

Game-years are divided into 2 **Seasons**: *Summer* (June-November) and *Winter* (December-May). At each change of *Season* (i.e., before June and December Production phases) a **Season Break** occurs and when certain game parameters may change. These changes are found in the BASIC PRODUCTION / AIRPOWER table of the GAME DATA page and on the GAME RECORD sheets.)

- **Summer** Airpower / Production changes are shown [in brackets] in the **Starting Forces** table.
- **Winter** Airpower / Production changes are found in the **Winter Transition** Special Rules.
- *Front Allocations* (**11.5**) can be changed at *Season Breaks*.
- *Special Rules* that come into effect at a Summer or Winter *Season Break* are listed in that Scenario's **Special Rules** section.

3.31 Procedure

At each **Season Break**, check the following:

- **Basic Production** changes. For *Summers*, these are shown by bracketed numbers [+10] in the **Starting Forces** table. *Winter* changes are specified in the *Winter Transition* Special Rule.
- Changes in **Air Firepower** on some or all *fronts*. These are also shown in the places listed above.
- Voluntary changes in **MF** or **EF Allocations** (**11.5**). NOTE: **EF Allocations** can be increased at **Summer** breaks only.
- Scenario **Special Rules** that will apply to the upcoming season.

Then, begin the next Month of play with Production and Diplomacy.

GAME RECORD sheets help keep track of the passing turns, maintain the proper sequence of play, list the arrival of reinforcements and track weather and seasonal changes.

The Scenarios

1939: Assault on Poland

This is the historical start of the war. Hitler is intent on the destruction of Poland, and the Allies are unprepared for war, but determined to stop further German aggression. After Poland, Germany faces the task of conquering Norway to ensure delivery of iron ore from Sweden and naval access to the Atlantic.

The Soviets have repudiated their ties with France for half of Poland and a free hand in the Baltic States, Finland, and Bessarabia. A "sideshow" Winter War with Finland will allow the process of modernizing the Red Army to begin.

1940: Assault on France

Poland has fallen. The Phony War of the winter has been shattered by the conquest of Norway. Russia remains passive as a terrible onslaught hits France. Will Russia intervene, to its own detriment? Rumania is key: the Axis must maintain access to its oil. Will the defeat of France be followed by Sea Lion, a Mediterranean campaign, or Barbarossa?

1941: Assault on Russia

France and the rest of western Europe has fallen under Hitler's boot. Only stubborn Britain remains in its island stronghold. Will Hitler challenge British sea and air power, drive for the Mid East, or turn east to fulfill his quest for German Lebensraum and the eradication of Communism?

1942: Hinge of Fate

After a hugely successful but ultimately indecisive 1941 campaign, the German war in the East still hangs in the balance. Britain, using almost all its resources against a fraction of those of the Axis, has managed to hold on in Egypt, preserving the economic power of the empire intact. This year's campaigning will likely decide the war, one way or the other.

1943: Closing the Ring

The Russians have crushed the myth of German invincibility at Stalingrad and advanced into the Ukraine. The Allies have overpowered the Afrika Korps and cleared North Africa in preparation for a return to the continent. This is Germany's last chance for military victory. However, time and economics are against them.

1944: Anvil of Victory

The Soviets have the upper hand in the East, the Allies in the West. But the front lines are still far from Berlin. Will the Allies or Soviets reach it first, or can Germany somehow hold on?

4.1 THE GAME MONTH

A **Game Year** is divided into *Summer* and *Winter Seasons*, each composed of six *Months* of play. **Summer** includes June-November, and **Winter** is December-May. To begin each *Season*, check for changes in game parameters (see 3.3).

A **Month** consists of *Production* and *Diplomacy* phases, followed by two **Fortnights** of play.

A **Fortnight** consists of *Weather Determination* and one *Player Turn* each for Axis, Allies and Soviets (the order of play varies).

Note: Production and Diplomacy are omitted from the first month of all Scenarios. They have already been factored into the start data.

4.11 Production Phase

Players receive **Production Points** (PPs), based on resources and cities controlled, and spend them to build up friendly forces (see 11.0). Players complete Production simultaneously.

4.12 Diplomacy Phase

Each side (**Allies first**) can attempt **one** (1) **Diplomatic Event (DE)** when its given *Preconditions* are met (see 16.6). **DEs** can bring neutrals into a faction or cause other developments.

4.2 FORTNIGHTS

4.21 Weather

On the *Game Record sheets*, each month is noted for possible weather. Some months have fixed weather but in others weather is determined before each **Fortnight** by a die roll.

Weather can be **Dry**, **Mud** or **Snow**, (see 12.0).

WF & **EF** weather are determined independently. **MF** weather is based on **WF** weather (but always **Dry**). The **NF** is divided into **WF/EF** portions, with the relevant weather applying in each part.

4.22 Initiative

On the *East Front*, the **Initiative** (first *Player-Turn* of the *Fortnight*) depends on the weather: the **SOVIETS** have it in **Snow** fortnights, the **AXIS** otherwise.

On the *West* and *Med Fronts*, the **AXIS** player has the initiative until the **Second Front Diplomatic Event**, after which the **ALLIES** have the initiative.

Therefore four different sequences of Player Turns are possible in a fortnight:

BEFORE THE 2ND FRONT DE

- **EF Dry/Mud:** Axis, Allies, Soviets
- **EF Snow:** Soviets, Axis, Allies.

AFTER THE 2ND FRONT DE

- **EF Dry/Mud:** Allies, Axis, Soviets.
- **EF Snow:** Allies, Soviets, Axis.

4.3 PLAYER-TURNS

During a Player Turn, the **Active Player** completes several phases in fixed sequence.

The **Passive Player** participates in a limited manner (*Alliance Reactions*, *Sea Movement Interdiction*, *Defensive Fire*).

4.31 Command Phase

4.311 Declarations of War

Declarations of War are made at the start of the *Command* phase. A **Declaration of War (DoW)** must be issued before entering the territory of a neutral. A **DoW** causes the affected neutral to join the **opposing** faction, which then deploys the attacked neutral's forces on the map.

4.312 Alliance Reactions

Following a **DoW**, a series of **Alliance Checks (16.5)** are made to see if any other neutrals react and **also** become *belligerent*. Any reactions that occur cause **further Alliance Checks** in a chain reaction.

4.313 HQ Activation

During the *Command* Phase, the active player must **activate** (turn flat, face-up) any HQs that are to exert command (enable unit movement and/or support combat) in that Player-Turn (see 5.0 **Headquarters**).

4.32 Movement Phase

All movement occurs during the *Movement* phase. Only those units within the *Command Range* of an **activated HQ** ("under command") can move.

An active HQ has a *Command Range* in hexes equal to its current cv. A **Supreme HQ** can command the movement of units anywhere on its *front*, including *Strategic Movement* by rail or sea (see 6.6).

After other units are moved, an active HQ can either *Mobilize* (see 5.51), or remain active to provide *combat support*.

THE GAME MONTH

SEASON BREAK [June/Dec]

PRODUCTION PHASE

- **Determine Production Level**
 - Monthly Production
 - Add Saved PPs
 - Add/Subtract Allocations
 - Add/Subtract Transfers
- **Save or Spend PPs**
 - Add Replacement Steps
 - Place Reinforcements
 - Build and Place Cadres

DIPLOMACY PHASE

- Allied Diplomatic Event
- Axis Diplomatic Event

FORTNIGHT I

- Weather Determination
- First Player-Turn
- Second Player-Turn
- Third Player-Turn

FORTNIGHT II

- Repeat Fortnight I Procedure

THE PLAYER-TURN

Command Phase

- Declarations of War
- Alliance Reactions
- Activate HQs (designate Blitzes)

Movement Phase

- Move units under command
- Deactivate & move Mobile HQs
- Sea Movement Interdiction

Combat Phase

- Target Airstrikes
- Select Active Battles
- Resolve Each Active Battle
 - Offensive Airstrike
 - Defensive Fire
 - Offensive Fire
- Deactivate Combat HQs

Blitz Movement Phase*

- Repeat Movement Phase

Blitz Combat Phase *

- Repeat Combat Phase
- * Only if Blitz HQ(s) active

Supply Phase

- BH Placement
- *Invasion Dispersal Recovery*
- Paradrop *Linkup* Check
- Sea Supply Interdiction
- Enemy Supply Check

Politics Phase

- Demoralization
- French Armistice
- Revolt
- Surrender / Defection
- Defeat / Conquest

4.33 Combat Phase

The *Active Player* can choose to initiate a round of Combat in any or all existing Battles (see 7.0).

*NOTE: Combat must take place in new battles (in the preceding Movement phase, units were moved into a hex containing opposing units **only**). Combat is also mandatory in some other cases.*

Battles fought outside *Command Range* of active HQs are **Unsupported Combat**: defensive losses are reduced, but offensive losses apply in full.

4.331 Combat Sequence

- *Active Player* assigns Airstrikes.
- *Active Player* indicates **Active Battles** by revealing **all** units in these battle hexes.
- *Active Player* chooses the order in which *Active Battles* are fought.
- A *Round of Combat* in *Active Battles* is fought in the following sequence:
 - **Offensive Airstrike (if any)**. **Apply losses** to defender.
 - **Defensive Fire**. **Apply losses** to attacker.
 - **Offensive Fire**. **Apply losses** to defender.
- Deactivate active HQs except those designated *Blitz HQs*. *Blitz HQs* lose a cv but **remain active** in that hex for the *Blitz* phases.

4.34 Blitz Movement

Units *under command* of a **Blitz HQ** (i.e., within its now-reduced *Command Range*) can move **again** up to their normal movement range. However, units that have moved **strategically** the current Turn **cannot** use *Blitz Movement*.

After units have been moved by *Blitz Movement*, *Blitz HQs* can either *mobilize* or remain active to support *Blitz Combat*.

4.35 Blitz Combat

After *Blitz Movement*, another *Round of Combat* may occur in battles chosen by the *Active Player*. After *Blitz Combat*, *Blitz HQs* *deactivate* in their current hex.

Unsupported Blitz Combat (outside the *command range* of an active *Blitz HQ*) is only allowed in *Fronts* with *Blitz HQs* active that turn.

4.36 Supply Phase

In the *Supply* phase, all **enemy** units are checked for supply status, and all *unsupplied* units are reduced by one step. Supply status of friendly units is neither checked nor affected.

In addition, certain other supply related determinations are made.

4.37 Politics Phase

The *Active Player* can check for the possible occurrence of any or all of the following political eventualities, as conditions allow:

- Nations may become **demoralized**, and **Allied Solidarity** may weaken.
- Nations can offer **Armistice**, which is then accepted or rejected.
- Conquered nations may **Revolt**.
- **Demoralized** nations may **Surrender**.
- Nations that have lost their capitals may be **Defeated**.
- **Conquest** of **Defeated** nations may occur.
- **Naval Supremacy** is evaluated.

THE GAME MONTH SEASON BREAK [June/Dec] PRODUCTION PHASE

- **Determine Production Level**
 - Monthly Production
 - Add Saved PPs
 - Add/Subtract Allocations
 - Add/Subtract Transfers
- **Save or Spend PPs**
 - Add Replacement Steps
 - Place Reinforcements
 - Build and Place Cadres

DIPLOMACY PHASE

- Allied Diplomatic Event
- Axis Diplomatic Event

FORTNIGHT I

- Weather Determination
- First Player-Turn
- Second Player-Turn
- Third Player-Turn

FORTNIGHT II

- Repeat Fortnight I Procedure

THE PLAYER-TURN

Command Phase

- Declarations of War
- Alliance Reactions
- Activate HQs (designate *Blitzes*)

Movement Phase

- Move units under command
- Deactivate & move Mobile HQs
- Sea Movement Interdiction

Combat Phase

- Target Airstrikes
- Select Active Battles
- Resolve Each Active Battle
 - Offensive Airstrike
 - Defensive Fire
 - Offensive Fire
- Deactivate Combat HQs

Blitz Movement Phase*

- Repeat Movement Phase

Blitz Combat Phase *

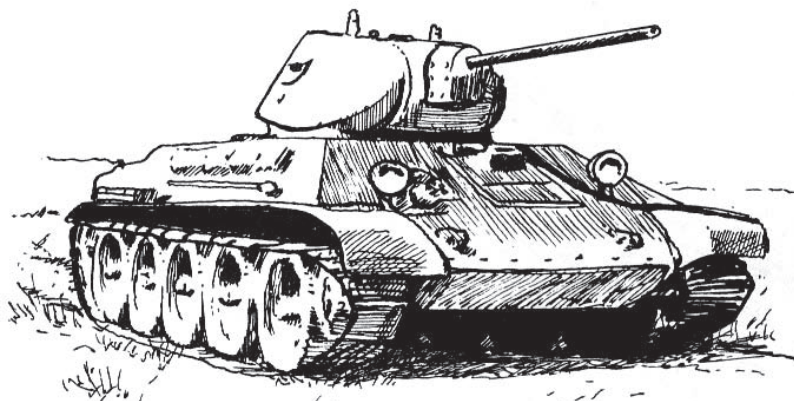
- Repeat Combat Phase
- * Only if *Blitz HQ(s)* active

Supply Phase

- BH Placement
- **Invasion Dispersal Recovery**
- Paratroop *Linkup* Check
- Sea Supply Interdiction
- Enemy Supply Check

Politics Phase

- Demoralization
- French Armistice
- Revolt
- Surrender / Defection
- Defeat / Conquest



5.1 HEADQUARTERS

Headquarters (**HQs**) are special units that **command** friendly forces in movement and support them in combat.

HQs move, defend hexes, and absorb combat losses just like any other unit, except that they can **never** voluntarily engage enemy units, nor do they fire in land combat. Instead, they have *Airstrike* capability (see 5.4).

The “strength” of HQ units is called **Command Value** (cv) with values of **Ø, I, II** and **III**. The *Command Value* determines an HQ’s **range** of control. HQs lose 1 cv each time they exercise command, and can also take losses in combat, but can be rebuilt by Production.

Field HQs represent Axis or Allied Army Groups, and Soviet “Fronts”.

Command Range (in hexes) equals their CV: they can command all friendly units within this range.

Supreme HQs (**SHQs**, see 5.7) represent national high commands. Their *Command Range* covers the entire *Front*. They can command rail/sea *Strategic Movement* as well as normal land movement, but they can control only a few units at a time.

Theatre HQs (**THQs**, see 5.8) are smaller SHQs with limited command ability within a specific *front* or nation.

5.2 HQ ACTIVATION

During the *Command Phase*, the *Active Player* **activates** any HQs by revealing them (tipping them forward, face-up). HQs engaged in *battle* hexes can activate normally.

5.21 Deploying HQs

When activating, HQs can **deploy** (move one hex).

Note: in Mud weather, HQs cannot deploy: they can only activate in their current locations.

HQs can **deploy** into **friendly** territory only, never into battles or enemy /disputed hexes. HQs can **deploy out of** battle hexes, but take immediate *Pursuit Fire* if this constitutes a *Retreat* (6.5).

HQs can *temporarily* overstack when deploying, as long as stacking limits are observed at the end of the next Movement Phase.

Deploying is not 'movement,' so e.g., HQs can deploy across a straits and still mobilize later that turn.

5.3 HQ COMMAND

5.31 Command Range

Activated HQs have a **Command Range** equal to their *Command Value* (in hexes). **Zero Command Range** is limited to units in the same hex **only**.

Command Range cannot be traced through impassable terrain (e.g., lake, sea, alpine) or enemy or neutral-controlled hexes, but can be traced through disputed hexes and friendly battles. It extends over *front* boundaries without adverse effect.

Command Range is determined at the **beginning** of a *Movement* or *Combat Phase*, and lasts unchanged throughout that phase.

5.32 HQ Disruption

HQs may become **Disrupted** due to weather or other conditions. *Disrupted* HQs function at **one cv less** than nominal value. The effect is **cumulative** if multiple causes apply.

Example: A disrupted HQ III has an effective Command Range of 2 hexes, and only 2 cv of Airpower. A disrupted HQ Ø has no command ability at all.

Note: SHQs in London, Berlin, Warsaw or Moscow are not disrupted by weather.

5.33 Axis Logistics

Axis HQs activating outside their normal *fronts* (see sidebar) are penalized for **Command** purposes as follows:

- They are *disrupted* for Command purposes and cannot *Blitz*.

Exceptions:

- EF** HQs command normally in **WF**;
- AG'G'** (a *MF Expedition*) can command normally in the **MF** if it has *Tunis* or *Istanbul Basing* (see 21.385).

5.34 Allied Coordination

Movement. Allied HQs command the movement of **national** units only. Britain / US are one nationality for the purposes of this rule (but the French are separate).

However, **any** Allied SHQ (including GQG) can move **any** Allied **minor power** unit, regardless of location.

Combat. Allied (but **not** Soviet) HQs can provide *combat support* and *airstrikes* for any Allied units in *Command Range*.

5.35 Axis Coordination

Axis HQs can command **any** Axis units in movement and support any Axis units in combat.

Inactive HQs

Inactive HQs remain upright in hidden mode, and move (like any other unit) under command of another activated HQ.

Ø CV HQs

An activated HQ Ø can only command units in its own hex and will self-destruct upon deactivation. Given the high cost of rebuilding HQs, only desperate situations warrant this tactic.

HQs reduced below Ø cv by disruption have no command ability at all (including commanding invasions/paradrops).

Axis Logistics

While gamers can load HQs into a *Front* without limit, historically the practical limit of logistics was probably reached in both the East and the Med. In the game, therefore, historical levels can only be exceeded at the cost of diminishing returns.

Axis East Front HQs

OKH (SHQ)
Army Group North
Army Group Center
Army Group South
Army Group A

Axis West Front HQs

OKW (SHQ)
OB West
Army Group B
Army Group C
Army Group E
Army Group G*

* AG 'G' is a *MF Expedition* (see 21.313)

Axis Med Front HQs

Army Group Afrika
Commando Supremo THQ

Axis North Front HQs

Dietl THQ

5.4 HQ AIRPOWER

HQs have **Airstrike** capability. Their *Air Range* is based on their cv and their *Air Firepower* depends on the current overall airpower balance.

During *Combat*, active HQs can conduct **one** Airstrike into any *active battle* within *Air Range*. Only **one** Airstrike is allowed per battle.

See **13.0 AIRPOWER** for details.

5.5 HQ DEACTIVATION

After commanding movement and /or combat, HQs are **deactivated** by reducing them 1 step and turning them upright (hidden). Deactivated HQs **cannot** move in the Blitz phase.

HQs that *deactivate* at the end of Movement can move **themselves** (*mobilize*) and are termed *Mobile*.

HQs that remain active (face-up) during *Combat* for *Combat Support* cannot mobilize during Movement.

5.51 Mobilizing HQs

After deactivating, HQs can **mobilize** by making a normal **land** move **in addition** to any hex moved to *deploy*. HQs that *mobilize* are *deactivated* during *Combat* and thus cannot command *Airstrikes* or provide *Combat Support*.

HQs that *Retreat* (are the last unit to leave a battle) by *mobilizing* must take immediate *Pursuit Fire* (see **6.52**).

5.52 Combat Support HQs

Active HQs can forego *mobilizing* and remain *activated* during the *Combat* phase in order to command *Airstrikes* and provide *Combat Support* to units within range. Following *Combat*, **Combat Support HQs** deactivate in their current hex.

5.6 BLITZ HQS

HQs can be activated as **Blitz HQs** by placing a BLITZ marker on them. *Blitz HQs* must expend a **second step** and command a **second** pair of Movement/ *Combat* phases in that Player-Turn.

During the initial Movement and *Combat* phases, a *Blitz HQ* functions as any other active HQ, except that it *cannot mobilize* at the end of the first *Movement* phase.

Following the initial *Movement* & *Combat* phases, remove Blitz markers from *Blitz HQs* and reduce them 1 step, leaving them face-up in the same hex

(they cannot *deploy* another hex).

A *Blitz HQ* exerts command during the *Blitz Movement* phase. Units within its reduced *Command Range* are eligible to move **again** (**except** HQs just *deactivated* or units that moved *strategically* that turn).

Following *Blitz Movement*, *Blitz HQs* can *mobilize* (and *deactivate*), or remain activated to provide *Airstrikes* and *Combat Support* during *Blitz Combat*.

NOTE: Unsupported Blitz Combat is allowed only in Fronts with activated Blitz HQs.

Blitz HQs are *deactivated* by reducing them a **second** step and then returning them upright.

5.7 SUPREME HQS

Supreme HQs (SHQs) are "high command" HQs with unique capabilities.

- SHQs can command **any** unit on that *Front*, regardless of distance.
- SHQs can command (rail or sea) *Strategic Movement* (**6.62**) as well as normal land movement.
- SHQs **can** command *Invasions* (**15.5**) or *Paradrops* (**14.2**).
- SHQs can command "strategic" airstrikes at double cv range.
- **However**, SHQs **cannot** *Blitz* or provide *Combat Support*.

5.71 Supreme Moves

The *Command Range* of SHQs extends over entire *Fronts*. They command a limited number of **Supreme Moves** within that *front*, regardless of range. Activated SHQs command **2 Supreme Moves** per cv. For example, II CV SHQs can command **four** Supreme Moves.

*Note: SHQs in London, Berlin, Warsaw or Moscow are **not** disrupted by weather.*

Supreme Moves can move **any unit** on the *front* (including unsupplied or surrounded units), regardless of distance. The commanded unit can move *normally* by land (for example, to attack or enter enemy territory), or more rapidly **within friendly territory** by *Strategic* (rail, sea or road) *Movement* (see **6.62**).

NOTE: Dice placed on the units which moved under SHQ command are useful to keep track of Supreme Moves expended, as they are often mixed with other moves.

Mobile HQs

Mobile HQs are most useful in retreats, exploitation, and general advances, where firepower is secondary to maintaining the advance.

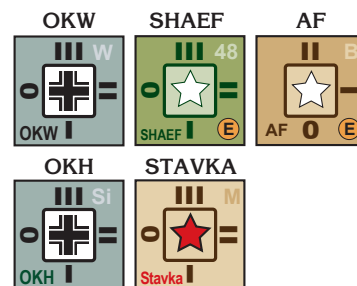
Combat Support HQs

Combat HQs are preferred in pitched battles where attritioning the enemy or obtaining a breakthrough is the object.

Combat Support need not be provided by the same HQ that commanded a unit to move. Any active HQ can provide combat support to units within *Command Range*.

Supreme HQs

Supreme HQs are useful for commanding "oddball" movement of units in remote fronts or rear areas, and are essential for strategic movement of units by road, rail or sea.



Supreme Command

Supreme HQs can command units to move and attack by land movement. However, they cannot provide combat support to ground units (although they can provide long-range airpower).

Supreme HQs can move unsupplied units, even when they have been surrounded in a "pocket". Normal HQs (unless they are inside the same pocket) are usually unable to provide command to surrounded forces.

HQs and Weather

HQs, SHQs and THQs are disrupted by the weather in the hex they occupy, not the weather in the hexes where they command. However, a SHQ in its own capital is not disrupted by weather.

SHQ Over-Activation

Activating an SHQ twice per month (in both Player-Turns) is possible, but limits future options and should be avoided.

As with other units, Supreme HQs, can be built up only **one** step per Production phase, so the SHQ will be weakened until it can be "rested" for a month.

5.72 SHQ Command Range

SHQ *Command Range* is not measured in hexes, but extends over the entire *front* they occupy. They can also sometimes *Cross-Command* into other *fronts* (see below).

Axis SHQs. OKH can command units in either the *East* or *West Front* (but **not** in the **Med Front**), whichever it occupies. OKW can similarly command Axis units in the *West* or *Med Front* (but **not** in the **East Front**).

Allied SHQs can command the movement of **national** units within the *front* they occupy, and **Allied minor** units *anywhere*.

Soviet SHQ STAVKA can command the movement of **any** Soviet units on any *front*.

5.721 WF-MF/NF Cross-Command

Axis OKW and Allied SHQs in the **WF** can simultaneously command units in the **MF** or **NF** (or vice-versa). They command **normally** in the *front* they occupy and at **half efficiency** in the other *front* (i.e., **two** *Supreme Moves* are expended per strategic or normal land move commanded).

Example: Allied SHAEF in the WF can command one MF sea move (e.g., Tobruk to Alexandria) for two Supreme Moves expended.

5.722 WF-EF Cross-Command

Axis OKH can simultaneously command units in the **EF** and **WF**, commanding **normally** in the *front* it occupies, and at **half efficiency** in the other *front* (at double cost as above).

5.723 Flex points

From certain locations, Axis and Allied SHQs can Cross-Command in **either** of two *fronts* at full efficiency, or at half efficiency in another *front*.

Berlin (EF Inactive*): WF or EF
or Warsaw (EF Active*): WF or EF
Malta/Gibraltar: WF or MF
Copenhagen/Glasgow: WF or NF

* See 21.22

5.73 SHQ Mobilization

Active SHQs can also *deactivate* and *mobilize* after Movement. If they do, they are not active during Combat, and cannot command Airstrikes.

SHQs can mobilize normally by land move, **or strategically**, by *Rail* (9.21), *Sea* (15.31), or *Road Move* (21.352). This does **not** count as a *Supreme Move* spent.

SHQs can move **further** than this single strategic move (e.g., from England to Gibraltar) by reserving *Supreme Moves* for this purpose.

5.74 SHQ Combat Support

Supreme HQs **can never** provide combat support. Units they command for movement fight *unsupported* unless they can receive combat support from an active *Field HQ*.

5.75 SHQ Air Range

Active SHQs can command *Airstrikes* as other HQs, but with **double Air Range** (see also 13.31). Airstrikes can be made into **any** battle hex in range, even in other *fronts* (but **not** into the *Med Front* unless accompanying a sea invasion).

5.8 THEATER HQs

Theatre HQs (THQs) exist for certain *Fronts* and minor powers. THQs are less powerful, but cheaper SHQs.

- THQs can only **activate** (and command) units within specified fronts or nations (e.g. the *Med Front* for CS and ME, the *NF* for Dietl, or *Finland* for Mannerheim).
- THQs only command **one** (1) *Supreme Move* per cv.
- THQs have *Air Range* **equal** to their CV (**not** double).
- THQs **cannot** Blitz, support combat, or command *Paradrops* or *Sea Invasions*.

Exceptions: the following THQs **can** support combat in certain areas (tracing *Command Range* in hexes as for FHQs):

- **Dietl** within the *North Front*,
- **ME** within the *Southern Zone* (MF),
- **Sweden** THQ within *Sweden*, and
- **Mannerheim** within *Finland*.

• THQs **can** mobilize by rail, sea or road *Strategic Movement* and can reserve *Supreme Moves* to extend this (as 5.73)

- THQs cost **5 PPs**/step to rebuild.

5.9 INVASION/PARA HQs

HQs can activate to command *Sea Invasions* (15.5) or *Paradrops* (14.2).

Invasion HQs and **Paradrop HQs** expend **all** movement command ability to send a **single unit** on a sea invasion or a paradrop, and must begin the **COMMAND** phase **stacked** with that unit.

SHQs (but not **THQs**) can serve as *Invasion/Paradrop HQs*.

SHQ Cross Command Example

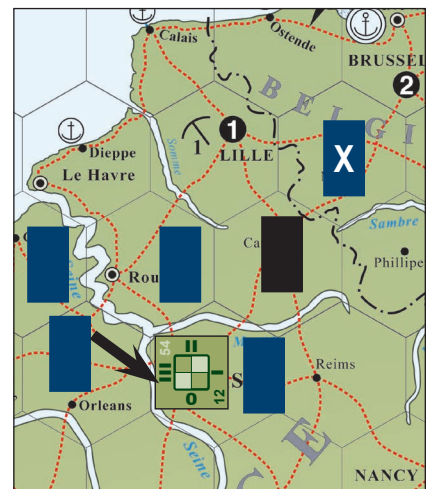
The Allied AF, 2cv strength, is located in Gibraltar and can command four *Supreme moves*. It elects to command two units in the *Med Front* and expends its remaining two moves to command one unit (half-efficiency) in the *West Front*.

Alternatively, the AF SHQ could command two moves in the *West Front* and only one move in the *Med Front*.

Similar benefits would apply to the Axis OKW if it is located in Malta.

HQ Airpower

The *Airpower* of HQs gives them powerful offensive capability when employed in a *Combat Support* role.



HQ ACTIVATION EXAMPLE

The HQ II unit deploys 1 hex (to Paris) and activates. It has *Command Range* 2 hexes. All units within 2 hexes are under command and may move, except unit X since the enemy hex blocks command range to it. All friendly units under command may move. If the HQ doesn't mobilize, it will give combat support to all units within range.

6.1 UNIT MOVEMENT

All unit movement must be commanded by activated HQs. All units *under command* of an active HQ or SHQ can move. Units not under command cannot move. Units can move **once** per *Movement*.

Units move individually, one hex at a time, for 1-3 hexes, depending on their *speed* (see **UNIT CHART** on page 96) and limited by terrain and weather conditions. All units **except cavalry** must stop upon entering a marsh or mountain hex.

MF Off-Road Movement. Units moving off-road in the **MF** have their speed reduced by one (1).

6.2 STACKING LIMITS

The **Stacking Limit** is the maximum number of friendly units that can occupy a hex *after* movement. In Battles, *both* players can occupy the hex up to the *Stacking Limit*.

Any number of units can **pass through** a hex during movement.

6.21 Terrain Stacking

The *Stacking Limit* of a hex depends on its *terrain*, as follows:

Clear*: 4 units

Forest/Hill*: 4 units

Marsh: 3 units

Desert: 3 units

Mountain/Tundra: 2 units

* In the **MF**, the stacking limit for **Clear & Hill** terrain types is 3 units.

Cities, fortresses, etc., are not “terrain” and do **not** affect stacking.

6.22 Overstacking

Players cannot voluntarily overstack hexes. If a hex becomes involuntarily overstacked (e.g., due to *Repulse*), excess units are *unsupplied* and lose 1 cv in the **enemy Supply** phase, **largest units first** (owners choice between equals),

Exception: HQs can temporarily overstack when deploying, but stacking limits must be observed at the end of a *Movement* phase.

6.3 ENGAGEMENT

6.31 Engaging

A unit that enters a **Battle Hex** (one containing enemy units) is **engaging**, and must **stop** movement.

6.32 Disengaging

A unit that voluntarily leaves a *battle*

hex is **Disengaging**.

Disengaging units can exit *battle* hexes only into adjacent **friendly** hexes (not *enemy* or *disputed* hexes, see 8.0), after which they can continue to move normally.

Important: units that disengage cannot re-engage in that same move.

If all hexes adjacent to a *battle hex* are either enemy, disputed or other *battle* hexes, the engaged units in it are **pinned**: they cannot disengage.

6.33 Hexside Limits

The **Hexside Limit** is the maximum number of units that can *engage* or *disengage* across a hexside in that *Movement* phase. There is **no limit** on movement across hexsides unless it is into or out of a *battle*.

The *Hexside Limit* depends on hexside terrain and weather. A maximum of **two** units can engage or disengage across a **Clear** terrain hexside per *Movement* phase. Only **one** (1) unit can engage or disengage across a non-**Clear** terrain hexside (or any hexside in **Mud** weather).











Both *engaging* and *disengaging* contribute toward the *hexside limit*. That is, if a unit disengages across a forest hexside, another unit cannot engage across that hexside during the same *Movement* phase.

6.4 ATTACKS

Units initiating a new battle (entering a hex occupied **only** by enemy units) are **Attacking**, and mandatory combat follows. Units entering an **ongoing battle** (friendly units are already engaged there) do not constitute an *attack* and this does *not* force combat.

Important: At least one unit must remain in a battle throughout a *Movement* phase to maintain an ongoing battle. *Disengaging all units from a battle while engaging with new units constitutes both a Retreat and an Attack* (mandatory combat). This **may** change who is Original Defender (7.12).

Attacking units are **not** revealed as they engage. Leave all units upright until the beginning of the *Combat* phase to identify this as an *Attack* rather than an *Ongoing Battle*.

UNIT TYPE	SPEED		
	DRY	MUD	SNOW
	3	1	1
	3	1	1
	2 ¹	1	1
	3	2	2
	1 ²	1 ²	1 ²
	0 ³	0 ³	0 ³
	2 ¹	1	1
	2	1	1
	2	1	1
	2	1	1

¹ Allied Infantry/Amph move 3 hexes
² Supreme move only
³ Rail/Sea (Supreme) Movement only

Terrain & Movement

Most terrain has no effect on unit movement (speed). The exceptions are Mountain and Marsh hexes, where units (except cavalry) must stop even if the hex is not defended.

Disengaging

Units in combat are engaged and can only disengage (leave the battle hex) into friendly hexes.

Note that when friendly units control hexes to the enemy rear, it becomes possible to move engaged units “forward” from battles into such controlled hexes.

MF Movement

In the **MF**, roads exist only where shown (and along RR lines). Off-road movement speed in the **MF** is reduced by one hex for all units.

Note that this means that static units in the **MF** cannot leave the roads!

6.5 RETREATS

Retreats occur when one side in a battle disengages **all remaining units** from that battle.

6.51 Rearguards

A player *disengaging* **all** friendly units from a battle must designate **one** unit as **Rearguard**. The *Rearguard* is then subject to **Pursuit Fire** from *all* enemy units in the battle before it makes its disengagement move.

The *Rearguard* remains in the battle hex during movement, placed **on top** of enemy units to identify it as such. After **all** other friendly movement is completed, *Pursuit Fire* is made on the *rearguard(s)* by enemy units in that hex (order chosen by retreating Player). The *rearguard* (assuming it survives *Pursuit Fire*) then *disengages* and completes its move normally.

NOTE: at least one unit must remain in a battle throughout the Movement Phase to avoid a *Retreat* (see sidebar).

6.52 Pursuit Fire

In *Pursuit Fire*, each pursuing unit rolls one die per cv as for normal combat fire (the retreating player must state the speed of his rearguard). However, the *Firepower* of a *Pursuing* unit depends not on its *type* but on its relative speed (under current terrain/ weather conditions) compared to that of the *rearguard*.

Faster pursuers fire *Double Fire (DF)*, scoring a *hit* for each '5' or '6' rolled.

Equally fast pursuers fire *Single Fire (SF)*, *hitting* on '6'. **Slower** pursuers do not fire at all! Each *hit* reduces the *rearguard* by 1 cv (see 7.3).

The *active player* chooses the order of *Retreat* resolution when several are occurring simultaneously. Any defensive advantages due to weather/terrain (e.g., *Double Defense*, see 7.34) **do** apply to the *rearguard* during *Pursuit Fire*.

Elimination of a *rearguard* has no effect beyond the loss of the unit.

6.6 SUPREME MOVES

Supreme HQs do not function like *field HQs*. Instead of commanding all units within a given radius, *SHQs* command **two** (2) **Supreme Moves** per cv (e.g., a *SHQ III* can command **six** *Supreme Moves*) anywhere within the *SHQ's Command Range* (5.72).

6.61 Supreme Land Moves

A *SHQ* can use a *Supreme Move* to command **any** friendly unit within *Command Range* [sidebar] to make a normal land move (*engage, disengage, retreat, enter enemy territory, etc.*).

Units moved by *Supreme Land Move* **can** move again during *Blitz Movement* under **Blitz HQ** command.

6.62 Strategic Movement

Strategic Movement is high-speed movement by rail, sea, or road which can **only** occur under *SHQ/ THQ* command. Units that move strategically **cannot** move again (*Blitz movement*) in the same Turn.

Units cannot enter enemy territory or *engage* by *Strategic Movement*; units can *disengage* strategically (but cannot *Retreat*).

Supreme Moves can be used to make strategic **Rail Moves (9.2)** or **Sea Moves (15.3)**. Multiple *Rail Moves* or *Sea Moves* can be linked together to move long distances, but *Sea* and *Rail movement* cannot be combined in the same turn.

Supreme Moves can also be used in the *Med Front* for **Strategic Road Moves (21.352)**, which double unit speed along roads within friendly territory.

6.7 CHANGING FRONTS

6.71 Land Movement

Units can move freely from one *front* to another without effect, except:

- **Residents (2.8)** are *restricted* to a *Front*.
- **SS, cavalry** and **siege gun** units are prohibited from the **MF** and **NF**.

A unit's *movement speed* depends on the weather conditions on the *front* where it **begins** its move. However, units must still observe the terrain and weather rules of each hex entered (e.g., *Mud*).

6.72 Strategic Movement

SHQ/THQs can command *Rail* or *Sea Movement* that **begins** on their *front* and continues into another *front*, **but in such cases each Rail Move (9.21) segment beginning outside the commanded front (see 5.72) is limited to 5 hexes maximum.**

Example: OKW commands a unit in the WF to rail deep into the EF. Each Rail Move starting in the WF is 10 hexes long; those starting in the EF are 5 hexes max.

6.73 Acclimatization

All units entering the *Med Front* or *North Front* from another *front* (**not** arriving reinforcements) immediately lose **1 or 2 cv** (see 21.351 and 21.441).

Retreats

Disengaging all units from a battle and *Engaging* with new units constitutes a *Retreat* and a new attack (newly initiated Battle with forced Combat). This may also change who is the Original Defender in the Battle.

Rearguards and Pursuit

Armor, Mech, and Cavalry units make ideal rearguards, as their superior speed makes them relatively immune to *Pursuit Fire*. They also make ideal pursuers, for the same reason. In *Mud* or bad terrain, cavalry excels in pursuit. Sacrificial 1 cv rearguards can at times be the best option.

PURSUIT FIREPOWER

PURSUER	FIREPOWER
Faster	Double (DF)
Equal	Single (SF)
Slower	None

SHQ Command Range

SHQ Command Range extends throughout the *Front* they occupy, and usually over other *Fronts* as well (see 5.72).

SHQ command is the only way to move units distant from any friendly *HQ*. The commanded unit need not be in supply, nor in communication with the *SHQ* in any way, just within the *Front[s]* Commanded.

Supreme & Strategic Moves

The distinction between *Supreme Moves* and *Strategic Moves* is important.

Strategic Moves are a *Rail, Sea* or *Road* moves, which travel long distances quickly within friendly territory, but cannot be used to engage enemy forces or retreat. *Strategic Moves* require *SHQ* command.

Supreme Moves are all moves commanded by *SHQs*, including *Strategic Moves* and normal land moves (allowing engagement, retreat, and entry into enemy territory) by otherwise uncommanded units.

Changing Fronts - Rail Movement

Example: A unit in *Leipzig* is commanded to move by rail to *Konigsberg*. It crosses into the *EF* after 4 hexes of its 10-rail-hex *Rail Move*. Since that *Rail Move* began in the *WF*, the unit can move another 6 hexes in the *EF*. Any further *Rail Moves* beginning in the *EF* can only be 5 *Rail Hexes* each.

7.1 BATTLES

7.11 Battle Hexes

A **Battle Hex** is a hex containing both friendly and enemy units. Battles begin when the *Active Player* moves units into a hex containing **only** enemy units. This is called **Attacking**.

7.12 Original Attacker Original Defender

The player who *initiates* a battle is the **Original Attacker** for as long as that battle lasts. The other player is the **Original Defender**. This distinction is crucial because the *Original Defender* maintains control of the *Battle hex* for supply and other purposes.

To maintain this distinction, units of the *Original Defender* are turned *upright* after combat, while those of the *Original Attacker* remain face-up.

7.13 Airstrikes

HQs have attached airpower (see: **13.1**). When a *Combat* phase begins, each active HQ can deliver one *Airstrike* to a battle hex (**7.11**) within that HQ's *Air Range* (**13.11**). Only **one** *Airstrike* per *Combat* phase can be assigned to a *Battle*.

Airstrikes are assigned by placing an **AIRSTRIKE** marker of value equal to the command HQ CV in the *Battle* hex. This must be done while the units of the *Original Defenders* are still upright and hidden.

7.14 Active Battles

Active Battles are those in which combat will occur in the current *Combat* phase. The active player indicates *active battles* by revealing all hidden units in that battle (tip hidden units forward, preserving current CV).

Generally, combat is **optional**. The active player can activate none, some, or all battles. However, battles fought beyond *command range* of an active HQ will be *Unsupported Combat* (see **7.4**).

7.15 Mandatory Combat

Combat is **mandatory** in three cases:

- **New Battle.** Friendly units were moved into a hex containing only enemy units.

NOTE: Moving new units into an existing battle does not force combat (new units are revealed if that side is the Original Attacker).

- **Airstrike Battles:** an *Airstrike* was allocated to that battle.

- **Fortress Battles:** the *Original Attacker* engaged in a Fortress battle. Combat is optional for the *Original Defender*.

Exception: Fortress combat is not mandatory in a Blitz Phase.

7.2 COMBAT RESOLUTION

7.21 Combat Rounds

Combat is resolved by executing a **Combat Round** in each *Active Battle*, in any order desired by the *Active Player* (north to south works well).

7.22 Combat Sequence

A *Combat Round* is resolved for each *Active Battle* as follows:

- **Active** player makes an *Airstrike* (if any), and losses are applied.
- **Passive** player fires *Defensive Fire*, and losses are applied.
- **Active** player fires *Offensive Fire*, and losses are applied.
- **0cv Static Units** without other friendly units in the battle are eliminated (does NOT apply to 0CV HQ units).
- **Original Defender** returns his units upright, marking the end of the *Combat Round* for that battle.

This sequence is also followed for Blitz Combat Rounds.

7.23 Counter-Attacks

Because battles often continue from one turn to another, the *Active Player* in any specific battle can be either the *Original Attacker* or the *Original Defender*.

Thus, when the *active player* activates an existing battle in which he is the *Original Defender*, he becomes the attacker for that *combat round only*, giving the **Original Attacker** the benefit of defensive terrain and defensive first fire in that *Combat Round*.

Note: The Original Attacker never receives Fortress defensive benefits (TF/Triple Defense).

“Attacker” and “Defender”

A clear distinction must be drawn between the *Original Attacker* and *Original Defender* of a hex and the “attacker” and “defender” in a combat round. The *Original Defender* in a battle can choose to activate combat in that hex during his own *Player Turn*, but this would give the *Original Attacker* the benefits of defensive first fire and defensive terrain for that round (n/a in Fortresses).

Extended Battles

Battles are usually not resolved in one *Combat Round*. They often extend over several fortnights, even several months.

Players manage a series of ongoing battles along the frontlines over time, feeding reserves into some battles, retreating in others, and counter-attacking where the enemy is weak.

7.3 COMBAT FIRE

7.31 Executing Fire

To execute *Defensive* or *Offensive Fire*, the owning player rolls one die per cv (i.e., roll 3 dice for a 3cv unit). The owning player chooses the order of unit fire. Depending on the unit's **Firepower** (see **UNIT CHART**), certain results score **hits** and reduce the cv of enemy units.

7.32 Firepower

SF (Single Fire) hits on 6's

DF (Double Fire) hits on 5's and 6's

TF (Triple Fire) hits on 4's, 5's and 6's

QF (Quad Fire) hits on 3's, 4's, 5's and 6's

Example: A 3 cv Armor unit rolls three dice at DF. Each 5 or 6 rolled scores 1 hit.

Terrain can modify **Firepower**. In **marshes**, *Offensive Fire* is always **SF**. In **major cities** *Defensive Fire* is at least **DF**. Mountain units fire **DF** in **mountains**. **Fortress** defenders fire **TF** *Defensive Fire*. In **desert**, armor fires **TF** on offense and mech fires **DF** on offense.

Airstrike firepower depends on the side and scenario (see: **13.23**).

7.33 Applying Hits

Each *hit* normally reduces an enemy unit by 1 cv. *Active* units **always** apply full losses in combat, but *Passive* units may only have to apply partial losses (see **7.34** and **7.35**).

Each loss is applied to the currently **strongest** (highest cv) enemy unit in the battle (owner chooses between equal-cv units). In general, all hits taken must be applied if possible.

When a unit on its last step takes a hit, it is **eliminated** and removed from play (but it can be rebuilt later).

Note: *0cv static units are automatically eliminated if engaged alone at the end of a Combat phase.*

7.34 Double Defense

In adverse terrain (mountains, major cities, etc.) or *unsupported combat* (**7.4**), passive units have **Double Defense**: hits scored are reduced to *half-hits*, and **two half-hits** are required to cause a 1cv loss.

Half-hits within a Combat Round accumulate, carrying over from *Airstrikes* and from one unit's fire to another. Units which have taken a *half-hit* must take the **next half-hit**: two *half-hits* must always cause a loss. However, *half-hits* left over at the **end** of a *Combat Round* are lost

7.35 Triple Defense

In some defensive conditions (fortresses, fort units, *unsupported combat* in adverse terrain), defenders enjoy **Triple Defense**, losing only 1 cv for every **three one-third-hits**.

As with *half-hits*, partial hits accumulate within a combat round but are ignored when left over at the end of one; and a unit that has taken a *one-third-hit* must take the next two *one-third hits*.

7.4 UNSUPPORTED COMBAT

During *Combat* the *active* player can choose to have **Unsupported Combat** in battles that are not within the *Command Range* of any active HQ, or when **no** HQs have been activated that turn.

Note: *Unsupported Blitz Combat can occur only in fronts where a Blitz HQ was activated that turn.*

Unsupported Combat raises the 'defense' level for passive units: normal defense rises to *Double Defense*, *Double Defense* rises to *Triple Defense*, etc.

However, *Unsupported Combat* against a **Fortress hex** is **ineffective**: no offensive hits can be scored (defender still returns **TF** *Defensive Fire*. This can occur with *mandatory fortress combat*.

7.5 FORTRESSES

Original Defenders in **fortress** hexes receive special benefits in *defensive* combat. The *Original Attacker* **never** receives *fortress* defensive benefits.

- Combat is **mandatory** for the *Original Attacker* during active turns (but not *Blitz Combat*, see **7.15**).
- *Original Defenders* have **Triple Defense** (**7.35**) in *passive* combat. They also repulse *Air Assaults* at **TR** (die rolls of 1-3, see **14.41**).
- The **largest** defending unit (owner's choice between equal cv units) has **Triple Fire (TF)** when passive.

7.51 Minor Fortresses

Tobruk is a *minor fortress*.

- Combat is **not** mandatory for the *Original Attacker* after the initial attack. *Unsupported combat* **can** have effect versus *Minor Fortresses*.
- *Original Defenders* have **double defense** in *passive* combat, and the **largest** defending unit (owner's choice between equal cv units) has at least defensive *Double Fire* (**DF**).

Combat Example:

Two Allied units (Armor 4cv and Mech 4cv) move into a clear terrain defended by three German units (Armor 3cv, Infantry 3cv, and Infantry 2cv). Because this is a new battle, combat is mandatory.

Airstrike: The Allied player first executes a 2cv *Airstrike* at TF. Two dice are rolled, a 3 and a 5, resulting in one hit scored. The Axis player must take that hit from a 3cv unit, and chooses the 3cv Infantry, which is reduced to 2cv.

Defensive Fire: The Axis player now fires all three defending units. The Armor 3cv (**DF**) scores one hit (2, 3, 6), and the two Infantry 2cv units score one hit (2, 4) and (3, 6). The first hit is taken from the Mech 4cv, the second from the Armor 4cv.

Offensive Fire: The Allies, who have combat support from an active HQ in range, now fire. The Armor 3cv scores two hits at DF (3, 5, 5) and the Mech 3cv misses at SF (3, 4, 5). The first hit must be taken from the German Armor 3cv (the strongest unit) and the second can be taken from either Infantry 2cv.

This ends the combat phase. The three Axis units are now turned upright to indicate that they are the *Original Defenders*.

Double Defense

Only passive units can receive the benefit of *Double* or *Triple* defense.

Example: The Allied player initiates a battle for Antwerp. Combat is mandatory that round. The Axis units have *Defensive DF* and *Double Defense*. In the next *Player-Turn*, the Axis player adds two more units to the hex and counter-attacks. In this round, the Allied units have *Defensive DF* and *Double Defense*.

Recording Partial Hits

A 45 degree rotation of a unit can serve to temporarily indicate a "half-hit" scored against that unit that combat round.

Likewise a one-third-hit can be indicated by 30 degree rotation.

Fort Units

Triple Defense also applies when a fort unit is the largest defender (see 2.28).

7.6 ASSAULTS

When **all** units initiating a battle are attacking across river hexsides, they are conducting a **River Assault** [place marker]. In the **initial** combat round, Defensive Fire may **Repulse** one or more assaulting units, forcing them to retreat immediately.

Similarly, a **Sea Assault** occurs when **all** attackers are invading by *Sea Invasion* (15.53); and **Air Assaults** occur when **all** attackers are dropping by air (14.41). A combination of two or more of these assaults is termed a **Combined Assault** (see 7.65).

Important: If even one attacking unit is not assaulting as defined above, the overall attack does not constitute an Assault, and there is no possibility of Repulse.

7.61 Repulse

Assaults are resolved during *Combat*. During the *first Defensive Fire* of a battle, defending units fire and score *hits* normally, but certain **low** die rolls will **Repulse** an attacking unit, forcing it to return immediately to the hex from which it attacked (see **REPULSE TABLE, SIDEBAR**).

NOTE: Ambivalent nations (16.711) Repulse assaults only on die rolls of '1'.

Example: In a dry-weather River Assault, each '1' or '2' rolled repulses one attacking unit.

After all defensive fire has been made, each *Repulse* is applied in turn to the assaulting unit with the *least cv* strength remaining in the battle (owner's choice of equals). *Repulses* are **not** retreats: no *Pursuit Fire* is made.

Then, all hits are applied to the strongest (cv) attacking units. Hits are applied to unrepulsed attackers if possible, then to repulsed units if necessary. Finally, any unrepulsed attackers return *Offensive Fire*.

Repulse only applies to the **initial Defensive Fire** following an *Assault*: Attacking units that are not repulsed form a *bridgehead*, and from then on the battle is treated as any other.

7.62 River Assaults

River Assaults are normally repulsed on die roll of 1-2. That is, for every '1' or '2' rolled during *Defensive Fire*, the weakest assaulting unit must return to the hex from which it attacked.

During **Mud** weather, *River Assaults*

are *Repulsed* more easily (rivers swollen).

In **Snow** weather, *River Assaults* are impossible to *Repulse* (rivers frozen).

Med Front River Assaults are less easily *Repulsed* (except across the Nile).

7.63 Sea Assaults

The chances of repulsing a *Sea Assault* depend on the type of unit attacking (amphibious units have the best chance to land successfully) and the *Naval Supremacy* balance. If a unit is repulsed making a *Sea Assault*, it must return to its invasion port (see 15.531).

7.64 Air Assaults

Air Assaults are difficult to repel, but if repulsed, the paratroop unit **takes an automatic hit**, and must return its original hex (see 14.41).

7.65 Combined Assaults

When two or more *different* kinds of assaults are made *simultaneously* into **one** hex, it is called a **Combined Assault**, and the **lowest** *Repulse* number applies to **all** assaulting units.

7.7 UNIT CAPITULATION

Demoralized (16.71) Axis minor powers become ambivalent (16.711) about continuing the fight. They Repulse enemy Assaults only on die rolls of "1" and their units capitulate (and are eliminated) in reaction to certain Allied combat die rolls (see below).

- **Norway:** If Allied DE **NP** is in effect, Norwegian units *capitulate* on **Allied** combat die rolls of **1-2**.
- **Vichy:** If *Demoralized (16.71)*, Vichy units are *ambivalent* and *capitulate* on combat die rolls of **1** by British units, or **1-2** by US units.
- **Portugal:** Likewise, *ambivalent* Portuguese units *capitulate* on combat die rolls of **1** by US units, and **1-2** by British units.

ASSAULT REPULSES (Defensive Fire)

River	1-2 (1-3 Mud) ¹		
Air	1 ²		
Sea	FNS*	NP*	ENS*
by Amph. units	1-3	1-2	1
by Other units	1-4	1-3	1-2

¹ 1 for MF rivers/canals except Nile.

² 1-3 by Fortress Defenders

* Friendly Naval Supremacy / Naval Parity / Enemy Naval Supremacy, from the point of view of the player rolling to interdict/repulse enemy movement or supply.

River Assault (Example)

A player attacks across two river hexsides with a 3cv armor unit and a 4cv infantry. Defending is a 4cv infantry unit.

After an *Airstrike* scores one hit, the Defending player fires his (now) 3cv unit and rolls (1, 4, 6), scoring one hit and one *Repulse*. First, the weaker 3cv armor is repulsed, then the hit is applied to the 4cv attacking infantry.

The attacking infantry (now 3cv) then fires *Offensive Fire*, scoring one hit with rolls of (3, 3, 6). A *bridgehead* is now established in that hex enabling other attacking units to join the battle in future turns without possibility of *Repulse*.

Ground Support

Airstrikes are very helpful in *Assaults*, reducing *Defensive Fire* (and the chance of *Repulse*) before it occurs.

Combined Assault Example

A 3cv Paratroop unit makes an *Air Assault* in support of a *River Assault* by two infantry units of 4cv and 3cv, making it a *Combined Assault*.

Normally, *River Assaults* are repulsed on '1' or '2', but adding the *Air Assault* reduces repulses to '1' only. Assuming a defending infantry at 4cv, and *Defensive Fire* die rolls of (6, 1, 5, 2), one hit and one *repulse* are scored. Without the *air assault*, two repulses would have occurred.

The *repulse* would be taken by the 3cv Para or the 3cv Infantry (the lowest CV unit of the attacker's choice) and the hit must be taken on the 4cv infantry, the strongest remaining unit. The attackers succeed in establishing a *Bridgehead* with two units. Without the *Paratroop* support, both infantry units would have been repulsed.

8.1 HEX CONTROL

Hex Control is defined by the *location* of units and their ZOCs on the map **at the beginning of each phase** and hex control status lasts unchanged **throughout** that phase (this includes *Production* and *Diplomacy* phases, etc.). Movement *through* a hex does **not**, in itself, affect hex control.

In each new phase, hex control can change due to movement, combat, supply attrition, etc.

8.2 ZONES OF CONTROL

Unengaged, *supplied* units have a **Zone of Control (ZOC)** that extends into *unoccupied* adjacent hexes, but never across impassable hexsides, rivers, or straits. *Engaged* or *unsupplied* units **have no ZOC**.

8.3 HEX STATUS

Hexes can be *Friendly*, *Enemy*, or *Disputed*. Use inverted markers to indicate hex control as needed.

8.31 Friendly Hexes

Hexes occupied **only** by friendly units, or within the *undisputed* ZOC of friendly units, are **friendly** controlled. *Battle* hexes are friendly to the *Original Defender*.

IMPORTANT: Units never control foreign neutral territory.

8.32 Enemy Hexes

Hexes that are *friendly* to an opponent are **enemy** hexes.

8.33 Disputed Hexes

An *unoccupied* hex into which both sides exert a ZOC is **Disputed**.

8.34 Neutral Hexes

Hexes within *Neutral* nations (16.1) are *neutral*. **ZoCs** do not project into them, and command and/or rail and supply lines cannot be traced through them.

8.35 Prior Control

Hex control remains unchanged unless altered as above.

8.36 Hex Control By Isolation

At the **end** of the friendly **SUPPLY** phase, enemy-controlled hexes that are **unoccupied** and completely surrounded by friendly-controlled hexes pass over to friendly control (note: seas are not "hexes").

Important: this does **NOT** apply to areas (Districts/Regions). Areas must be *actually occupied* to change control.

8.4 CONTROL EFFECTS

Hex control does **not** affect land movement: units can move freely into **and out of** vacant hexes that are *disputed* or *enemy* controlled.

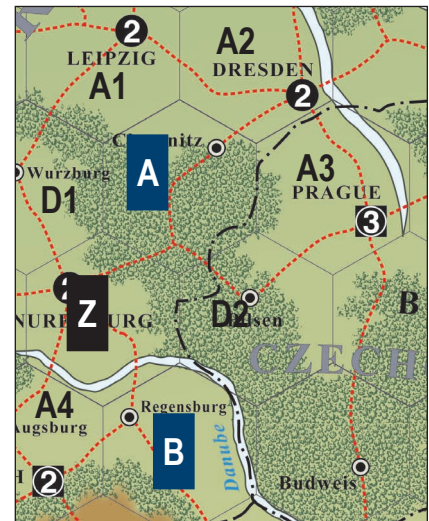
However, hex control has other important effects as follows:

- **Command:** HQs can deploy *only* into *friendly* hexes. *Command Range* can only be traced through *friendly* or *disputed* hexes, not through *enemy* or *neutral* hexes.
- **Movement:** *Strategic Movement* (6.62) can be made into or through *friendly* hexes only. Units can *Disengage* or *Retreat* only into *friendly* hexes.
- **Supply:** *Supply Lines* can be traced only through *friendly* or *disputed* hexes, not *enemy* hexes.

The *Rail/Sea Supply Network* can be traced only through *friendly* hexes, never through *enemy* or *disputed* hexes.

Rail Lines can be traced into, but not through, friendly *Battle* hexes.

HEX CONTROL

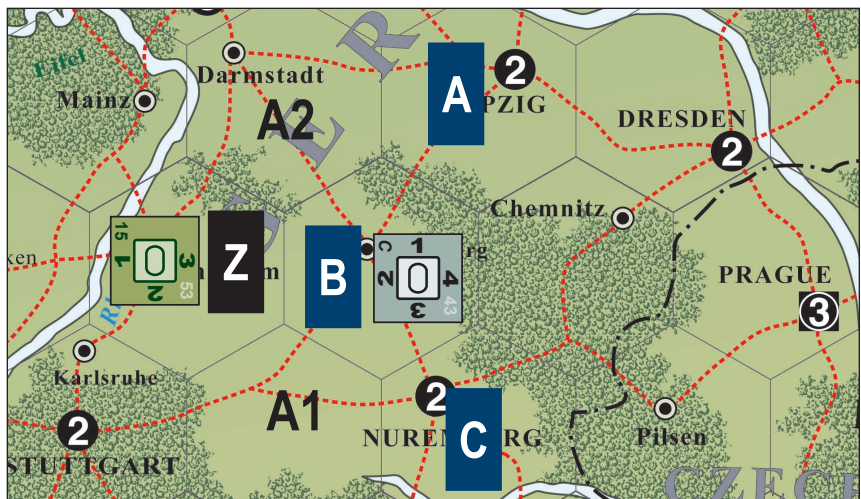


Hex Control

Allied units A and B control their own hexes, as does German unit Z. Hexes A1, A2, and A3 lie within the ZOC of unit A and are *Friendly* to the Allied player. Hex D1 and D2 are *Disputed*, lying within the ZOCs of units A and Z. Hex A4 is **not** a disputed hex because the ZOC of German unit Z does not extend across the river.

Command Range

Command Range can always be traced through any hex containing an upright Friendly unit or a Friendly ZOC.



Units B and Z are the Original Defenders (upright) and control their battle hexes. The units in both battles have no ZOC. Units A and C control their own and all adjacent unoccupied hexes (except those across rivers). Unit B can disengage into any adjacent hex except the other battle. The German armor unit can't disengage at all. If the Allied Armor was absent, hexes A1 and A2 would be *disputed*, (by the ZOC of Unit Z) but the German armor unit still could not disengage into either hex.

9.1 RAIL LINES

Rail lines are shown as dotted red lines. Rail lines connecting off-map Areas can be heavy or thin dotted lines, denoting their length (see 18.3).

9.11 Railways over Seas

Rail Bridges/Causeways. The rail lines south from Melitopol (USSR) and west from Odense (Denmark) are **continuous** where they cross Straits. Normal land movement is **not** allowed across these causeways (unless there is also a straits crossing).

Rail Ferries (red straits arrow). Rail ferries connect the Rail Lines between Reggio-Messina, across Lake Van, and Copenhagen-Odense.

A *Rail Move* must **stop** at a Rail Ferry. Another *Rail Move* is used in crossing, and still another *Rail Move* is used to continue on after crossing the straits in that same movement phase.

Rail movement must **end** at straits with no ferry or causeway, and **cannot** continue on to the other side this turn.

9.12 Rail Line Control

A *Rail Line* is *friendly* if it connects to the friendly *Supply Origin* (**London**, **Berlin** or **SIBERIA**, see 10.2) *within friendly territory*.

Friendly Rail Lines cannot enter *Enemy* or *Disputed* hexes. They can enter or leave (but not pass through) **friendly** Battle hexes.

Friendly Rail Lines also extend across sea zones along *Sea Lanes* (15.4) between friendly ports.

In cases of doubt, the furthest extension of a *friendly Rail Line*, can be marked with a *Railhead Marker* at the beginning of a phase.

9.13 Map-Edge Rail Routes

Along some map edges are *Zones* containing off-map *Areas* (see 18.0). *Rail Routes* often join such *Areas*.

Short Rail Routes (thin red dotted lines) are considered 2 hexes long; **Long Rail Routes** (thick red dotted lines) are considered 5 hexes long).

9.2 RAIL MOVEMENT

Rail Movement is a form of *Strategic Movement* (6.62), always commanded by a SHQ or THQ. Rail Moves cannot be combined with strategic Sea or Road Movement in the same turn, nor can they be combined with land moves (even in a Blitz phase).

9.21 Rail Moves

A *Rail Move* consists of moving one unit along *friendly Rail Lines* up to **ten** (10) hexes. A *Rail Move* must begin, traverse, and end in friendly rail hexes **only**. Units cannot *engage* (enter battle hexes) by rail.

Each *Rail Move* expends one *Supreme Move* (see 6.6). Units can make linked multiple *Rail Moves* to move further than 10 hexes, each *Rail Move* expending one *Supreme Move*.

See 6.72 for *Rail Moves that cross front boundaries*.

Units that move strategically (by rail or sea) cannot also move normally in the same Turn, including in the Blitz phase.

Note: Allied Air Supremacy (beginning June 1944), limits Axis WF Rail Movement to five (5) hexes per Rail Move.

9.22 Rail Disengagement

Although units cannot *engage* by rail, they can **disengage** from **friendly** Battle hexes by *Rail Movement*. However, *Rearguard* units can never *Retreat* (6.5) by rail movement.

NOTE: Rail disengagements do count against Hexside Limits.

9.3 RAIL SUPPLY

A hex is in *Rail Supply* if a friendly rail line crosses **into** the hex.

IMPORTANT: *Rail Lines cross into friendly Battle hexes, but not into enemy battle hexes.*

Cities and *Resource Centers* require *Rail/Sea Supply* to produce.

[For unit *Rail Supply* see 10.31].

SUPPLY ORIGIN

AXIS: **Berlin**, provided it has *Rail Supply* to another friendly *Victory City* (see 1.412).

ALLIES: **London**, provided it has *Rail/Sea Supply* to the Atlantic Ocean.

SOVIETS: the **Siberia Region**

Rail Ferry Straits

Rail Ferries (Red Straits) exist across the straits from Messina-Reggio (Sicily), and from Copenhagen to both Odense and **Malmo** (map errata), Denmark. Rail Supply and/or Rail Movement across other straits is not possible.

Rail Lines and National Supply

Because Rail Lines can be traced **into** and **out of** (but not through) friendly battle hexes, national Capitals can still act as national Supply Sources when engaged. The engaged Capital can still trace *National Supply* to the Faction Capital (Berlin or London), tracing Rail Supply **out** of its engaged friendly battle hex. And it can act as the national *Supply Origin* by tracing rail lines out of its engaged friendly battle hex to national units.

Rail/Sea Supply & Production

A city in isolation cannot effectively produce war materials. Equipping a combat unit requires a large variety of products and/or resources, supplied in quantity, and usually from multiple sources.

Rail Entry hexes

All mapedges are marked with potential Rail Entry hexes. Only those on the outer edge of the map play area are Rail Entry hexes, not those abutting another map.

10.1 SUPPLY STATUS

Units able to trace a *Supply Line* to a *Supply Source* are **Supplied**. Units that cannot are **Unsupplied**.

10.2 SUPPLY ORIGIN

All supply originates from the *Supply Origin*. Without a valid *Supply Origin*, friendly units are **unsupplied**.

Axis: Berlin, provided it has **Rail Supply (9.3)** to another friendly *Victory City* (square city symbol).

ALLIES: London, provided it has **Rail/Sea Supply (15.4)** to the ATLANTIC OCEAN.

SOVIETS: The SIBERIA Region.

Note: Supply Origins function normally if engaged.

10.21 National Supply

Major and Minor Power units must trace supply to their **National Capital (1.46)** which in turn must trace **National Supply** with a **Line of Communications (10.22)** to its *Supply Origin* (London or Berlin). **Engaged National Capitals can still trace unit supply in and National Supply out.**

Siege. *National Supply* traced **by sea** via a besieged port can support only **1 cv maximum**.

Straits. *National Supply* can pass through a *Straits* that is **commanded** by the enemy (1 side enemy controlled), but **not** one that is **enemy-controlled (both sides enemy controlled)**. See 1.371.

Cooperating Neutrals. *National Supply* cannot pass through the **land** territory of "neutrals" *Cooperating (16.2)* with the enemy (but **can** pass through *neutral* seas they control). It **can** go through neutral *Protectorates* and *Complying* nations (see DE DS).

NOTE: National Supply does not apply to Great Power units, which trace supply directly to their Supply Origin.

10.22 Lines of Communication

A **Line of Communications (LOC)** is a rail/sea (**not** road) route passing through friendly **or neutral** controlled territory, seas **and straits only**.

A **LOC** cannot pass through enemy-controlled territory, seas **or straits**, or through engaged **or disputed** hexes. It can pass through engaged *Regions* but not engaged *Districts* (see 18.5).



SUPPLY EXAMPLE

The Allies have just moved units X and Y after a breakthrough at Lyon, cutting Axis Supply through those hexes. The Axis RailHeads are shown and the two Axis units (E, F) within 2 hexes are supplied. The Supply Line to these two units can pass through Bordeaux or Bordeaux E1 even though that hex is Disputed. However, the RailHead is back at La Rochelle because Rail lines cannot be traced through Disputed hexes. Axis units A, B, C, and D are all cut off and will be reduced one step in the upcoming Allied Supply Phase.

The Allies must be aware that their own position is somewhat vulnerable. If the Axis successfully engage the unit at Avignon (repulse is possible), Allied units X and Y would be reduced since the Allied RailHead would be at Avignon (Rail lines can enter friendly battles but may never pass through any battle). Attacking the Allied unit at Lyon SE1 from Grenoble would cut off unit X only but there no risk of repulse. The Axis might also attack Lyon or Clermont-Ferrand with the isolated units with the goal of retreating to friendly hexes on the other side on a subsequent turn.

Supply Status Sequencing

Important: Being "Supplied" is not the same as "having a Supply Line".

The timing of supply status determination means that units maintain their supply status between supply checks (which occur at the end of each enemy Player Turn). This sequence has very significant effects on game play.

For example, supplied active units can move to unsupplied locations to cut enemy supply lines without suffering any immediate penalty. However, because supply checks occur at the end of the opponent's Player Turn, enemy units that become unsupplied by this maneuver suffer immediate attrition!

Advanced units will be subject to a Supply Check at the end of the opponent's turn, but if the preceding maneuver eliminates enemy units by supply attrition and opens new supply lines as a result, they will avoid becoming unsupplied!

Also note that because active units moving out of supply maintain their supplied status for a turn, they still exert ZOCs during that entire turn, further extending their range for disrupting supply and rail lines.

If a continuous front is not maintained (or broken), a few units can often cut off a large number of opposing units, inflicting serious losses before the victim can respond. It is essential to maintain a continuous front!

Visualizing Supply Lines

Two-hex Supply Lines to a Rail/Sea Supply Source can always be traced through hexes containing upright friendly units and through Disputed hexes (see 8.33).

National Supply

National Supply reflects the need for a belligerent to remain in communication with its great power ally. Isolation usually results in quick collapse of morale as well as supply.

In game terms, nations cannot resort to 'hunkering down' in the capital at double defense. National Supply requires countries to defend their capital's communications with their Supply Origin. If the capital is isolated, a nation's armies are doomed.

Some specific applications:

Poland: because National Supply can be traced through neutrals and seas, Poland (and Rumania) can trace National Supply through neutral Russia and northern seas to London.

Belgium: engaging Brussels does not compromise its National Supply, but control/engagement of Rotterdam AND Ostende closes the straits to its National Supply or reduces it to 1 cv maximum.

Greece: engaging Athens fails to affect Greek National Supply but reduces it to 1cv if all other ports are lost or engaged.

10.3 SUPPLY SOURCES

10.31 Rail Supply

Friendly rail hexes that are connected by rail to the friendly *Supply Origin* (even if engaged) are said to be in **Rail Supply**. Units and Cities in such hexes are also in **Rail Supply** (even if engaged).

Hexes in *Rail Supply* act as friendly **Supply Sources**. The most advanced such hexes are called *Railheads*. These can be clarified with RAILHEAD markers.

Rail Supply cannot be traced into or through *neutral* territory (exceptions: see 16.2 *Cooperation* and 21.492 *Swedish Compliance*).

10.32 Sea Supply

Sea Lanes through friendly seas connect friendly ports. Friendly *Sea Lanes* and *Rail Lines* together form the **Rail/Sea Supply Network**, which acts as a friendly *Supply Source*.

NOTE: *Sea Lanes cannot pass through a Straits if either side is enemy controlled.*

Units and Cities dependent on *Sea Lanes* as well as *rail lines* are in **Sea Supply** (see 15.4).

NOTE: *Engaged ports cannot be used for Sea Supply (except see 11.41 **Siege Supply**).*

10.33 Road Supply

Roads in the **MF**, **NF** and mapedge areas that are connected to *Rail/Sea Supply* can also act as *supply sources*. Dependent units are in **Road Supply**. *Road Supply* extends into engaged friendly *Road* hexes as for *Rail Supply*.

10.34 BeachHead Supply

BeachHeads (see 15.63) can also provide a *Supply Source*, even when deployed in enemy battle hexes.

10.4 SUPPLY LINES

Supply Lines are routes no more than **two hexes** long connecting a unit to its *Supply Source*.

NOTE: *MF Desert Zone supply lines can be no longer than one hex (see 21.34).*

Supply Lines can be traced through *Friendly* or *Disputed* hexes, including friendly *Battle* hexes. They can **never** be traced through *enemy* hexes, *neutral* territory (16.1) or impassable terrain.

10.5 SUPPLY CHECKS

Friendly unit *supply status* is determined during the **Supply Check**

(**enemy** *Supply* phase). Units able to trace a *Supply Line* are **Supplied**.

Units unable to do so are **Unsupplied** (place marker). They have no ZOC and are subject to **Supply Attrition** (see 10.6).

Once determined, the *supply status* of a unit continues **unchanged** until the **next** *Supply Check*. In effect, *Supplied* units carry enough supplies to last until the next check.

10.6 SUPPLY ATTRITION

During the friendly *Supply Check* (*SUPPLY* phase), *unsupplied enemy* units normally **lose one step**.

These are the only exceptions:

- **Fortress Supply** (10.7).
- **Base Supply** (10.71).
- **Siege Supply** (10.8).
- *Fort* cadres (2.28).
- **Tito** within Yugoslavia (16.732).

10.7 FORTRESS SUPPLY

Fortress hexes (including Tobruk) can supply **one** defending unit (*Original Defender*) without a *Supply Line*. Units receiving *Fortress Supply* must be **in the fortress hex**.

The **largest** defender (owner's choice between equals) is *supplied*. All other units are *unsupplied* and suffer *supply attrition*.

NOTE: *Units in Fortresses (and Bases) do have a ZOC.*

10.71 Base Supply

Bases automatically supply **one** *defending* unit as above (if 2 or more units are there, **neither** is supplied!).

10.8 SIEGE SUPPLY

Sea Supply (15.4) through *engaged* ports is called **Siege Supply**, which can only support **one** unit at *cadre* strength (see 15.41).

NOTE: *Fortresses do not provide Siege Supply in addition to Fortress Supply.*

Friendly Naval Supremacy: *Siege Supply* can supply **one** unit of **any cv**.

Friendly Naval AND Air Supremacy: *Siege Supply* can supply any number of units. Engaged ports serve as *Rail/Sea Supply Sources*, to which units can trace *Supply Lines*.

NOTE: *If Sea Supply is negated by Sea Interdiction, Siege Supply is also negated.*

Bypassing Tactics and Supply Lines

Another implication of the *Supply* rules undermines the defensive tactic of denying rail lines with sacrificial blocking units in double defense locations (limiting enemy *supply* options until these blocking locations are reduced).

But blocking units are easily bypassed as follows: the blocking unit is engaged, canceling its ZOC. Other active units bypass the enemy blocking unit, occupying advanced locations within the 2-hex *supply* range of friendly rail lines, and exerting their ZOCs one hex further.

These ZOCs will then control all hexes behind the blocking unit (which, being engaged, has no ZOC), cutting its *supply*, while the bypassing units maintain valid *supply* lines! The blocking unit suffers *supply attrition* while advanced friendly units remain *supplied* and free to advance further next turn.

Supply: Split Allied/Soviet Turns

Under certain conditions the Allies and Soviets do not move in succession. For example: during *Snow* weather prior to the 2nd Front, the order of turns is Soviet, Axis, Allies. Later in the war, after the 2nd Front, the order of turns, during *EF Dry/Mud* weather is Allies, Axis, Soviets.

This can lead to problems interpreting *supply attrition* when both Allies and Soviets are contributing to the blocking of Axis *supply* (e.g., in the Balkans).

Supply attrition of an Axis unit cannot occur during both the Allied and Soviet *Supply* Phases in the same fortnight. If an Axis unit suffers *supply attrition* due to Soviet action, it cannot suffer additional *supply attrition* due to Allied action in the same fortnight.

In cases when one member of the Allied/Soviet coalition puts Axis units out of *supply* during its turn, *Supply Attrition* for newly affected Axis units occurs that *Supply* Phase, but units already *unsupplied* during the other faction member's *supply* phase do not suffer *attrition* again until the next friendly turn.

Example: in Summer 1944 (turn order: Allies, Axis, Soviets) the Soviets isolate German forces in Rumania during their turn. These suffer *supply attrition*, and are marked as *unsupplied* during the Soviet *Supply* phase.

Next fortnight, the Allies, expanding from the Yugoslavian coast, cut additional rail lines, isolating additional Axis forces in Rumania. During the Allied *Supply* phase, those Axis units newly *unsupplied* during the Allied turn suffer *attrition*, but those already *attritioned* during the Soviet *Supply* phase do not lose a second step before the next Axis turn.

11.1 OVERVIEW

At the beginning of each month, both sides simultaneously complete a **Production** phase, which allows for unit and HQ rebuilding.

NOTE: Production is omitted from the first month of a scenario because Starting Forces already include that month's Production.

Production is calculated separately for each active *front*. Every month, each *front* receives **Production Points** (PPs) based on cities and resources controlled. These PPs are spent to build units on that *front*, or saved. PPs can also be *Transferred* (inefficiently) between *fronts*.

11.2 PRODUCTION SEQUENCE

- Determine **Available PPs** for each *front*.
- **Home Front:** Basic Production plus front city/resource PPs, minus *Allocations* to other *fronts*.
- **Other Fronts:** PP Allocation plus local city/resource PPs (not **MF**).
- **Add** incoming PP Transfers
- **Deduct** Desert/Arctic Maintenance
- **Deduct** Shipping Losses
- **Add** previously Saved PPs
- **Subtract** 10 PPs if PP Transfer is made to another *front*
- Spend or Save **Available PPs**
- **Spend** PPs to build/rebuild units. (any PPs left over are lost)
- **Save** all PPs if **none** are spent

11.3 PP SOURCES

The *Front Production Level* is **Basic** (or **Allocated**) Production plus City/Resource PPs located on that *front* (**NF**/**MF** PPs are added to the *home front*). City and resource PP sources are listed in the sidebar.

Initial *Production Levels* on each *front* are noted in the scenario **Starting Forces** table.

Use the GAME RECORD SHEET to record current *Production Levels*. Axis and Allied PPs are tracked separately for each **active front**. Soviet **EF** Production applies to all *fronts*.

11.31 Basic Production

Each side automatically receives **Basic Production PPs** each month. **Basic Production** can be positive (for off-board production) or negative (reflecting non-military production and inefficiencies).

Basic Production PPs arrive in the **Home Front** (Soviets **EF**, Axis **WF**, Allies **WF**). Other *fronts* get no **Basic Production** but can receive *Allocations* (11.5) from the *Home Front*. *Allocations* can be increased at *season breaks* (June and December).

Basic Production can change from one *season* to the next, as shown on the **BASIC PRODUCTION TABLE** (below) and in the scenario **Starting Forces** and Winter Transition tables.

11.32 City Production

Major Cities have a *production value* (white number), which is the number of PPs they produce each month. Cities must be in **Secure** (11.71) *Rail/Sea Supply* to produce (see: 9.3 and 15.4). **Engaged Cities** can still produce.

Note: MF and NF City and Resource PPs add to the Home Front Production.

11.33 Resource Production

Resource Centers (oil or pick symbols) also produce PPs each month, and similarly must be in *Rail/Sea Supply* to produce PPs.

For the resource-starved Axis economy, **Resource Centers** produce **double** their printed amount. For example, Gyor, a 1 PP oil center, produces 2 PPs/month for the Axis.

11.34 Isolated Minors

For powers with *National Supply* but no *Rail/Sea Supply*, see 20.64.

NOTE: When belligerent by DE FL, Finland is also an isolated power.

SIMO-PRODUCTION

Simultaneous production speeds play and promotes doubt as players can pay only limited attention to opponent building.

EUF PP SOURCES

NATION	CITY	RES.
BRITAIN	22	
FRANCE	10 ¹	2
Baltic States	1	
Belgium	2	
Bulgaria	1	
Czechoslovakia	3	
Danzig	2	
Denmark	2	
Finland	1	1
GERMANY (WF)	56 ²	4
GERMANY (EF)	1	
Greece	2	
Holland	4	
Hungary	3	1
Iraq [Britain]		4
ITALY	8	
Norway	1	
Persia [Britain]		6
Poland (WF)	1	1
Poland (EF)	2	
Portugal	1	
Rumania (EF)	1	4
Spain	3	
Sweden	2	2
Switzerland	2	
USSR	55 ³	24
Yugoslavia	1	

¹ Includes Tunis

² Includes Vienna (*Note: Stettin is only 1 PP*)

³ Excludes Riga

EUROFRONT BASIC PRODUCTION TABLE

	S39	W39	S40	W40	S41	W41	S42	W42	S43	W43	S44	W44
AXIS	-30	-30	-30	-30	-30	-25	-20	-15	-10	-5	0	0
ALLIED	-20	-15	-10	-5	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	60
SOVIET	-24	-24	-24	-18	-12	-6	0	8	8	8	8	8

Bold Italics = Basic Production increases

11.4 AVAILABLE PPS

Available PPs are those available for a front after subtracting any adjustments to *Total Production*. Record **Available PPs** on the GAME RECORD SHEET.

Before the start of *Production*, **Available PPs** start either at zero or all PPs *Saved* from last month.

After *Production*, this should either equal zero or PPs *Saved* (if **no PPs** were spent that month).

NOTE: Available PPs must either all be spent or all saved. If any Front PPs are spent, any unused PPs are forfeit. PP Transfers are not considered expenditures and do not prevent saving remaining PPs.

11.5 PP ALLOCATIONS

Allocations are long-term assignments of PPs from the Axis or Allied Home Front (**WF**) to another front.

The AXIS and ALLIES can **Allocate WF** Production to the *Med Front*. The Axis (only) can allocate PPs to the *East Front*. The SOVIET player never makes PP Allocations.

Normally, *Allocations* can be **increased only** at **Season Breaks** (Jun/Dec), but can be decreased during **any** Production Phase.

For details see, **21.23** and **21.37**.

11.6 PP TRANSFERS

During *Production*, the Allies and

Axis can transfer **10 PPs** from one front to another, but it is slow and inefficient. The Soviets **cannot** transfer PPs.

11.61 Transferring PPs

During *Production*, Axis and Allies can make **one 10 PP Transfer** from each front to another front. **Half** are lost in transit, and **5 PPs** arrive **one month later**.

To transfer PPs, reduce the **PPs Available** on the sending front by **10 PPs**, and note **+5PP Transfer** on the receiving front for the **following** Month on the *Game Record Sheet*.

11.62 Receiving PP Transfers

When a PP Transfer arrives in a front, add **5 PPs** to PPs Available.

NOTE: The Soviets can only receive WF PP Transfers via Arctic Convoy if Murmansk has Rail/Sea Supply to both London and Siberia. MF PP Transfers to the Soviets can be made via Persia if Teheran has Rail/Sea Supply to both London and Siberia.

- PP Transfers into the **MF** are subject to *Shipping Losses* (**even if that side has Naval Supremacy**).
- Allied **WF- Soviet** PP Transfers (by Arctic Convoy) are subject to *Shipping Losses* if the AXIS controls Narvik.

Shipping Losses. If PP Transfers are subject to *Shipping Losses*, roll **one die** for every 5 PPs to determine the number of PPs arriving (**cannot exceed the PPs sent**).

PP TRANSFER EFFICIENCY

Source	to WF	to MF	to EF
WF		50% ^{1 3}	50% ²
MF	50% ^{1 3}		50% ³
EF	50%	50% ³	

1 Allies have Shipping Losses

2 Allies have Shipping Losses if Narvik is Axis

3 Axis has Shipping Losses unless *Mare Nostro* (see 17.5)

Production Evaluations

City PP values are derived from economic production figures of the time, evaluated in war production terms: metals, chemicals, and especially machinery are emphasized, but more mundane items such as textiles, lumber, and food are also considered.

Front Allocations

Allocations represent the 'bandwidth' of the logistic pipeline into a Front. Players can expand that capacity if they choose, but only gradually.

Initial Axis EF PPs

The Axis usually owns 14 EF PPs when the EF opens: Danzig (2), Königsberg (1), Warsaw (2), Ploesti (8) and Bucharest (1).

PP Transfers

PP Transfers are short-run adjustments to the economic 'master plan' set out by Front Allocations. As such, there are inherent inefficiencies.

PP Transfers to the Med

Aside from *Shipping Losses*, logistical traffic to Africa was constrained by a lack of developed infrastructure. Port facilities were minimal by European standards, and road/rail transport was even worse.

PP Transfers to the East

Axis logistical traffic to the East severely stressed the Russian rail system even at historical volumes: any increases in traffic would have been problematic.

The Allies can increase PPs shipments to Russia via Murmansk Convoy (some are already factored in), a route subject to Axis air/sea interdiction from Norway.

PPs can also be shipped from the Med Front to Russia via Persia. *Shipping Losses* are not involved since these have already occurred en route to the **MF**. The Allies cannot transfer PPs to Russia until she joins the Allied side.



11.7 UNIT BUILDING

During *Production*, players spend PPs to rebuild damaged or eliminated units. For unit costs, see sidebar.

Allied unit costs apply to the *West Front*. In the *Med Front* and *North Front*, Allied units generally build with **Extreme Costs** (*NF Scandinavians* are exempt, see 21.462). See **UNIT DATA TABLE** on page 96. Until the **MF** is activated, *Extreme Costs* in the **MF** are **doubled**.

Axis unit costs apply to the *West Front* and *East Front*. **Axis** units in the *Med Front* and *North Front* use *Extreme Costs* (*NF Scandinavians* again exempt). **Axis** minors use **Axis** costs).

Note: Only one SS step can be built per month in each front.

Soviet units **on all fronts** are built with Soviet PPs. They initially use *Allied* unit costs (*Extreme Costs* in the **NF**), but switch to *Soviet Costs* once *Great Patriotic War* (see 20.56) is declared (use **half Extreme Costs** in the **NF**).

Major/Minor Power units are built with *faction* PPs when their capital has *Rail/Sea Supply* to their faction's *Supply Origin* (see 10.2).

Isolated Minors (see 11.34) with *National Supply* only (no *Rail/Sea Supply*) must build with *National PPs*, which are spent, saved and tracked separately.

11.71 Replacements

During *Production*, players can build up units in play, provided they are *unengaged* and have **Secure Supply** (make a supply check as needed).

Interdictable Sea Supply, Fortress Supply or Siege Supply is **not Secure Supply**.

Only **one step** can be added to each unit in a *Production* phase. PPs are spent for each step added (see **Step** column of the *Unit Costs* table).

Units in *BH Supply* (15.63), units **engaged** in *Areas* (18.6), and units in the **MF** before it has been *activated* (21.32) have **double** the replacement costs that would otherwise apply.

11.72 Rebuilding Cadres

During *Production*, eliminated units can be rebuilt into **cadres**, and placed in *Arrival Locations* (11.81).

Cadre costs are listed in the *Cadre* column on the **Unit Cost Table**. Rebuilt *cadres* cannot be built up further in the same *Production* phase.

11.73 HQ Costs

HQ and **SHQ** rebuilding costs increase under certain conditions (**THQs** always cost 5 PPs).

11.731 Sea Supply

HQs in *Sea Supply* (see 15.4) cost +5 PPs/step (+10 PPs/cadre) to build, unless they are **in or adjacent** to a friendly **major port** (or **in** a **MF** minor port) in secure *Sea Supply*.

11.732 Road Supply

HQs in *Road Supply* cost +10 PPs/step (+20 PPs/cadre) See 10.33.

11.733 BeachHead Supply

HQs in *BH Supply* (15.63) cost +10 PPs/step (+20 PPs/cadre).

11.734 Strategic Bombing

Starting **W'43**, **Axis** **HQs** in the **WF** cost +5 PPs/step (+10 PPs/cadre). See 13.31.

11.735 Axis Oil Supply

If no *Line of Communications* (10.22) exists between Berlin and a major oil source (Ploesti, Abadan or Baku), **Axis** **HQ** costs rise by 5 PPs/step (cadres 10 PPs). See 17.1.

11.736 Soviet Oil Supply

If the Soviets lose Baku or its *LoC* to **Siberia**, their **HQ** costs rise by 5 PPs/step (cadres 10 PPs). See 17.8.

11.74 BeachHead Prep

For 20 PPs, *BeachHeads* can be advanced from **Prep** to **Ready** status, or eliminated **BHs** can be rebuilt to **BH Prep** status.

11.8 REINFORCEMENTS

Reinforcements are new units arriving at no PP cost. They cannot be built up in the month of arrival.

11.81 Arrival Locations

Reinforcements and newly rebuilt cadres must arrive in *Arrival Locations*, as defined below.

Note: Reinforcements arriving in the first month of a game must be set up in valid Arrival Locations.

Arrival Locations must be in *Rail/Sea Supply* and **not** embattled. Two [2] units per *Production* can arrive in a **major city**, one [1] unit in other locations.

Axis: **German** units arrive in German (major/minor) *home cities* or *Victory Cities* (1.412). **Italian** units arrive in Italian *major cities*. **Axis Minor** units arrive in their national capitals. **MF** reinforcements arrive in **Tripoli**, and **NF** reinforcements in **Oslo**.

UNIT COSTS	Axis		Allied		Soviet	
	Stp	Cad	Stp	Cad	Stp	Cad
HQ ¹	10	20	10	20	10	20
THQ	5	10	5	10	•	•
Armor	8	12	8	16	4	8
Mech	6	9	6	12	3	6
Infantry	4	6	4	8	2	4
Shock	•	•	(6)	(12)	3	6
Amphib	•	•	4	12	2	6
Para ²	12	18	12	24	6	12
Mountain	5	8	5	10	3	6
Fort	10	15	10	20	•	•
Cavalry	6	9	6	12	3	6
Static	3	2 ³	3	3	•	•
BH	•	•	20	20	20	20

NOTE: Soviets use Allied costs until Great Patriotic War (20.56)

¹ All HQs +5 (+10/cadre) in **Sea Supply**.

All HQs +5 (+10/cadre) in *Road/BH Supply*.
(cumulative with *Sea Supply*)

Axis HQs +5 (+10/cadre) beginning **W'43**.

Axis/Sov HQs +5 (+10/cadre) w/out Oil Supply.

² Costs halved for grounded Paras.

³ ∅ cv cadre is cheaper than 1 step.

Replacements

Units can rebuild only one step each month because it takes time (training) as well as equipment to build combat units.

Cadre Costs

Higher cadre costs reflect the price of having a unit completely destroyed in combat. It is much easier to rebuild a unit when its infrastructure (leaders, organization, support services, etc.) remains intact. German cadres are cheaper to rebuild, reflecting their superior training and leadership.

Allied HQs & Overseas Supply

Because the British/US draw supply from London, British/US HQs on the continent (*France, Belgium, Germany, Denmark, etc.*) in the **MF** or in the **NF** will cost 15 PPs/step (*Overseas Supply*) unless in or adjacent to a Major Port (e.g., Antwerp). On the other hand, French HQs tracing supply overland to Paris are not subject to this (unless they convert to *Free French* and trace supply to London).

HQs dependent on **BH Supply** are even more costly to build up (20 PPs/step).

Axis Oil Supply

Ploesti, Abadan and Baku do not need to be Axis controlled. The Axis must only have access (*LoC*) to the oil, which can still be the case when Rumania, etc., is neutral.

ALLIES: *British/US/FF* units can arrive in friendly *major ports* (in *Sea Supply*). *British* units also arrive in *home cities* and *French* units in *French major cities*. *Allied Minor* units arrive in their national capitals.

SOVIET units arrive in Soviet *home cities* (major/minor) or in *home Districts/Regions*.

11.82 Advanced Arrival

During *Production*, the arrival of **ONE** reinforcement unit can be advanced one *month* by expending PPs equal to that unit's *cadre cost* (note *this secretly* on the GAME RECORD SHEET). A **BH's** arrival can be advanced a month at a cost of **20 PPs**.

Alternatively, **ONE** reinforcement unit of greater than 1 cv can be advanced 1 month by *reducing its arrival strength by 1 cv*.

Note: MF PPs and MF cadre costs must be used to advance MF Reinforcements.

11.83 Delayed Arrival

Reinforcement arrival can also be delayed (no effect on arrival strength).

11.84 Unit Disbanding

During *Production*, players can voluntarily **eliminate** friendly units (typically for stacking purposes), but cannot rebuild them that *Production*.

Important: Minor Power units cannot be disbanded (exception: Tito, see 16.732).

11.9 MF/NF PRODUCTION

In addition to using *Extreme Costs*, units located in the *Med Front* and *North Front* are subject to special rules that modify *Production*. Details are found in **21.3 (MF)** and **21.4 (NF)**.

Home Cities

All Cities within national Territory.

Alien Units

All units but **MF** Residents, **MF** Veterans and **MF** Expeditions are **MF** Aliens. The same is true of the North Front.

The Desert Zone

The **MF** *Desert Zone* includes North Africa and the Mid East [all **MF** hexes], but not the *Southern Zone* (areas). This means that units in India or South Africa (for example) are not subject to *Desert Maintenance* (but are still subject to *Acclimatization*).

The Arctic Zone

The *Arctic Zone* includes all **NF** areas, but not the *Temperate Zone* (hexes).

Desert & Arctic Maintenance

In the uninhabited wastelands of North Africa and the Arctic, everything necessary for life must be imported and laboriously transported to the front, including food, shelter and most importantly, water.

As a result, only a limited number of divisions could be supported there -- more units only added to supply problems.

The maintenance penalty represents that historical force levels in these locations stretched logistics to the limit.

MF/NF Residents and Veterans are **never** subject to *Desert/Arctic Maintenance*.

MF/NF Aliens are **always** subject to *Desert/Arctic Maintenance*.

MF Expeditions are exempt from *Desert Maintenance* only when Morocco or Tunis/Istanbul Based (see **21.38**).

Important: MF Alien units in the MF Southern Zone (South Africa/India, etc) are NOT subject to Desert Maintenance.

12.1 WEATHER DETERMINATION

Dry, Mud, and Snow weather states are possible. *Snow* and *Mud* hamper operations in different ways.

Some *Months* have fixed weather, but in others it is variable, see sidebar and the GAME RECORD SHEETS.

Each **Fortnight** begins with separate **WF** and **EF** Weather determinations. In each case both players rolls one die and the **sum** of the dice determines **WF** or **EF** weather for the that *Fortnight* (if **Dry** weather is certain, omit this step).

Odd die rolls mean *Mud* weather; **even** die rolls mean *Dry* or *Snow* weather (see WEATHER TABLE).

These weather rolls also determine the weather in the *North Front* and *Med Front* (see below), and the occurrence of **Storms** (see 12.5). *Storms* disrupt certain naval operations within a **Sea Basin** (15.1).

12.11 WF Weather

West Front weather is always *Dry* and *Storm-free* from March-October.

From November-February, *Mud* and *Storms* can occur. During these months make weather determination die rolls to begin each *fortnight*.

12.12 EF Weather

Separate die rolls are made for *East Front* weather each fortnight from October through May (June through September are always *Dry*). *Storms* can occur in the *E. Baltic*, *Arctic* and *Black Sea* basins.

12.13 MF Weather

Med Front weather is **always** *Dry*. **WF** weather rolls can produce *Storms* in the *Mediterranean* or *Atlantic Basins*, affecting naval operations into the *Med Front*.

12.14 NF Weather [change]

WF weather applies in the **WF** portion of the **NF** (**Norway/Sweden**). **EF** weather applies in the **EF** portion (**Finland/USSR**).

EF/WF weather rolls can produce *Storms* in the *Atlantic*, *Arctic*, *W. Baltic*, or *E. Baltic* sea basins (see 12.5)

12.2 DRY WEATHER

Dry weather has no negative effect on game operations.

12.3 MUD WEATHER

Mud weather has severe negative effects on game operations.

In **Mud** weather, **Marsh** terrain effects apply to *Clear*, *Forest*, *Hill*, and *Mountain* hexes, except that stacking is unchanged.

12.31 Command

FHQs/THQs activating in *Mud* weather are **disrupted** (commanding at 1 CV below nominal, see 5.32). Moreover, HQs in *Mud* weather locations **cannot deploy** one hex upon activation.

Note: *SHQs* in *London*, *Moscow*, *Warsaw* or *Berlin* are **not** disrupted by weather.

12.32 Movement

Mud weather reduces all unit speeds to **1 hex** per *Movement* phase (**exception:** Cavalry moves 2 hexes). The *hexside limit* is 1 in all terrain.

12.33 Combat

In *Mud*, all hexes have at least **double defense**, *River Assaults* are easier to Repulse (7.62) and **all units** (**except** *Siege Guns*, see 2.34) fire **SF offensively** in **all** terrain. *Airstrike Firepower* is **not** affected (though the commanding HQ's CV will be reduced by *disruption*).

12.4 SNOW WEATHER

During *Snow* weather:

- **Marsh** hexes adopt *Forest* terrain effects, except stacking remains 3,
- **Rivers** freeze (see 7.6), and
- The **Gulf of Bothnia** and **White Sea** freeze, becoming impassable (see 21.42).

12.41 Initiative

In **EF** *Snow* weather *fortnights*, the Soviets play **first** (see GAME RECORD SHEET), modifying the order of *Player Turns* (see 12.7).

12.42 Command

HQs in *Snow* weather locations are **disrupted** (but can *deploy*). Soviet and Scandinavian HQs are exempt.

Note: *SHQs* in *London*, *Berlin*, *Warsaw* or *Moscow* are **not** disrupted by weather.

12.43 Movement

Snow weather reduces all unit speeds by one (to a minimum of 1).

Example: In *Snow* weather, armor, mech and cavalry units move 2 hexes, not 3.

The *hexside limit* across frozen rivers remains 1 (ZOCs still do **not** extend across frozen rivers).

Snow Invasions. The Soviets can *Sea Invade* (15.52) into *Snow* hexes but not *Sea Assault* (15.53). The Allies and Axis can do neither.

WEATHER TABLE

MONTH	WF	EF
JUN	DRY	DRY
JUL	DRY	DRY
AUG	DRY	DRY
SEP	DRY	DRY
OCT	DRY	MUD/DRY
NOV	MUD/DRY	MUD/SNOW
DEC	MUD	SNOW
JAN	MUD	SNOW
FEB	MUD/DRY	SNOW
MAR	DRY	MUD/SNOW
APR	DRY	MUD
MAY	DRY	MUD/DRY

BOLD: Weather die roll each Fortnight.

ITALIC: Weather die roll for *Storms* only.

Odd/Even die roll results shown for variable weather months.

Weather Fate

With each player rolling one die, neither can affect the weather with a "good" roll: it is pure fate.

Weather Equalization [optional]

If players agree, the second fortnight of a random weather month can always have the opposite weather to the first fortnight.

Example: Players roll *Snow* weather for the first fortnight of November 1941. If using *Weather Equalization*, the second fortnight will necessarily be *Mud*.

Storms

Storms only occur in one basin at a time. BHs are completely incapacitated during storms, and invasions are impossible.

Stacking Considerations

Terrain changes due to weather do not reduce stacking limits.

12.44 Combat

River Assaults across **frozen** rivers cannot be *Repulsed* (see 7.62).

12.45 Axis Winter Paralysis

During the **first EF** winter, **Axis Winter Paralysis** is in effect:

- During **Winter Productions** (December-May), Axis **EF** HQs cost **15 PPs/** step (cadres 30 PPs).
- During **Snow** weather, all Axis units in the **EF** have their speeds reduced to **one** (1) and offensive **Firepower** reduced to **SF** (defensive **Firepower** is unaffected).

IMPORTANT: If the EF opens in March, April or May, Winter Paralysis does not occur until the following winter.

12.5 SEA STORMS

WF and **EF** weather die-rolls also determine the occurrence of **Storms**, which can **only** occur in *Mud* or *Snow* weather (on **odd** die-rolls, see STORM TABLE, sidebar).

Storms affect **all** seas within the specified *Sea Basin* (see 15.1) during that *Fortnight* [place STORM marker in the box provided]. *Sea Basin* boundaries are shown as **double-thick lines**.

NOTE: Weather rolls are still made in fortnights with certain Snow or Mud weather, to check for Storm occurrence.

12.51 Storm Effects

- No *Sea Invasion* movement (15.5) is possible through affected seas.

NOTE: Invasion HQ Command Range [for combat support] is still traceable across a stormy sea.

- BeachHeads in affected seas are *disrupted* (invert marker), losing their supply and port abilities for that *fortnight* (15.64).

NOTE: Storms have no effect on Sea Supply and Sea Movement (ports are storm-proof).

12.6 ASSAULT EFFECTS

12.61 River Assaults

MUD: River assaults are *repulsed* on die-rolls **1-3** (*Triple Repulse* or **TR**) as opposed to **DR** 1-2 in *Dry* weather.

SNOW: In *Snow* weather, rivers freeze, and river assaults **cannot be repulsed**. However, ZOCs still do not extend across frozen rivers and the hexside limit remains 1 unit/ hexside.

12.62 Sea Assaults

SNOW: *Sea Assaults cannot be made in Snow weather [the Soviets only can Sea Invade in Snow, but not Sea Assault].*

12.7 INITIATIVE

East Front weather can alter the order of play. The SOVIETS go before the AXIS in **EF Snow** (Soviets/ Axis/ Allies). Otherwise the AXIS goes before the SOVIETS.

Thus, the sequence of Player Turns can change, as noted in the sidebar and prompted in the GAME RECORD SHEET.

Axis Winter Paralysis

Note that if the Soviets Mobilize in June/40, for example, Axis Winter Paralysis will occur during W40, not in W41 as is normally the case. This can have serious consequences for the Soviets if the Axis then conducts a normal Barbarossa campaign in S41.

Weather & Initiative Examples

S'41: EF Dry: Axis, Allies, Soviets.

W'41: EF Snow: Soviets, Axis, Allies.

S'42: EF Mud: Axis, Allies, Soviets.

-- Second Front occurs --

S'43 EF Dry: Allies, Axis, Soviets.

W'43 EF Snow: Allies, Soviets, Axis.

STORM TABLE

2d6	WF	EF
Even	None	None
3 or 11	Mediterranean Basin	Black Sea Basin
7	W Baltic Basin	E. Baltic Basin
5 or 9	Atlantic Basin	Arctic Basin



13.1 HQ AIRPOWER

HQs have attached airpower resources. During *Combat*, activated HQs can conduct **one** (1) **Airstrike** in a battle within *Air Range*. *Airstrikes* cannot attack enemy airpower, and ground units cannot fire at *Airstrikes*.

13.11 Air Range

Air Range is equal to HQ cv. It is traceable through enemy hexes and impassable terrain, but **not** through neutral countries. *Airstrikes* can cross *front* boundaries without penalty.

Exception: only **MF** HQs can *airstrike* into the **MF** from another *front* (21.393).

SHQs have **doubled** *Air Range* (e.g., SHQ IIIs have *Air Range* of 6).

13.12 Airpower Disruption

The effective cv of *disrupted* HQs (5.32) is reduced by one, and this affects both *Air Range* and *Airstrike* cv. *Air Firepower* is unchanged.

13.2 AIRSTRIKES

13.21 Targeting

Airstrikes can **only** be made into *active* battles being contested during that *Combat* phase. Only **one** *Airstrike* per battle is allowed.

Airstrikes are assigned *before* units in the battle are revealed or combat begins. Place an **AIRSTRIKE** marker of the commanding HQ's strength in the target hex (e.g., an **AIRSTRIKE 2** for a II cv HQ).

13.22 Airstrike CV

Airstrike cv (number of dice rolled) equals that of the commanding HQ. An HQ's airpower **cannot** be divided into multiple *Airstrikes*.

13.23 Air Firepower

Airstrike firepower (**SF**, **DF**, or **TF**) varies with time, increasing for the Allies and Soviets, and decreasing for the Axis.

Axis, Allied, and Soviet *Air Firepower* on each *Front* are shown at right (also see GAME TABLES), and changes are noted on the GAME RECORD SHEETS.

ALLIED *airstrikes* always use Allied *Air Firepower*. SOVIET *airstrikes* use Soviet *Air Firepower*.

Axis *airstrikes* use **EF** *Firepower* against Soviet units, and **WF** or **MF** *Firepower* against Allied units (this includes Minor HQs and THQs).

13.24 Resolving Airstrikes

Airstrikes are resolved **before** *Defensive Fire*. One die is rolled per *Airstrike* cv.

Hits are scored based on the current *Airstrike Firepower* (**SF**, **DF**, or **TF**), and are immediately applied to enemy units in the hex. All terrain and weather defensive benefits apply (e.g., *Double Defense* in forests). Partial *hits* from *Airstrikes* **do** carry forward to normal land combat.

Note: When *Airstrikes* are made into *Unsupported Combat* battles, *hits* are only half-effective, just as for ground attacks.

13.3 AIR SUPERIORITY

13.31 Extended Air Range

Beginning **W'43** [Dec 1943], Allied *Air Range* is **doubled** to twice the cv of the commanding HQ. The cv (number of dice rolled) and *Firepower* (hit numbers) of the *Airstrike* are unchanged. *Air Range* of SHQs rises to **triple** the SHQ's cv.

Strategic Bombing. Beginning **W'43**, Axis HQ costs in the **WF** increase by 5 PPs/step (10 PPs/cadre).

13.32 Air Supremacy

In **S'44**, Allied **Air Supremacy** comes into effect in the **West Front**.

- Axis movement is *suppressed*: unit speeds in the **WF** are *reduced by one* (to a minimum of 1), and *Rail Moves* are **halved** to 5 hexes each.
- If the Allies also have **Naval Supremacy**, all **Atlantic Basin** seas become Allied controlled, regardless of *Naval Base* ownership (e.g. Biscay becomes Allied controlled despite Axis control of Brest).

Important: Loss of the seas around Norway cancels the Axis **Ore SeaRoute** (Axis loses 5 PPs).

Airpower and Weather

Airstrike FirePower is not affected by weather (e.g., Mud) but the commanding HQ may have its effective CV reduced by weather *disruption*.

EUROFRONT AIR FIREPOWER

	S39	W39	S40	W40	S41	W41	S42	W42	S43	W43	S44	W44
Axis EF	TF	TF	TF	TF	TF	DF	DF	DF	DF	SF	SF	Ø
Axis WF	TF	TF	TF	DF	DF	DF	DF	SF	SF	SF	Ø	Ø
Axis MF/NF	DF	DF	DF	DF	DF	DF	DF	SF	SF	SF	Ø	Ø
Soviet	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	DF	DF	DF	TF	TF
Allies	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	DF	DF	DF	TF	TF ¹	TF ²	TF ²
<i>Italics = Change</i>			¹ EXTENDED AIR RANGE					² AIR SUPREMACY				

14.1 PARATROOPS

Paratroops are elite infantry with *Paradrop* capability. They lose this ability when *grounded* (see 14.6).

14.2 PARADROPS

14.21 Paradrop HQs

An activated **Paradrop HQ** expends **all** of its command ability for that Player-Turn (including airpower) to command a *Paradrop* (mark with PARADROP HQ marker). A *Paradrop HQ* **cannot** deploy: it must begin the turn already located in the **same** hex as the Para unit(s) to be airdropped (but may *Mobilize* after). BLITZ *Paradrop HQs* can command two Paradrops, one in each phase.

Med Front Paradrops. Paradrops into the *Med Front* are **prohibited** unless combined with a *sea invasion* into the same [port] hex (see 21.39).

14.22 Paradrop Range

During *Movement*, Para units stacked with *Paradrop HQs* can airdrop (move) into any hex (except mountains) within the *Air Range* of the *Paradrop HQ*.

Note: When a SHQ acts as a Paradrop HQ, doubled (or tripled) Air Range applies.

14.3 PARA DISPERSAL

Airdropped Para units are **Dispersed** during the Player-Turn of the *Paradrop* (place them face down).

Dispersed Paras have **no effect** on hex control, including the hex they occupy. *Dispersed* paras **cannot move** (e.g., in the Blitz Phase), but combat is unaffected by dispersal.

14.4 PARA COMBAT

Paras on the ground move and fight like unmotorized infantry, except they fire **DF Defensive Fire**.

Paras do **not** receive combat support from their *Paradrop HQ*, so unless they receive it from another HQ within *Combat Support Range*, they fight *unsupported*.

14.41 Air Assaults

Paradrops into enemy-occupied hexes that initiate a **new battle**, are termed **Air Assaults**. Paradrops into *existing* battles are **not** *Air Assaults*, nor are Paradrops combined with normal ground attacks (except as noted in 14.42).

Air Assaults are treated like *River*

Assaults (7.62) except that the Para unit is only *repulsed* on a die-roll of '1' (*Single Repulse* or **SR**).

IMPORTANT: *Air Assaults against a Fortress* (e.g., Malta) are *repulsed* on *dierolls* of **1-3** (no effect versus *Fort units*, except see 20.72).

If *repulsed*, a Para unit must take an automatic 1 cv loss (in addition to losses from defensive fire) and return to its starting hex.

14.42 Combined Air Assaults

When a *Paradrop* is combined with a *River* and/or *Sea Assault*, it will reduce the *repulse* *dieroll* for **all** assaulting units to "1" (**SR**), except versus *Fortress* hexes (see 7.65).

14.5 PARA LINKUP

During the friendly *SUPPLY* phase, **just after the Invasion Dispersal Recovery** sub-phase, *dispersed* para units (just airdropped that turn) must check for **Paradrop Linkup**.

Dispersed Paras in **friendly hexes**, adjacent to **unengaged friendly hexes**, or stacked with undispersed friendly units achieve *Linkup* and recover from *dispersal* (turn upright). They then regain their *ZOCs* and hex control ability.

Dispersed Paras that do not achieve *Linkup* are **eliminated**.

NOTE: *Linkup* is **not** affected by the presence/absence of a supply line.

14.6 PARATROOP GROUNDING

Grounded paratroops can no longer *paradrop*, but their rebuilding cost drops by **half**. *Grounded* Paras retain **DF** *defensive fire*. *Grounding* is not reversible.

The Axis, Allies or Soviet player can voluntarily **ground** all paras in any *Production* phase.

German paras are automatically *grounded* if *Allied Air Supremacy* (13.32) is in effect.

Para Repulse

Only 20-30% of a Para corps is actually dropped in parachutes. Their job is to secure airfields to allow the balance of the corps to land in gliders and air transports. A Para *repulse* indicates the initial wave fails to secure the necessary airfields for the operation to succeed. The 1 cv hit upon *Repulse* reflects the loss of these "pathfinder" Paras.

Combined Assaults

Paradrops can be useful for supporting *River* and *Sea Assaults* because they can reduce *repulse* fire for all assaulting units, while adding an extra unit to the assault, significantly reducing the chances of a complete *repulse*.

Para Dispersal

Paras do not alter hex control on the turn they airdrop (otherwise they would enable *Blitzing* units to disengage 'ahead' into the *paradrop* hex). Nor can *Paradrops* cut enemy rail lines or supply lines, unless they achieve *Linkup*.

Para Linkup

Para units are notoriously light on logistics, heavy weapons and ammunition. Dropping into advanced, unsupplied positions is a risky venture. Without contact with ground units, *paradropped* units cannot survive for long.

Airdropped Paras must Linkup with non-airdropped units. *Linkup* is achieved when stacked with such units (even if engaged), or when adjacent to them (even across a river).

Linkup is **not** achieved when adjacent to enemy battle hexes (i.e., behind the lines).

Important: Note that Paras can achieve *Linkup* with sea-landed units, as the latter recover from their *dispersal* **before** Paras are checked for *Linkup* (see Sequence of Play, p 14 sidebar and Game Data, p. 96).

Paratroop Grounding (Optional)

All national Paras are immediately grounded once any national para unit has been eliminated in any manner.



15.1 SEA AREAS

In **EuroFront**, seas are divided into **Sea Areas**. Each **Sea Area** has a controlling **Naval Base** (controlling port) shown as a **black** port symbol. Control of the **Naval Base** exerts control over the **Sea Area**.

Each **Sea Area** also has a **Sea Interdiction Value** shown as a number inside a triangle [in brackets below]. This represents the degree of suppression the **Naval Base** exerts on enemy naval activity in its **Sea Area**.

Ports for each **Sea Area** are listed below (**Sea Areas** are grouped into **Sea Basins** for weather purposes):

- **Naval Bases** are in *italics*
- **Major Ports** are in **bold**
- **AREAS** are in **SMALL CAPS**

ATLANTIC BASIN

- **Atlantic Ocean** [3]: always *Allied* controlled. Ports are Vigo, Porto, Lisbon, Cadiz, **Gibraltar**, Tangiers, Casablanca, WEST AFRICA, and **SOUTH AFRICA**.
- **North Atlantic** [3]: controlled by **Glasgow**. Other ports are Shetlands and Scapa Flow.
- **North Sea** [2]: controlled by **London**. Other ports are Shetlands, Scapa Flow, Aberdeen, Edinburgh, Newcastle, Hull, Yarmouth, Ipswich, Dover, Calais, Ostende, **Antwerp**, **Rotterdam**, **Hamburg**, Amsterdam and Bremen.
- **English Channel** [2]: controlled by **Portsmouth**. Other ports: Dover, Weymouth, Plymouth, Calais, Le Havre, Cherbourg, and *Brest*.
- **Irish Sea** [3]: controlled by **Liverpool**. Other ports are Cardiff, **Bristol** and **Glasgow**.
- **Bay of Biscay** [1]: controlled by *Brest*. Other ports are Lorient, Bordeaux, Bayonne and Bilbao.
- **Norwegian Leads** [1]: controlled by **Bergen**. Other ports are Stavanger, Haugesund, ALESUND, ANDALSNES, and **TRONDHEIM**.
- **Norwegian Sea** [1]: controlled by **TRONDHEIM**. Other ports are NAMSOS and **NARVIK**.
- **Nordkapp Sea** [1]: controlled by **NARVIK**. Other ports are TROMSO and PETSAMO.

ARCTIC BASIN

- **Barents Sea** [2]: controlled by *MURMANSK*. Other port: PETSAMO.
- **White Sea** [3/freezes]: controlled by *ARCHANGEL*. No other port.
- **Arctic Ocean** [2]: controlled by **ALLIES**.

No ports.

W. BALTIC BASIN

- **Skagerrak** [3]: controlled by **Copenhagen**. Other ports are **Hamburg**, Malmo, Goteborg, **Oslo**, Aarhus and Kristiansand.
- **Western Baltic Sea** [2]: controlled by *Stettin*. Other ports are Malmo, **Copenhagen**, **Hamburg** & Rostock.

E. BALTIC BASIN

- **Baltic Sea** [2]: controlled by **Danzig**. Other ports are Konigsberg, Memel, Ventspils, Karlskrona and **Stockholm**.
- **Gulf of Riga** [3]: controlled by *Riga*. The other port is Ventspils.
- **Gulf of Finland** [3]: controlled by *Tallinn*. Other ports are Turku, Helsinki, and **Leningrad**.
- **Gulf of Bothnia** [2, freezes]: controlled by **Stockholm**. Other ports: Turku, GALLIVARE & OULU.

MEDITERRANEAN BASIN

- **Alboran Sea** [2]: controlled by **Gibraltar**. Other ports are Malaga, Almeria, Cartagena, Valencia, **Barcelona**, Mallorca, Tangiers, Melilla, Oran, and **Algiers**.
- **Western Med.** [1]: controlled by **Algiers**. Other ports are Mallorca, Bizerte, Cagliari, and Sassari.
- **Gulf of Lyon** [1]: controlled by **Marseilles**. Other ports: Mallorca, Toulon, Sassari, and **Barcelona**.
- **Ligurian Sea** [2]: controlled by **Genoa**. Other ports are Toulon, La Spezia, Livorno, Olbia, and Bastia.
- **Tyrrhennian Sea** [1]: controlled by **Tunis**. Other ports are Rome, **Naples**, Reggio, Messina, Olbia, Cagliari, Palermo, and Bizerte.
- **Central Med** [1]: controlled by **Tripoli**. Other ports: **Tunis**, Sfax, **Benghazi**, Malta, Palermo, & Catania.
- **Ionian Sea** [1]: controlled by **Benghazi**. Other ports are Catania, Messina, Reggio, Brindisi, Tobruk, Kalamata, Patras and Canea.
- **Adriatic Sea** [2]: controlled by **Trieste**. Others: Brindisi, Bari, Termoli, Ancona, **Venice**, Fiume, Split, Dubrovnik and Durres.
- **Aegean Sea** [2]: controlled by **Athens**. Other ports are Canea, Kalamata, Salonika, and Rhodes.
- **Eastern Med** [2]: controlled by **Alexandria**. Other ports: Tobruk, Port Said, **Suez**, Jaffa, Nicosia, Rhodes and Canea.

- **Red Sea** [3]: controlled by *ADEN*. Other ports: **Suez**, Aqaba, and SOMALILAND.
- **Persian Gulf** [3]: controlled by **Basra**. Other ports: Abadan and **KARACHI**.
- **Indian Ocean** [3]: controlled by **KARACHI**. Other ports: KENYA, SOMALILAND, **SOUTH AFRICA**.

BLACK SEA BASIN

- **Sea of Marmara** [3]: controlled by *Istanbul*.
- **Western Black Sea** [2]: controlled by *Sevastopol*. Other ports are Burgos, Varna, Constanta, **Odessa**, Nikolaev, Samsun, and *Istanbul*.
- **Eastern Black Sea** [2]: controlled by *Batumi*. Other ports are Kerch, Novorossiysk, Trabzond, Samsun, and Sevastopol.
- **Sea of Azov** [3]: controlled by *Rostov*. Other ports are Kerch, and Mariupol (**not** Novorossiysk).
- **North Caspian Sea**: controlled by *Astrakhan*. Other ports are Guryev, **Baku**, and Makhach Kala.
- **South Caspian Sea**: controlled by **Baku**. Other ports are Rasht and KRASNOVODSK.

Abstract Naval Operations

Naval operations are represented abstractly in this land-oriented game system. This rules section defines the movement of units by sea and tracing of supply lines by sea.

Sea Interdiction Values

These reflect the danger of operating in that sea area, considering geography and proximity of enemy naval and air bases.

Dual-Sea Ports

Note that some ports border on two sea areas. These ports have two crossbars on the anchor symbols.

Hexes with two disconnected seacoasts bordering on different seas (e.g., Bari, Cadiz, Weymouth) only have ports on the sea with the port symbol.

South Africa

IMPORTANT: SEA MOVEMENT BETWEEN THE ATLANTIC AND INDIAN OCEANS MUST PASS THOUGH SOUTH AFRICA (**and stop there**). Continuous sea movement is not allowed around the Cape of Good Hope.

15.11 Seapower Restrictions

Only the Soviets can use any form of *Seapower* (eg. *Sea Supply*) in the *Caspian Sea*.

Unless **Turkey** is Allied, the SOVIETS cannot use *Seapower* in the *Mediterranean Basin*, nor can the ALLIES in the *Black Seas*.

15.12 Straits

Naval operations cannot traverse an enemy-commanded *Straits* (see 1.371).

15.2 SEA CONTROL

Each *Sea Area* has a controlling **Naval Base** (controlling port), shown with a black anchor symbol. The owner of the *Naval Base* controls that *Sea Area*.

Naval operations within *friendly* and *neutral* controlled sea areas are completely free of enemy interference.

Naval activities within *enemy* controlled sea areas are subject to possible enemy interference, called *Sea Interdiction* (15.7).

15.21 Sea Basin Control

Mediterranean Basin. If **Italy** is defeated, all *Mediterranean Basin* seas are Allied controlled, regardless of *Naval Base* ownership.

Atlantic Basin. If Allied **Naval & Air Supremacy** are **both** in effect, **all** *Atlantic Basin* sea areas are Allied controlled, regardless of *Naval Base* ownership.

15.3 SEA MOVEMENT

Sea Movement is strategic movement between **friendly ports**. *Sea Movement* passes freely through **friendly** or **neutral** seas (but not through **enemy commanded Straits**, see 1.371).

Sea Movement through **enemy controlled** seas is subject to **Sea Interdiction**, which can result in losses and/or *Repulse* (see: 15.7).

As with strategic *Rail Movement*, *Sea Movement* **must** be commanded by a SHQ or THQ. Multiple *Sea Moves* can be linked for a long-distance move by sea.

Units cannot *engage* by *Sea Movement*, but can *disengage* if a *rearguard* is left behind (no *Retreats*).

15.31 Sea Moves

Sea Movement is composed of one or more **Sea Moves**. A unit in port can move to any other friendly port on the **same** sea area for one *Sea Move*. Two *Sea Moves* are required to move between friendly ports across two sea areas, etc. Each *Sea Move* normally costs one SHQ *Supreme Move*.

A unit can make multiple *Sea Moves* in one *MOVEMENT* phase, but *Sea Movement* cannot mix with *Rail* (or normal land) *Movement*.

15.32 Port Capacity

Port capacity is the number of *Sea Moves* a port can handle per turn.

Port capacity of a minor port is **1**, meaning that only **one** unit can either enter or leave that port by *Sea Movement* in a *Player-Turn*.

Port capacity of a major port is **2**: **two** units can attempt to enter or leave (or one unit each way) per turn.

NOTE: Sea Invasions (15.5) are not limited by port capacity.

15.4 SEA SUPPLY

Sea Lanes are sea routes between friendly ports. *Sea Lanes* connect friendly *Rail Lines* (see sidebar example) to form *Rail/Sea Supply*.

Units dependent on *Sea Lanes* as well as *Rail Lines* for supply are in **Sea Supply**. *Sea Supply* equals *Rail Supply* for production purposes.

Sea Lanes, like *Rail Lines*, can be traced **into** friendly battle hexes (ports), but not **through** such hexes. *Sea Lanes* ending at an engaged port have limited supply ability (see: *Siege Supply* below).

Sea Lanes through *enemy controlled* seas are subject to **Sea Interdiction** (15.7), which may interrupt the *Sea Lane*, resulting in *Supply Attrition*.

A *Sea Lane* cannot pass through a *Straits* if **either** side is enemy controlled. It can **end** in a port on the *Straits* but can go no further by sea even if the port borders another sea.

15.41 Siege Supply

Sea Supply to an **engaged** port called **Siege Supply**, can support **one defending** unit, at **cadre strength (correction)**. Excess units/cvs suffer *Supply Attrition*.

Under *Naval Supremacy* (15.8), one unit at **any cv** is supported.

Under *Naval and Air Supremacy* (13.32), **any number** of units can be supported. The engaged port serves as a *Rail/Sea Supply Source*, to which units can trace a *Supply Line* (10.4).

NOTE: Fortresses do not provide Siege Supply in addition to Fortress Supply.

REMEMBER: Rail lines never emanate from an engaged port.

Soviet SeaPower

Without use of the *Turkish Straits* (long coveted by Russia), the Soviets cannot make use of any form of *SeaPower* (including *Sea Supply*) in the *Mediterranean Basin* (e.g., to trace supply via the Indian Ocean).

Straits Control

Naval operations [*Sea Movement*, *Sea Invasion*, or *Sea Supply*] cannot traverse **enemy-commanded Straits** (i.e., not if **either** side is enemy controlled).

National Supply is traceable through a *Straits* unless **both** sides are enemy controlled [so opposing factions can both trace *National Supply* through a *Straits*].

NOTE: Sea Supply can be traced into a port on an enemy-controlled *Straits*, but not **through** the *Straits* (e.g., via the port).

Example: If Tangiers is Axis controlled, the Allies can still trace *Sea Supply* into Gibraltar from inside the Med, but cannot trace *Sea Supply* through the Cadiz straits.

Sea Movement

Example: The Allies control Tunis, Malta, Taranto, and Benghazi. AF SHQ commands an Allied unit in Tunis to sea-move to Taranto. This counts as two *Sea Moves* since two sea areas are crossed (but only costs 1 *Supreme Move* under *Naval Supremacy*). As both Seas are Allied controlled, no *Sea Interdiction* is possible.

Sea Movement vs. Sea Invasion

Sea Movement of units by sea between friendly ports is cheap and efficient.

But *Sea Movement* cannot be used to enter [or engage] coastal hexes that are not friendly ports. These moves require *Sea Invasion* (15.5), a much more expensive and difficult process.

Port Capacity & Repulse

"Attempts" to use a port count against capacity even when the attempted *Sea Move* is *Repulsed* by enemy *Sea Interdiction* and forced to return to the port of embarkation.

Sea Invasions & Port Capacity

Port capacity governs *Sea Movement*, but not *Sea Invasions*. Blitz multiple invasions can be launched from minor ports. Invasions into a port hex do not interfere with full use of the port for *Sea Movement* (if, for example, a player wants to reinforce a captured port as quickly as possible).

Shoals & Sea Movement

Sea Movement and *Sea Supply* are possible through shoal hexes because ports have cleared and marked channels.

Sea Lane Example

An Allied *Rail Line* connects London to Dover. A *Sea Lane* through the English Channel connects Dover to Cherbourg. The Allies can trace *Rail/Sea Supply* via the rail line out of Cherbourg (once cleared).

15.5 SEA INVASIONS

Sea Invasion is movement by sea from a friendly port to **any coastal hex** (except see **15.52**) or **area** (must have a port -- see **18.38**). Unless moving between unengaged friendly ports, units can cross seas **only** by *Sea Invasion*.

Note: Sea Invasions into the Med Front and North Front have special restrictions noted in 21.39 and 21.47.

Sea Invasions are **not** *Strategic Movement*. They are special moves requiring activation of a dedicated **Invasion HQ** to invade with **one** unit.

15.51 Invasion Command

During the **COMMAND** phase, **Invasion HQs** can be activated to command *Sea Invasions* (use **INVASION HQ** markers).

Each *Invasion HQ* commands the movement of **one** invading unit and *no other movement*. They must begin the **COMMAND** phase in a friendly port, (i.e., cannot *deploy* into it), stacked with any unit(s) they will command to invade.

NOTE: Invasion HQs may be activated for Combat Support purposes only, without commanding unit(s) to invade (or being stacked with invadeable units).

Invasion HQs can launch Airstrikes and can provide Combat Support to battles within *Invasion Command Range* (see below), if they do not *Mobilize*.

SHQs can act as *Invasion HQs*, but without *Blitz* capability or *Combat Support*, as always. [THQs cannot.]

15.511 Invasion Combat Support

For *Combat Support* purposes, *Invasion HQs* have **Command Range** equal to their cv, as usual, and can support combats within this range.

However, *Invasion HQ Command Range* is traceable **only** through **sea** or **coastal** hexes (and **never** through all-land hexes or hexsides) into **invade-able coastal hexes** only. It is **not** traceable through **enemy-controlled straits** (**1.371**) or into *shoal*, *mountain*, or any other non-invadeable hex (e.g., **MF** non-port hexes).

Important: *Sea Invasions can be sent beyond Invasion HQ Command Range, but any resulting combat is unsupported.*

Invasion HQ Command Range can extend through enemy-controlled seas and through the sea portion of enemy controlled coastal hexes.

Invasion HQ Combat Support Range doubles under **Naval Supremacy**.

15.512 Blitz Invasion HQs

HQs can also be activated as **Blitz Invasion HQs** (mark with **BLITZ** and **INVASION HQ** markers) to command *Two-Wave* or *Long-Range Invasions* (see **15.54 Blitz Invasions**).

15.52 Invasion Movement

Amphibious, infantry, mech, armor, mountain, para, and HQ units can *Sea Invade*. Cavalry, shock, **static**, fortress, and siege gun units **cannot** *sea invade*.

The invading unit is moved from the invasion port (where the *Invasion HQ* is activated) to the target coastal hex. Normally, invading units must invade coastal hexes within the **same** sea area, though **Long-Range Invasions** (**15.542**) can cross **2** seas.

Note: Friendly Naval Supremacy doubles the range [in Sea Areas] of Sea Invasions.

Sea Invasions cannot be made into *Mountain*, *Marsh*, or *Shoal hexes*. *Mud* weather does **not** affect *Sea Invasions*. **The Soviets (only) can Sea Invade (but not Sea Assault) into Snow weather hexes.**

In the **MF** and **NF**, invasions can be made into port hexes **only** (see **15.9**).

Invasion movement cannot pass through enemy *commanded Straits* (**1.371**). *Invasions passing through enemy-controlled seas are subject to Sea Interdiction*, which can result in losses and/or *Repulse* (see **15.7**).

15.521 Opposed Invasions

Only **one** unit per **MOVEMENT** phase can *sea invade* into a *defended hex* (a second unit can invade during **BLITZ MOVEMENT**, see **Two Wave Invasions - 15.541**).

This limitation does **not** apply to *undefended hexes*, which can be simultaneously invaded by multiple units (up to maximum stacking).

15.53 Sea Assaults

Sea Assaults are *Sea Invasions* that **initiate** battles, and are subject to possible **Repulse**. *Invasions into existing battles are not Assaults*.

Amphibious, infantry, mountain, mech, and para units can *Sea Assault*.

Armor and **HQ** units can *Sea Invade* but cannot *Sea Assault* (e.g., they can invade into undefended hexes but cannot initiate a battle by sea invasion). **Armor** can invade into existing battles but not HQs (they can never voluntarily engage into enemy occupied hexes--see **5.1**)

Sea Invasion Example

The Allies control the English Channel. They have an HQ II and an amphibious corps in Portsmouth. The HQ is activated as an **Invasion HQ** and the amphibious unit is moved by sea to invade Brest, which is Axis controlled but currently undefended.

By capturing the port, the Allies have established a friendly Sea Lane, so Brest (and any rail lines emanating from it) becomes an Allied supply source. Control of Brest also gives the Allies control of the Bay of Biscay.

Invasion Command

Invasions are a costly form of movement in terms of HQ expenditure. However, *Invasion HQ combat support under Naval Supremacy can be very good* (simulating naval gunfire support), often better than land combat support (due to doubled combat support range, traced by sea).

The beaches can a good place to fight for both the invader (good combat support and DF amphibious firepower in BHs). They are also usually a good place to fight for the defender: keeping the beachhead engaged prevents cheap reinforcement and the landing of enemy HQs (which cannot enter engagements).

Sea Assault Example

In S'43, the Allies control Tunis, and have Naval Supremacy. A 3cv Italian army (infantry) defends Licata.

The Allies activate an HQ III in Tunis and commands the US 6th amphibious corps (4cv) there to *Sea Invade* to Licata.

A 3 TF airstrike from the *Invasion HQ* scores two half-hits (hill terrain) on the defending Italian army, reducing it to 2cv.

The Italian unit rolls (2/6) for Defensive Fire and scores one hit but fails to repulse the invader (SR vs. amphibious units).

The Allied unit loses a step, and then returns fire at 3 SF (no BH yet), scoring one ineffective hit (4/6/2).

During the Supply Phase, the Allies place the US 6th BH there to ensure supply for the invader, and provide naval gunfire support (15.66) in future combat.

Getting HQs Ashore

To break out after an invasion against enemy resistance is virtually impossible without landing a HQ unit. HQs can only cross seas in two ways: either by *Invasion* into an unengaged hex or sea movement into an unengaged friendly port. HQs can never move into a battle hex.

15.531 Repulse

In *assaults*, the initial defensive fire can **Repulse** assaulting units as well as scoring *hits* normally. See the **Repulse Table** (sidebar) regarding the repulse of sea assaults.

Repulse is applied to the weakest cv assaulting units first. *Repulsed* units return immediately to their port of embarkation, without returning fire. See **7.61 Repulse** for details.

Note: Combined Assaults (see: 7.65) using Paradrops often reduce the chances of Repulse.

15.54 Blitz Invasions

Blitz Invasion HQs can command two types of **Blitz Invasions**.

Blitz Invasion HQs must command invasions in both phases. They cannot mix *Invasion Command* in one phase with normal or paradrop command.

15.541 Two-Wave Invasions

Blitz Invasion HQs can command the invasion movement of one unit during MOVEMENT and a **second** unit during BLITZ MOVEMENT (this can be a previously repulsed invader).

The second-wave invader must land in a hex invaded in the previous MOVEMENT unless a *second-wave invasion hex* has been pre-assigned by placing a BLITZ marker there during MOVEMENT, in which case this hex must be invaded.

15.542 Long-Range Invasions

Blitz Invasion HQs can also command **amphibious units** (only) to invade across two [2] sea areas to more distant coastal hexes, landing during the BLITZ MOVEMENT phase.

NOTE: friendly Naval Supremacy doubles the maximum range of Long-Range Sea Invasions to 4 Sea Areas.

15.55 Sea Evacuations

Sea Evacuations are *Invasions* in reverse. The evacuating unit is “reverse-invaded” from a coastal hex to a friendly port, commanded by an *Invasion HQ* in the **target** port.

If *Retreating*, the evacuated unit takes *Pursuit Fire* based on a speed of ‘1’ (‘2’ for amphibious units).

Sea Evacuations are also subject to *Opposed Invasion* limits (**15.521**). Only **one** (1) unit can be evacuated from a battle hex per MOVEMENT phase. This limit does not apply to unengaged hexes.

15.56 Invasion Dispersal

Like airdropped Para units, units invading by sea are *Dispersed* during the Player-Turn of the Invasion.

Dispersed units have **no effect** on hex control, including the hex they occupy. *Dispersed* units **cannot move** (e.g., in the Blitz Phase), but combat is unaffected.

Dispersed Sea Invaders automatically recover during the SUPPLY phase of the invasion turn, regaining their hex control ability (and ZOCs).

Para Linkup. Unlike Paras, *dispersed* sea invaders need **not** achieve *Linkup* to avoid elimination. However, because sea invaders recover from *dispersal* before Paras are checked, airdropped Paras **can** achieve *Linkup* with recovered invaders.

15.6 BEACHHEADS

Each amphibious unit has an associated **BeachHead** (BH) marker. In the SUPPLY phase, BHs can be placed in invaded hexes, serving as *supply sources* while the hex remains embattled, and as temporary ports after it is won. If enemy units control a BH hex with no friendly units present, the BH is **eliminated**.

BHs are listed in Scenario *Starting Forces*, and can also arrive as *reinforcements*. The Axis has no amphibious units, and hence no BHs.

15.61 BH Preparation

Ready BHs are available for immediate use. They are kept *face down* in the **BH Ready** box (on map).

Preparing BHs are not ready for use, and are kept *facedown* in the **BH Prep** box. During Production, they can be raised to **BH Ready** status for **20 PPs**, and **eliminated** BHs can be rebuilt to **BH Prep** status for **20 PPs**.

15.62 BH Emplacement

During **any** Allied SUPPLY phase following a *Sea Invasion* by an *amphibious* unit, its associated **BH** can be *emplaced* in the invasion hex provided the BH is *Ready* and the amphibious unit is in the hex. Only one BH can be *emplaced* per hex.

Once *emplaced*, BHs cannot be moved (except as below).

Unengaged BHs that are no longer useful where *emplaced* can be removed to the **BH Prep** box (no cost) in any friendly SUPPLY phase.

**ASSAULT REPULSES
(Defensive Fire)**

River	1-2 (1-3 Mud) ¹		
Air	1 ²		
Sea	FNS	NP	ENS
by Amph. units	1-3	1-2	1
by Other units	1-4	1-3	1-2

¹ 1 for MF rivers/canals except Nile.

² 1-3 by Fortress Defenders

NOTE: In the table above, **FNS/ENS** applies to **the player rolling** to interdict or repulse enemy movement / supply.

Two-Wave Sea Invasions

Blitz two-wave invasions are common in EuroFront. Firstly, with the ever-present possibility of Repulse, a second wave gives a second chance. Secondly, it is usually wise to get maximum strength ashore quickly, to withstand or deter enemy counterattacks on the Beachhead.

Long-Range Sea Invasions

Long-Range invasions are expensive but often worth the surprise value.

Note: Lacking amphibious units, the Axis cannot Long-Range Invade, but can Sea Invade across 2 sea areas if it has Naval Supremacy.

Sea Evacuations

When a unit must move from a coastal hex back to a friendly port by sea and Sea Movement is impossible (e.g., a Retreat or no port/BH in the embarkation hex), a Sea Evacuation is the only means of extracting the unit.

Example: In Summer 1944, the Allies have a 3CV amphibious unit and BH stalemated in Calais after invading, and an HQ III in Portsmouth.

The Allies activate the HQ as an Invasion HQ, and “reverse invade” the amphibious unit back to Portsmouth. Since this is a retreat, engaged Axis units get Pursuit Fire. A 3 cv German armor unit rolls 3SF (speed 2 in S’44), scoring 1 hit. An Axis 2cv infantry (speed 1 in S’44) also present cannot fire. The amphibious unit returns at 2cv and the BH is eliminated.

Sea Invasion Threats

Usually, not all Allied BHs are currently invasion-ready. With BHs kept *facedown*, the Axis cannot tell where the invasion threat is most serious, even if the locations of the Allied amphibious corps are known.

Beachhead Supply

Invasions without Beachheads will suffer continual supply attrition until a port is captured. Players should not count on BH Supply in winter, because of Storms.

15.63 BeachHead Supply

BeachHeads act as a *supply source* for friendly units in their own hex, *even if the hex is embattled and enemy controlled*.

In **friendly** controlled hexes (even if embattled), BHs act as *Supply Sources* (to which friendly units can trace 2 hex *supply lines*).

To act as a *Supply Source*, a BH must be able to trace a *Sea Lane* to a friendly port. This *Sea Lane* cannot pass through enemy controlled *straits*, and is subject to *Sea Interdiction* (15.7) if it passes through enemy-controlled seas.

15.64 BH Disruption

BHs dependent on *Sea Supply* passing through enemy controlled seas are subject to enemy *Sea Interdiction* (15.7).

Storms disrupt BHs. **bordering on that Sea Basin, negating all functions of affected BHs for that fortnight (invert).**

15.65 Mulberries

Unengaged BHs function as temporary minor ports (capacity 1) for *Sea Movement* (this is **in addition** to on-map port capacity). BHs do **not** form *Sea Lanes* connecting friendly *rail lines*. *Invasions cannot* be launched from BHs.

15.66 Shore Bombardment

Allied amphibious units occupying their own BH hex fire **DF**, both offensively and defensively.

15.67 The Soviet BH

The Soviet amphibious *Coastal Army* has an associated BH, which can supply units in its own or adjacent hexes **only**, but does **not** provide **DF** for the CA unit. It cannot be deployed in the *Mediterranean Sea Basin*.

Note: The Axis has no amphibious units, hence no BHs.

15.7 SEA INTERDICTION

Sea/Invasion Movement and *Sea/BH Supply* are totally secure from enemy interference when confined to *friendly* controlled seas. However, when passing through *enemy* seas, units and supply can be damaged or repulsed by *Sea Interdiction*.

15.71 Sea Interdiction Values

Each *sea area* has a *Sea Interdiction Value* (in triangle), which rates its defensibility with naval forces based in the controlling *Naval Base*.

15.72 Sea Movement Interdiction

When an opponent is attempting to traverse a friendly-controlled sea by *Sea Movement*, the *passive player* can attempt *Sea Interdiction* after all enemy movement is complete.

In each case, the *passive player* rolls a number of dice equaling the *Sea Interdiction Value* of each friendly sea area crossed. Certain results cause *Repulse* or *hits* to the moving unit (see: **Sea Interdiction** table, sidebar).

If any **Repulse** result occurs, the unit returns to its port of departure.

15.73 Sea Supply Interdiction

During the *Enemy Supply Check* (SUPPLY phase), the active player can attempt to *interdict* enemy *Sea Lanes* passing through a *friendly controlled* sea. Success negates the enemy *Sea Lane* that turn (possibly leaving enemy units *unsupplied*).

Check each enemy port/BH separately for *interdiction*. For each port being checked, the passive player specifies a *Sea Lane* to friendly *Rail Supply*. The active player rolls a number of dice equal to the *Sea Interdiction Value* of friendly seas this *Sea Lane* traverses.

If **one** (or more) *Repulse* result is obtained, that *Sea Lane* is *interdicted* (unusable) during that SUPPLY phase (BHs are disrupted: invert). Resulting *unsupplied* enemy units then must suffer *supply attrition*.

Example: During the Axis Supply phase, the Allies need a Sea Lane through the Axis-controlled Bay of Biscay to Bordeaux or Lorient. Naval Parity applies, so an Axis roll of 1-3 would interdict. The Sea Interdiction value of the Bay of Biscay is "1," so the Axis player rolls one die for each port: 5 for Bordeaux and 3 for Lorient. Lorient is interdicted but Bordeaux receives Allied Sea Supply this Supply Check.

Beachhead Support

BHs represent the logistic and naval support for invasions. DF for Amphibious units in BHs represents ongoing naval gunfire support. Naval bombardment proved crucial in breaking up several panzer counterattacks well after D-Day.

Sea Movement Interdiction

Sea Movement (ordinary sea transport) is more likely to be repulsed or damaged than *Invasion Movement* (valuable and heavily escorted convoys).

Example: In S'43, the Axis controls the Bay of Biscay from Brest. The Allies control Bordeaux and attempt to *Sea Move* a unit there from Dover.

The Axis player rolls one die for *Sea Interdiction*, obtaining (2), a successful interdiction despite enemy Naval Supremacy. The Allied unit returns to Dover.

Sea Supply Interdiction

Sea and *BH Supply* across enemy seas is unreliable until *Sea control* is obtained. *Sea Supply* (port-based) is easier to interdict than *BH Supply* is.

MOVEMENT INTERDICTION (Passive Player Roll)			
	FNS	NP	ENS
Invasions	R 1-3 H 4-6	R 1-2 H 5-6	R 1 H 6
Sea Moves	R 1-4 H 3-6	R 1-3 H 4-6	R 1-2 H 5-6
SUPPLY INTERDICTION (Active Player Roll)			
	FNS	NP	ENS
BH Supply	R 1-3	R 1-2	R 1
Sea Supply	R 1-4	R 1-3	R 1-2
FNS: Friendly Naval Supremacy ENS: Enemy Naval Supremacy R: Repulse Numbers H: Hit Numbers			
<i>NOTE: In the table above FNS/ENS applies to the player rolling to interdict or repulse enemy movement or supply.</i>			

15.8 NAVAL SUPREMACY

Naval Supremacy and **Naval Parity** describe the overall naval balance between two opposing sides.

A fairly equal naval balance is termed **Naval Parity**. Parity **always** applies between the Axis and Soviets.

Naval Supremacy describes the overall naval superiority of one side. It implies improved naval capabilities for that side and weakened ones for the enemy (see 15.82). **Naval Supremacy** does **not** affect sea control.

Between the Axis and Allies, the naval balance is determined by use of **Seaways** (see 15.81). The side with use of **more** Seaways has **Naval Supremacy**. If both sides can use the same number of Seaways, **Naval Parity** prevails.

Naval Supremacy is re-evaluated at the end of every POLITICS phase.

15.81 Seaway Control

Seaways are sea passageways traceable through friendly and neutral controlled seas (*Cooperating* neutrals do not block Seaways) and Straits. Seaways are **not** traceable through enemy-controlled Seas/Straits (15.12 /1.371).

1) Southern Seaway: A sea Line of Communications between the **Atlantic Ocean** and **India** via South Africa.

The Allies usually have a Southern Seaway. The Axis never does (it can never control South Africa), but can deny one to the Allies by controlling Karachi.

2) Middle Seaway: A sea Line of Communications between the **Atlantic** and **Indian Oceans** via the Mediterranean.

The Allies have a Middle Seaway as the game opens (Italian seas are neutral, hence usable). The Axis does not (cannot pass either Gibraltar or the Suez canal).

Italian belligerence closes this seaway to the Allies (Central Med and Ionian become Axis). The Allies regain use of this seaway by taking Benghazi and Tripoli.

3) Northern Seaway: A sea Line of Communications between the **E. Baltic Sea** and the **Norwegian (change: not Nordkapp) Sea**.

At game start, the Axis has a Northern Seaway. The Allies do not due to Axis control of the W Baltic. Allied control of any Norwegian naval base would negate Axis use of this Seaway.

15.82 Naval Supremacy Effects

15.821 Sea Movement

Naval Supremacy **doubles** the range of *Sea Moves*: a unit can cross **two** (2) Sea Areas per *Sea Move*.

NOTE: Double-range Sea Moves cannot be split to move two units one sea each.

15.822 Sea Invasions

Naval Supremacy **doubles** the maximum range of an *Invasion Move* from one to **two** sea areas (**Long Range Blitz** invasions can traverse up to **four** Sea Areas). [This does NOT allow two units to each move one sea each for a single *Invasion Move*.]

Naval Supremacy also **doubles** the combat support *Command Range* of *Invasion HQs* to **twice** the cv of the commanding HQ (e.g., 6 sea hexes for a HQ III). [Remember, SHQs **cannot** support combat.]

15.823 Sea Assaults

Naval Supremacy reduces the chance of friendly *sea assaults* being repulsed, and increases the chance of repulsing enemy *sea assaults* (see SEA ASSAULT table on map).

15.824 Sea Interdiction

Naval Supremacy increases the chances of successful *Sea Interdiction* of enemy naval actions and reduces the chances of successful enemy *Sea Interdiction* of friendly naval actions (see SEA INTERDICTION table on map).

15.825 Siege Supply

With friendly **Naval Supremacy**, an engaged port can supply one unit at **any** cv, not just 1 cv (see also 15.83).

15.826 Shipping Losses

Shipping Losses **still** apply to a side that has **Naval Supremacy**, unless other conditions (eg, *Mare Nostro*) change this.

15.83 Naval & Air Supremacy

Siege Supply: With both Air and Naval Supremacy, an engaged port can supply any number of units.

IMPORTANT: If **both** Allied Air and **Naval Supremacy** are in effect, **all** Axis sea capability in the Atlantic and Mediterranean Sea Basins is lost.

15.9 MF/NF SEAPOWER

Sea Invasions/Assaults into the **MF** and **NF** must originate in Ports and land in Ports. For front-specific Sea Invasion rules, see 21.39 (**MF**) and 21.47 (**NF**).

Naval Supremacy Determination

If none of the Seas/Straits of a Seaway are **enemy** controlled, that Seaway is passable. The side (Allies/Axis) with the most passable Seaways has **Naval Supremacy**. If equal, **Naval Parity** is in effect.

Northern Seaway

- Eastern Baltic Sea (Danzig)
- Western Baltic Sea (Stettin)
- Denmark Straits (Odense/Copen./Malmo)
- Skagerrak (Copenhagen)
- Norwegian Leads (Bergen)
- Norwegian Sea (Trondheim)
- **EXCLUDES** Nordkapp Sea (Narvik)

Middle Seaway

- Cadiz Straits (Cadiz/Tangiers)
- Gibraltar Straits (Gibraltar/Tangiers)
- Alboran Sea (Gibraltar)
- Western Med. Sea (Algiers)
- OR: Gulf of Lyon (Marseilles)
- AND Ligurian Sea (Genoa)
- Tyrrhenian Sea (Tunis)
- Central Med. Sea (Tripoli)
- Ionian Sea (Benghazi)
- Eastern Med. Sea (Alexandria)
- Suez Canal (Suez/Port Said/Port Said E1)

Southern Seaway (never Axis)

- Atlantic Ocean (always Allied)
- South Africa (always Allied)
- Indian Ocean (Karachi)

Naval Supremacy Examples

1939 (Historical)	Axis	Allies
Northern Seaway	Yes	No
Middle Seaway	No	Yes
Southern Seaway	No	Yes
Total Seaways	1	2
= Allied Naval Supremacy		

1941 (Historical)	Axis	Allies
Northern Seaway	Yes	No
Middle Seaway	No	No*
Southern Seaway	No	Yes
Total Seaways	1	1
= Naval Parity		

*Italian *belligerence* has closed the *Middle Seaway* to the Allies [Central Med/Ionian become Axis, not neutral].

16.0 WAR AND PEACE

Belligerent nations are actively at war. **Neutral** nations are at peace. **Cooperating** nations are technically neutral, but have granted concessions to one side or the other.

16.1 NEUTRALITY

Most nations begin the game as **neutrals**. Neutral forces are not deployed on the map until they become **belligerent** (**exception**: Soviets are always in play).

Neutral Territory. *Belligerent* forces cannot enter neutral **land** territory without a prior *Declaration of War*. *Belligerent* ZOCs do not extend into neutral territory, nor can *Belligerents* trace **command** or **rail/supply** lines through it.

Note: National Supply (see 20.63) **can** be traced through neutral land territory (**exception**: see *Cooperation* 16.2).

Neutral Seas. *Neutrals* exert no seapower. *Belligerents* can move/trace supply through neutral-controlled sea areas/straits (**except** Turkey, see 1.371).

16.2 COOPERATION

Some nations (e.g., Vichy) **Cooperate** with the Axis as the result of an Axis *Diplomatic Event* (DE). Other nations **Cooperate** with the Allies (see 20.921).

Cooperating nations **remain neutral** but transfer their future *Production* to a faction and allow it use of their railroads.

16.21 Cooperation Effects

Production: That nation's full (wartime) *Production* capacity is transferred to a faction, ending its *Peacetime Production* (16.32).

Territory: Units can move / trace supply **through** national territory **by rail only**, but **cannot** remain within national territory without a prior *Declaration of War* (see 16.41).

National Supply: Though ostensibly neutral, a *Cooperating* nation does **not** allow the opposing faction to trace *National Supply* through its borders.

Seas: The opposing faction **can** use seas controlled by *Cooperating* nations (without *Interdiction*).

Politics/Diplomacy: *Cooperating* nations can **never** join the opposing faction by *Alliance Reaction* or *Diplomacy* (ignore such results).

16.22 Cooperating Forces

Cooperating forces do **not** enter play.

However, a *Cooperating* nation yields **all** future *Production* to a faction, and its *Peacetime Production* (16.32) **terminates**.

Apply accumulated *Peacetime Production* to national forces on the **Neutral OB** card and turn them *upright* to show this has been done.

Thereafter, the controlling faction can build *Cooperating* forces (those upright on the OB card) using faction PPs and costs (**MF** rules apply to units in the **MF**), but all builds apply even if that nation joins the opposing faction instead.

Compliance is a special type of limited *Cooperation* that applies to Sweden after Axis DE **DS** (see 21.492).

16.3 BELLIGERENCE

Belligerent nations have joined either the **AXIS** or the **ALLIES** (their forces, territory and production being controlled by that *faction*). *Neutrals* **never** join the **SOVIETS**.

Neutrals can become *belligerent* in three different ways, which affects their range of movement:

- By **Declaration of War** (16.4): Such nations are termed **Co-belligerents**. These units may go anywhere.
- By **Alliance Reaction** (16.5): These nations are called **Interventionists**. Their forces are **restricted** (16.311) to home territory and adjacent **nations**.
- By **Diplomatic Event** (16.6): These nations are termed **Satellites**. Their forces are **restricted** to home territory and adjacent **hexes/Areas**.

16.31 Belligerent Forces

Upon *belligerence*, the owning faction deploys national forces freely within national territory (minors can only set up **one unit per hex**).

National forces are shown on the **OB** cards as of *September 1939*. Before deployment, they must be built up to reflect *Peacetime Production* (see 16.32) that has occurred since September 1939.

16.311 Unit Restriction

Restricted units must remain within a defined area, or they are **unsupplied** (see 10.5 and 10.6).

Sometimes **restricted** units are **released** from restriction by *Diplomatic Event*, but **released** units that are eliminated are permanently **restricted** thereafter even if rebuilt.

Soviet Neutrality

While most *Neutrals* set up freely upon *belligerence*, the Red Army is far too powerful to have this privilege.

Neutral Soviet forces are deployed, built, and maneuvered by the Allied player in plain view of the Axis player, and all movements must be paid for with Soviet HQ expenditures (which are not cheap in 1939/40).

Cooperation

During WW2, some minor powers granted Germany transit rights through national territory and favorable trade agreements supplying critical resources. However, these nations neither contributed troops nor allowed German forces to stay within their territory. In EuroFront this is called *Cooperation*.

Swedish Compliance

Upon Axis DE **DS**, Swedish *Compliance* comes into effect. This is a special form of limited "cooperation" with partial cession of PPs and use of rail lines (see 21.492).

Unit Restriction

Early in the war the Wehrmacht high command argued against having *Satellite* forces involved in their campaigns as this would introduce language and military problems into operational planning, and require Germany to supply and protect poorly equipped *Satellite* forces.

Most of the General Staff also advocated keeping Italy neutral, having concluded (correctly, as it turned out) that her entry on the Axis side would be a hindrance rather than a help to the war effort.

Later, as casualties mounted in the east, Hitler sought a more active role for *Satellite* forces, and some allies sent sizeable contingents, but others declined.

As the tide of war turned, Hitler's allies became less willing to contribute soldiers to his war, and only allowed limited forces to be stationed outside the homeland.

Example: Rumania joins the Axis by *Diplomatic Event* RX, so its forces are restricted to Rumania/1939 (and adjacent hexes). Its 3rd Army is then released by *Diplomatic Event* 3R. It fights in Russia but is eliminated. If rebuilt, this unit is permanently restricted to Rumania/39 and adjacent hexes.

Note: In defining home territory for this rule, use current or 1939 borders, whichever is larger.

16.32 Peacetime Production

Before *belligerence*, neutrals are building up military capability at a reduced rate. **Peacetime Production** is equal to **one fourth** of a neutral's nominal (wartime) production. To calculate the accumulated *Peacetime Production* of a new belligerent:

- **Count** months elapsed since September/39. These figures are shown in gray in the 2nd from right column of the GAME RECORD SHEET.

Example: Jan/41 = 16 months elapsed since September/39.

- **Multiply** months elapsed by national (wartime) Production, and **divide** this figure by **four** (drop fractions). This equals PPs of *Peacetime Production* available.

Example: Bulgaria (production 1 PP) joins the Axis in May/41. Multiplying 20 months elapsed times 1 PP and dividing by four yields 5 PPs of *Peacetime Production*.

- **Spend** these PPs to build up national forces as desired before deploying them on the map. Unused PPs are lost.

Note: Peacetime Production cannot be applied in unsupplied locations (e.g., Ethiopia).

Remember: Cooperating units (upright on the OB Cards) receive no further Peacetime Production.

16.4 DECLARATIONS OF WAR

Belligerent units can **never** enter neutral territory until a **Declaration of War (DoW)** has been issued (*except*: see 16.21 and 16.42). *Declarations of War* are made at the beginning of the COMMAND phase, and cause the target neutral[s] to immediately join the opposing faction. **Alliance Reaction** checks (16.5) are then immediately made to see if other neutrals also become *belligerent* in reaction.

To **Declare War**, a faction must be able to enter the targeted neutral and then must actually attempt to do so.

Chamberlain Rule: The ALLIES cannot Declare War before W'39, or while Phony War (20.43) is in effect.

16.41 Betrayal

AXIS *Declarations of War* upon **Pro-Axis** or **Cooperating** neutrals, or other Axis nations (eg, by exceeding *Occupation Limits* 20.132) are considered **Betrayal** (*exception: Axis entry into the [pro-Axis] ME Mandates does not require a DoW*).

With the following exceptions, ALLIED *Declarations of War* upon **any neutral** constitute **Betrayal**:

- Allied DoWs on **Norway** and the **ME Mandates** are exempted under certain conditions (see DEs **NX** & **ME**).
- After DE 2F, Allied DoWs on **minors Cooperating with the Axis** are exempt.

Betrayal annuls all future *Alliance Reactions* in favor of that faction, and adds +1 to all future *Diplomatic Event* die-rolls by that faction (reducing the odds).

AXIS *Betrayal* also cancels *Surprise Attack* effects (20.16) in future.

16.42 Axis-Soviet Border Disputes

During Soviet neutrality (i.e., *Molotov Pact* in effect), both Axis and Soviets must occupy all mutual border hexes within/adjacent to *E. Poland*, the *Baltic States*, and *Bessarabia* to avoid **Border Disputes**.

If either side fails to occupy mutual border hexes in these areas, the other side can occupy and **annex** (16.6 sidebar) them **without** a *Declaration of War*.

Moreover, any **new** border hexes resulting from such annexations then become similarly exposed to new *border disputes* if left undefended. In effect, either side can advance 1 hex/turn across undefended borders within the specified areas.

Grace Period. If the Axis-Soviet border changes by any means **other** than *Border Dispute* (e.g. Politics, Conquest, or Diplomacy), both sides are allowed **one Month** to garrison their new borders before the other can annex them by *Border Dispute*.

16.5 ALLIANCE REACTIONS

Whenever a *Declaration of War* is made, other neutrals may *react* and also become *belligerent*. If so, **their** belligerence may trigger further reactions in a “domino” effect.

16.51 Alliance Checks

After *Declarations of War* are made, check for **Alliance Reactions** using the ALLIANCE REACTIONS table (see DIPLOMACY pages 88-91).

Alliance Reaction Example

[Assumes France defeated, no Betrayals]

- **The Axis Declares War on Yugoslavia** (Axis COMMAND phase).

Yugoslavia joins Allies. Place its units face down in Yugoslavia to indicate New Belligerent with Alliance Checks pending (tip units back to preserve Sept/39 cv).

- **Yugoslavia Alliance Checks**

Determine possible Reactions. Read across the **Yugoslavia** row on the Alliance Table (France is *defeated*, so use the 2nd number of each pair m/n). The following neutrals may react joining Yugoslavia's side, unless otherwise noted (* = Always Joins Axis. † = Always Joins Allies).

Nation (Reacts)	DR	Result
Italy (1*)	DR1	Joins Axis (only).
Hungary (1-2*)	DR3	Remains neutral.
Rumania (1-2)	DR2	Joins Allies (Yugo).
Bulgaria (1-2*)	DR5	Remains neutral.
Greece (1-3†)	DR3	Joins Allies (only).

As they react, place Italian, Rumanian, and Greek units face down in national territory (means *New Belligerent*: Alliance Checks pending). When finished, turn Yugoslavian units upright to show its Alliance Checks are complete.

- **Italy Alliance Checks**

[Uppermost *New Belligerent* in AR table.]

Hungary (1*) DR1 Joins Axis (only).

[Spain is not Republican].

Place Hungarian units face down in Hungary (*New Belligerent*). Turn Italian units upright (checks completed).

- **Hungary Alliance Checks**

[Uppermost *New Belligerent* in table.]

[Italy, **Yugoslavia** and **Rumania** belligerent].

Turn Hungarians upright (checks done).

- **Rumania Alliance Checks**

[Hungary, Yugoslav, Greece belligerent]

Bulgaria (1-4*) DR6 Remains neutral

Turn Rumanians upright (checks done).

- **Greece Alliance Checks**

[Italy, Yugoslavia, Rumania belligerent]

Bulgaria (1-2*) DR3 Remains neutral.

Turn Greeks upright (checks done).

[No *New Belligerents* remain to check.]

- **Deploy New Belligerent Forces**

Axis applies *Peacetime Production* to Italian and Hungarian units (unless previously *Cooperating*) then deploys them as desired within national territory.

Allies apply *Peacetime Production* to Yugoslavian, Rumanian, and Greek units then deploys them in national territory.

Find the *uppermost New Belligerent* in the left column of the table. Trace across its row to find its *Alliance Linkages* with other **Linked Neutrals** (top row). Use the **first** figure in each cell **before** French defeat and the second figure after.

The *passive player* rolls one die per *Linked Neutral* (ignore belligerent nations and those with no linkage).

If the die-roll is **equal to or less than** the linkage number, that *Linked Neutral* **also** becomes belligerent, joining the **same side** as the *New Belligerent* it reacted to, unless otherwise specified).

16.52 Secondary Reactions

When a *Linked Neutral* reacts to become a *New Belligerent* itself, **its** belligerence triggers a further round of *Alliance Reaction* checks.

If multiple checks are pending, check the **uppermost New Belligerent** in the table first. Complete all checks for one *New Belligerent* before proceeding to the next.

NOTE: Neutrals are checked for possible reaction to each New Belligerent in a single "chain reaction" of Alliance Checks.

After **all New Belligerents** have been checked for *Alliance Reactions*, players deploy newly belligerent forces. The *active* side deploys its newly belligerent forces first, then the *passive* side.

16.6 DIPLOMATIC EVENTS

The *DIPLOMACY* phase follows Production each month. The Allies-Soviets (jointly) can attempt **one Diplomatic Event (DE)**, for which the *PreConditions* are currently met (see the *DIPLOMACY* pages 88-91). Next the Axis has the same opportunity.

Procedure: Announce which **DE** is being attempted, then roll one die (unless it occurs **Always**). If the result is within the specified range, the **DE** occurs (along with any *Other Effects* listed) and **cannot** be declined (e.g., *Soviet Mobilization*).

16.7 POLITICS

During the *Politics* phase, the active player can check for any or all of the following political events (in this order):

- **Demoralization/ Solidarity**
- **Armistice** (ALLIES only)
- **Revolt/ Surrender** (ALLIES only)
- **Defeat/ Conquest**
- **Naval Supremacy** (see 15.8)

16.71 Demoralization

Demoralized nations can *Surrender* (16.8) and/or suffer other effects (below).

Demoralization is caused by:

France (20.44): Poland is *defeated* and a French/Belgian major city or a *Maginot Line* fort is lost.

Norway (20.81): Allied DE **NP** (*Norway-Finland Expedition Proposed*).

Satellite Italy (20.25): Allies control Libya, Sicily, Sardinia, Albania or a *Major City in Italy*. [2F not needed.]

Minor Axis Satellites (16.3): DE **2F**.

Vichy: DE **2F** or Allies control Libya.

16.711 Ambivalence

Norway, Vichy and Portugal become **ambivalent** if demoralized. Their units *Repulse* (7.61) enemy *Assaults* weakly (**only on die-rolls of '1'**) and may *Capitulate* in combat (see 7.7).

16.72 Armistice

Once per game, during Allied *POLITICS*, the Allies can offer **French Armistice**. The Axis must immediately either accept or reject *Armistice* (20.46).

NOTE: if France is demoralized, Allied Solidarity is checked every Axis Politics (see 20.45). Once it fails twice, the Allies must offer Armistice next Allied Politics.

Once per game, during Axis *POLITICS*, the Axis can offer **Finnish Armistice**. The Soviets must then **immediately** either accept or reject *Armistice*. See 21.48.

16.721 Withdrawal

Following *Armistice*, units left inside neutralized territory **may immediately make one Rail or land move** to a friendly *location* (hex/Area) bordering on that territory (no command needed). Units unable to *do so* are **eliminated**.

16.73 Revolt [Allies only]

Revolt can occur in *exploited* nations if the Allies/ Soviets control any national territory. A **Resistance Army** appears in *home territory* (**and is restricted to it**).

Exploitation: Nations that have been *defeated* by the Axis for one **complete Winter** season (Dec-May) are **exploited**.

16.731 France, Greece & Norway

Once *exploited*, **France, Greece and Norway** can **Revolt** if national hexes are controlled by the Allies/Soviets (**can only happen once, multiple attempts allowed**).

Note: If the Axis betrays Vichy, France can Revolt at any time (no Exploitation or Allied hexes needed).

Alliance Reactions vs. Diplomacy

Alliance Reactions reflect "heat of the moment" decisions to join in the defense of (or attack on) an attacked neutral, and is a one-time, yes/no determination.

The chances of *Alliance Reaction* are based on the number, currency and strength of alliances concluded between the parties, or hostility and/or territorial disputes between neighboring countries.

Diplomatic Events randomize the entry of Neutrals into the war. As opposed to *Alliance Reactions* (which are one-time hit-or-miss affairs), *Diplomatic Events* represent long-term application of diplomatic, military, or economic pressure, and have a sense of inevitability about them (players can attempt most DEs repeatedly, as long as the *Preconditions* are met).

NOTE: Some DEs are not truly "diplomatic" in nature, but the terminology is retained for continuity with previous editions.

Diplomacy/Politics Terminology

"Rumania AXIS" means that Rumania must belong to the Axis faction. (Defeated nations do not belong to any faction.)

"Rumania AXIS controlled" means **all** Rumanian hexes must be Axis controlled.

"EF all-Snow month" means that **EF** Snow weather must be certain (fixed) for the entire upcoming month.

"Annexation" means incorporation of an area into home territory (i.e., new units and reinforcements can arrive there). This occurs in the cases of Bessarabia and E. Poland / Baltic States (annexed to the USSR), W. Poland / Danzig (annexed to Germany, and Transylvania (annexed to Hungary).

Politics vs. Diplomacy

Political events can occur at the end of every turn (2 times per month), and any number of these can occur in a fortnight.

In contrast, only one *Diplomatic Event* can occur per month for each side.

3 Player Diplomacy

When the Allies and Soviets are being played as separate factions, only one *Diplomatic Event* is allowed per month. Players must agree which event is attempted or none can attempted.

During friendly **POLITICS**, the Allies/Soviets can check for *Revolt* by rolling one die. If the result is **less than** the number of Allied/Soviet controlled national hexes (or areas), *Revolt* occurs.

Resistance Army. Upon *Revolt*, the Allies/Soviets place a *Resistance* army (*Maqui/Edes/Norwegian static*) at **1 cv** in any national hex not containing a **German** unit or ZOC. It arrives *unsupplied* (no ZOC) as a normal Allied / Soviet unit, subject to all normal rules.

16.732 Yugoslavia

If **Yugoslavia** has been *exploited*, it can *Revolt once per game* in **any** Allied **POLITICS** (no controlled hexes or dieroll needed). The **Tito** unit arrives **unsupplied** at **1 cv (2 cv after 2nd Front)** in any **mountain** hex within Yugoslavia (cannot be Axis occupied).

Tito functions as an Allied mountain unit, subject to all normal rules, except for the following special abilities **within Yugoslavia only**:

- **Tito** is immune to supply attrition (but if unsupplied, it still has no ZOC and cannot build, as usual).
- **Tito** can disengage/retreat into unoccupied mountain hexes **regardless of Axis ZOCs**, and is immune to *Pursuit Fire*.
- If **disbanded (11.84)** voluntarily (not killed), **Tito** can reappear again in a *Season* that starts 3+ months later.

16.8 SURRENDER

If *demoralized (16.71)* certain *Axis Satellites (16.3)* may **Surrender** if Allied or Soviet forces control **any** national territory. *Land Satellites* and *Maritime Satellites* are treated slightly differently.

Note: After Allied DE NP, Norway can also Surrender to the ALLIES (see 16.83).

Procedure: During friendly **POLITICS**, the Allies/Soviets roll 1 die for each *demoralized* Satellite in which they control territory: if the result is **less than** that Satellite's **War Weariness**, it *Surrenders*.

16.81 Maritime Satellites

For **Italy, Spain, or Vichy***, *War Weariness* is the number of enemy-controlled **ports (major ports count double)** plus **currently** eliminated or *unsupplied* units. For this rule, units without *Secure Supply (11.71)* are considered **unsupplied**.

**Note: For Vichy only, MF ports/units are counted, otherwise not.*

16.82 Land Satellites

For **Rumania, Hungary, Bulgaria Yugoslavia, War Weariness** equals the number of Allied/Soviet controlled **hexes***, plus currently eliminated/unsupplied units. For this rule, units without *Secure Supply (11.71)* are considered **unsupplied**.

**Note: use 1939 or current borders, whichever is smaller.*

16.83 Norway

If Allied DE NP is in effect, **Norway** is *demoralized* and can *Surrender* to the Allies as for *Maritime Satellites (16.81)*. See Allied DEs and *Defection (below)*.

16.84 Surrender Effects

- That nation is *defeated (16.9)*.
- Territory control is unchanged until **Conquest (16.92)** occurs.
- **Defection.** One national unit **not** in a hex containing **German/foreign** Axis units/ZOCs is replaced by a **1 cv** national **Volunteer** unit (see sidebar). **This unit is restricted to national territory and adjacent hexes.**
- All other national units are **eliminated**.

**Note: If no unit Defects, a Volunteer unit can be built in the national capital in any future Production. If no such unit is provided, use any national unit.*

16.9 DEFEAT

A *Great or Major Power* is **defeated** when its **capital** is enemy-controlled **AND** all national units are eliminated **during any POLITICS phase**.

A *Minor Power* is **defeated** when its **capital** is enemy-controlled **OR** all its units are eliminated **during any POLITICS**.

Exceptions: Switzerland and Norway, although minor powers, are defeated as **major powers (see 20.76, 20.81)**.

Surrender (16.84) also causes defeat.

16.91 Defeated Nations

Defeated forces are permanently eliminated and **defeated nations** no longer exist (but **Conquest** still applies).

16.92 Conquest

After its *defeat*, control of a nation's **Capital** at the end of **any POLITICS** phase confers **total** control of all national territory, **provided no** units of the opposite *faction* remain therein.

Note: Conquest also applies to British / Italian / French Colonies in the Med Front.

Control of Territory

Control of nations, islands, or colonies is defined as control of **ALL** its hexes. It is not necessary that every hex be occupied.

Satellite Surrender

When an Axis minor has been [reluctantly] forced into the war by *Diplomatic Event*, it will readily *Surrender* once enemy forces begin conquering its home territory.

On the other hand, if an Axis minor has been a victim of *Declaration of War*, or has reacted to the belligerence of a neighbor, it will **not** *Surrender* and can only be defeated by the capture of its capital.

Surrender and Eliminated Units

Only **currently** eliminated units count against a *Surrender* dieroll. A player can therefore resist *Surrender* by rebuilding eliminated national units back into cadres.

ALLIED Volunteer Units

France (Revolt)† *Maquis*

Greece (Revolt) *Edes*

Yugoslavia (Revolt) *Tito*

Norway (Revolt/Defection) *1 (static)*

Italy (Defection) *Friuli*

Vichy (Defection) *2 Mtn Cps**

† Can appear in Occupied France or Vichy.

** Arrives next Production in Algiers/Tunis*

SOVIET Volunteer Units

Rumania (Defection) *1R*

Bulgaria (Defection) *1B*

Hungary (Defection) *1H*

Defeated Nations

Defeated nations no longer exist in the game (they no longer belong to any faction regarding DEs, etc).

Conquest

As long as enemy forces remain within its home territory, no automatic change of territory control occurs. Conquest occurs only when no enemy forces remain in a **Politics** Phase. Conquest then confers control of all national territory.

Med Front Colonies

Italy: Libya.

France: Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia.

Britain: Egypt, Palestine.

17.1 AXIS OIL SUPPLY

The Axis **Oil Supply** is defined as a *Line of Communication* (see 10.22) traceable between Berlin and a major oil source (either **Ploesti**, **Baku**, or **Abadan**).

Effect: If the Axis has no Oil Supply, all Axis HQ steps rise in cost by 5 PPs (cadres +10 PPs).

17.2 AXIS ORE SUPPLY

The **Axis Ore Supply** is a *Line of Communications* (10.22) between Berlin and **Gallivare** (Sweden).

Effect: If the Axis has no Ore Supply, Basic Production drops by 10 PPs.

The Axis **Ore SeaRoute** is a *Line of Communication* traceable between Berlin and **Gallivare** via **Narvik** and the *Northern Seaway* (the main delivery route for Swedish iron ore).

Effect: If the Ore SeaRoute is broken, the Axis loses 5 PPs of Basic Production.

17.3 SATELLITE RELEASE

Axis control of **Sevastopol** and **Odessa** allows the *release* of certain Axis **Satellite** (16.3) armies from restriction (but not eliminated and rebuilt units).

Effect: see Axis DEs 3R and XR.

Note: Soviet recapture of these cities once again restricts affected units. Restricted units outside allowed territory are unsupplied.

17.4 BALKAN PACIFICATION

The **Balkans** are defined as: Greece, Albania, Hungary, Rumania, Bulgaria, and Yugoslavia.

Balkan Pacification means that **all** six Balkan nations either:

- have *joined* the Axis, or
- are *controlled* by the Axis, or
- are *Cooperating* with the Axis.

Effect: Favorable Axis diplomatic events may result: 3R, XR, ME, and TX.

17.5 MARE NOSTRO

Axis control of **Gibraltar**, **Malta**, or **Suez** ensures secure Axis *sea lanes* to North Africa.

Effect: Axis MF Production is not subject to Shipping Losses.

Note: This rule does *not* apply under Allied **Naval Supremacy**.

17.6 MED FRONT CONTROL

The conditions below are evaluated each friendly Politics, and are reversible.

17.61 North Africa Victory

Control of all **six** (6) **major** ports in **North Africa** (Algiers, Tunis, Tripoli, Benghazi, Alexandria, Suez) provides sufficient **MF** control to overcome *Acclimatization* problems:

Effect: A player controlling all 6 major North African ports can ignore MF Acclimatization.

17.62 Desert Victory

Control of all **seven** (7) **major** ports in the **MF Desert Zone** (the above 6 plus Basra) provides sufficient control of the **MF** to overcome *Maintenance* problems:

Effect: A player controlling all 7 MF Desert Zone major ports can ignore Desert Maintenance.

17.63 Med Front Victory

Control of **all MF major** ports except SOUTH AFRICA (*Desert Victory* plus Karachi) signifies complete control of the *Med Front*, merging it into the *West Front* for that faction.

- Use **WF** PPs/Costs,
- Ignore all special **MF** rules (**MF-WF** Invasions/Paradrops, Axis Logistics, etc.).
- **SHQs** gain full **MF/WF** Cross-Command at 100% efficiency.

17.7 SPANISH VOLUNTEERS

Allied control of pro-Republican (red) cities in Axis **or** **Nationalist** Spain rallies Republican volunteers.

Result: The Allies can build Republican static cadres in controlled red cities of Nationalist or Axis-conquered Spain (at normal WF unit costs). One such unit can be built in each captured minor city and two in each Major City. These units are normal Allied units (not immune to supply attrition in red cities/towns), tracing supply to London, but restricted to Greater Spain and adjacent hexes.

The reverse applies equally if the Axis controls black (pro-Nationalist) cities in Republican **or** **Allied-conquered** Spain.

17.8 SOVIET OIL SUPPLY

If the Soviets lose **Baku** or *Rail/Sea Supply* to it, their HQ costs rise by 5 PPs/step (cadres 10 PPs).

There is also a penalty for the loss of the Soviet *Oil SeaRoute*. See 20.591.

Strategic Objective Evaluation

Example: If **MF Victory** has been awarded and then lost, the **MF Allocation** level reverts to the level prior to **MF Victory**, not to 15 PPs.)

Ploesti Oil

The “Achilles heel” of the Third Reich was petroleum. The Allies out-produced the Axis by almost 20:1 in oil. Ploesti’s oil provided about 40% of Germany’s supply (an equal amount was made chemically from coal).

After the Soviets overran Ploesti in September 1944, the Axis fuel situation deteriorated rapidly, affecting especially the Luftwaffe.

Swedish Iron

Swedish mines at Gallivare and Kiruna supplied about 30% of Germany’s iron ore, the bulk of which shipped from Narvik, Norway.

In early 1940, the British actively considered invading Norway, under the pretext of sending aid to Finland in its Winter War with the USSR. But Britain actually wanted to interdict iron shipments from Gallivare, the rich Swedish orefield just inland from Narvik.

Allied planners judged that depriving Germany of Swedish iron ore would be crippling to its war production, though recent studies have cast some doubt on this. Nevertheless, Hitler called Norway the “zone of destiny” and defended it heavily throughout the war.

Oil and Ore Supplies

Note that the oil / ore supply locations themselves need not be Axis controlled. Neutrality is sufficient.

Sevastopol and Odessa

Sevastopol, the main base for the Soviet Black Sea Fleet was reputedly the strongest fortress in the world. The threat of air or seaborne attack on the crucial Ploesti oilfields from there or Odessa tied down large Axis forces.

Mare Nostro

Mussolini’s “New Roman Empire” propaganda sought domination of the Mediterranean Sea as a renewed Mare Nostrum. Only the presence of the British Mediterranean Fleet prevented Italy’s large navy from achieving this goal.

Assuming France has fallen, Axis control of Gibraltar, Malta, or Suez would expel Allied naval forces from the western, central, or eastern Mediterranean, respectively, giving the Axis secure sea lanes to North Africa.

18.1 MAP EDGE AREAS

Along some map edges are the *Arctic*, *Eastern* and *Southern Zones*, which contain abstracted off-map *Areas*, either:

Districts [circles]: small *areas* about 2 hexes in diameter; OR

Regions [squares]: large *areas* about 4-6 hexes in diameter.

Regions and *Districts* differ mainly regarding *Supply*: supply lines into/through *Districts* are affected by the presence of enemy units (i.e., *engagement*), while those in larger *Regions* are not (see 18.5).

Areas have terrain, which affects stacking, combat and supply as for hexes. It does not affect movement.

18.11 Area Control

As with hexes, *Areas* change control only upon undisputed enemy occupation. The *Original Defender* retains control of engaged *areas*. Nations initially control all *areas* within *home territory*.

18.12 Area Stacking

Stacking varies with Area terrain the same as hexes.

18.2 AREA COMMAND

18.21 HQ Movement

Activation. HQs **cannot** deploy along a Route (too far, see 18.31).

Deactivation. HQs **can** mobilize along *Short Routes* by 1 *March* (see 18.33). SHQ/THQs can also mobilize along *Rail Routes* by *Rail* (18.33).

HQs **can** enter engaged *areas* (unlike for hexes), either under the command of another HQ or when *mobilizing* (but cannot attack alone).

18.22 HQ Command Range

Command Range along *Routes* is measured by equivalent hex distances.

Example: An HQ III can exert command 2 hexes along a *Short Route*, plus 1 hex further on-map.

18.23 HQ Air Range

Air Range is calculated as for 18.22.

18.3 AREA MOVEMENT

18.31 Routes

Rail (red) and **Road Routes** (brown) are dotted lines connecting off-map *Areas* to each other or to on-map hexes.

Short Routes (thin dotted lines) are considered 2 hexes long for the purposes

of tracing *Command Range* and *Air Range*.

Long Routes (thicker dotted lines) are counted as 5 hexes long.

Straits between areas are 1 hex long.

18.32 Rail Routes

Rail Movement is the fastest and cheapest method of movement between friendly areas along a *Rail Route*.

Short Rail Routes are two (2) rail hexes long. **Long Rail Routes** are five (5) rail hexes long.

Rail Moves involving both hexes and routes **can** be freely combined using *Route* distances as above. Linking such rail moves is allowed.

18.33 Road Routes

A unit moving along a *Road Route* (or engaging by *Rail Route*) moves by **Marches** only. Units can make one *March* or *DoubleMarch* per turn.

18.331 Marches

Any unit can **March** along a **Short Route**, regardless of its speed, weather, or terrain. **Marches can be commanded by normal HQ command or by SHQ/THQ command (cost 1 Supreme Move).**

Any unit can **DoubleMarch** along a **Long Route**, regardless of its speed, weather, or terrain. **DoubleMarches** can be commanded by SHQ/THQs **only** (2 *Supreme Moves* per *DoubleMarch*).

Marches have no on-map movement.

18.34 Sea Movement/Invasion

Units can *Sea Move* between **friendly** Areas with Ports (but see 18.35 regarding engagement) by normal *Sea Movement*.

Sea Invasions can **only** be made into Areas with Ports (NOTE: *mountain/marsh terrain do not prohibit this*). Remember: **THQs cannot command Sea Invasions.**

18.35 Engaged Areas

Ports and *Rail Lines* in **Districts** (small areas) **are** affected by engagement just like hexes: **no Sea or Rail Movement is allowed into them (and Ports are besieged).**

However, for the *Original Defender*, use of *Ports* and *Rail Lines* in engaged **Regions** (large areas) is **not affected**. The *Original Defender* (**only**) can move units in and out of engaged *Regions* by *Rail* or *Sea Movement*, and can even **rail right through** engaged **friendly Regions**.

Units can only enter *enemy controlled* areas by *Marches* (18.311), never by strategic *Sea* or *Rail Movement*.

Districts

Districts are small offmap areas shown as circles. They function much like hexes except rail movement is allowed into friendly battles. Sea movement is not because the Ports are considered to be besieged

Regions

Regions are much larger offmap areas, shown as squares. They are large enough that engagement by enemy forces is not considered to affect the rail net or ports. Rail Movement is still allowed into or through the Region. Sea Movement is allowed into friendly battles.

Tracing Air/Command Range by Sea

When tracing *Air/Command Range* over a combination of Routes and Sea hexes, consider any area bordering a sea hex to be one hex further away.

Example: Bremanger is 4 hexes from the Shetlands (3 North Sea hexes plus 1 hex further). Thus Alesund is 6, Andalsnes 8, Dombas 10 and Trondheim 12 hexes from the Shetlands (via 2-hex Short Routes).

Air/Command Range is NOT traceable over sea areas that are not covered with hexes (e.g., the Norwegian Sea).

Counting Area Movement

There is NO additional movement cost for entering an Area. The movement cost is for traversing the Route only.

Example: II cv THQ Dietl in Petsamo can support combat in Murmansk (with an *Airstrike!*) in Dry weather.

Engaging Enemy Areas

Units entering an enemy controlled area cannot use *Rail Movement*. Therefore units engaging enemy areas must move by *March*, even along *Rail Routes*.

A *March* along a *Short Route* costs 1 *Supreme Move*. A *DoubleMarch* along a *Long Route* costs 2 *Supreme Moves*.

Movement along *Road Routes* always requires *Marches*.

18.36 Disengagement

Units can **disengage** by *March* or by *Strategic Movement*, but must **Retreat** by *March* (*Pursuit* applies).

Units must **disengage** into *friendly* hexes/areas, including re-engagement into *friendly* battle areas.

18.37 Engagement Limit

The **engagement limit** is **two** (2) units per *Route*, regardless of route type, terrain or weather.

18.38 Sea Invasion

Coastal areas **containing ports** can be *Sea Invaded* (15.5) in the same way as coastal hexes, except that (unlike hexes) area terrain (e.g. mountains) does not prohibit *Sea Invasion*. Areas without ports, however, **cannot** be sea invaded.

18.39 Paradrops

Paradrops are **NOT** permitted into off-map Areas.

18.4 AREA COMBAT

Combat within areas is **always optional** except that [river/ sea/ air] *Assaults* **must** be fought that turn.

Original Attacker forces **always** remain revealed, whether or not combat is to occur (unactivated HQs of the *Original Attacker* remain upright, but can be inspected by the opponent). Defending units are revealed **only** during combat.

Area terrain and weather apply normally regarding combat.

18.5 AREA SUPPLY

A major difference between *Districts* and *Regions* is the treatment of **engaged** ports and rail lines within them.

18.51 Region Supply

The *Original Defender* of an engaged **Region** (large area) retains **full use** of its rail lines, roads, and ports. If a port is present, *Sea Supply* (not *Siege Supply*) applies. *Rail Movement*, *Rail Supply*, and *Road Supply* can pass into **or through** friendly *Regions* **even when engaged**.

Original Attackers can trace *Rail* or *Road Supply* into (but **not through**) an engaged *Region*.

18.52 District Supply

Districts (small areas) follow the same supply rules as hexes: *Rail Supply* terminates in engaged *Districts* (i.e., cannot be traced **through** them), *Rail Movement* must stop there, and ports are

besieged (*Siege Supply* applies). **Both** sides can trace *Rail/Road Supply* **into** (but not through) engaged *Districts*.

18.6 AREA PRODUCTION**18.61 Area PPs**

Area PPs follow the same rules as for hexes. *Rail/Sea Supply* is necessary to produce PPs.

18.62 Area Unit Costs

Units occupying areas are rebuilt using normal rebuilding costs.

Engaged Unit Rebuilding: Because opposing units in the same area are not necessarily close, they **can** be built up during Production, but using **double** normal costs. *Cadres* can also be rebuilt in engaged *arrival* areas at **double** cost. This applies to units of both *Original Defender* and *Original Attacker* (must be supplied).

18.63 Arrival Locations

New units (rebuilt *cadres* and arriving *reinforcements*) can arrive in qualified friendly areas.

SOVIET/AXIS units: *home* areas.

ALLIED units: friendly-controlled areas containing a **major port**.

19.1 VICTORY

Players can score a 'sudden-death' *Victory* at any time. Otherwise, *Victory* is determined at the end of **May/45**.

The **1944** Scenario (only) uses Victory Conditions in **19.5**.

19.2 AXIS VICTORY

Note: for Victory calculation purposes, use full 'wartime' Production (i.e., not divided by 3) even for powers that are not belligerent (e.g. Soviet Union).

19.21 Axis Decisive

If, during **any** Production, the Axis PP total is at least **twice** the total of Allied/Soviet Production, the Axis immediately wins a Decisive Victory (game ends).

19.22 Axis Major

At the end of May 1945, Axis Production exceeds combined Allied/Soviet Production.

19.23 Axis Minor

At the end of May 1945, Axis Production totals at least **three-quarters** of combined Allied/ Soviet Production.

19.24 Axis Marginal

At the end of May 1945, Axis Production totals at least **two-thirds** of combined Allied/ Soviet Production.

19.3 ALLIED VICTORY

19.31 Allied Decisive

Allies/ Soviets control **Berlin** by the end of **W'43** (May/44).

19.32 Allied Major

Allies/ Soviets control **Berlin** by the end of **S'44** (November/44).

19.33 Allied Minor

Allies/ Soviets control **Berlin** by the end of **W'44** (May/45).

19.34 Allied Marginal

Allied/Soviet Production totals at least **triple** total Axis Production at the end of May 1945.

19.4 DRAW

If none of the above results are achieved, the game is a **Draw**.

19.5 THE STRUGGLE FOR EUROPE (1944)

Starting so late in the war, the **1944** Scenario employs special victory conditions using **Victory Cities**.

There are **21** *Victory Cities* in the game, shown on the map as black squares (**Berlin** counts **double**).

The Axis and Allies/Soviets try to control as many *Victory Cities* as possible by June 1945.

To determine Victory, **double** the Axis *Victory City* total at the end of May 1945 and compare this to the Allied/Soviet total.

Neutral *Victory Cities* do not count for either side.

Victory Cities must in in Rail/Sea Supply to be counted.

19.51 3-Way 1944 Game

The **1944** Scenario can also be played as a **3-way Game**, with the Soviets played separately, not as part of the Allied "team."

In this case, the Allies, Germans **and** **Soviets** all vie for control of *Victory Cities* at the end of May '45.

Other game rules are unaffected, notably:

- Allied and Soviet units cannot occupy the same hex (and hence cannot fight each other).
- Allied and Soviet units **can** pass through each other's territory but hex control is not affected (neither can take control of a hex controlled by the other).

At the end of W'44 (May/45), the player (Allied/Soviet/Axis) with the most *Victory Cities* wins.

NOTE: Although the Axis must still be severely weakened for either the Allies or Soviets to win, 1944 will play out quite differently as the Allies and Soviets maneuver for postwar advantage!

Victory Conditions

The Axis Victory conditions are based on attaining a defensible and economically viable empire (one that is capable of matching Allied industrial power in the long run), not upon Nazi survival into 1945 or some variation on a slow death.

The Allied Victory Conditions are based upon the total destruction of the Nazi empire within the historical time frame. Allied planners worried that further continuation of the war might result in Allied and Soviet manpower shortages, and deterioration in the strategic balance due to the introduction of advanced German weaponry such as the Me262 jet fighter and the type XXI U-boat.

Axis Decisive Victory (200%+)

This Victory Level typically requires the defeat of Britain or the USSR.

Axis Major Victory (100%+)

Axis Major Victory requires the Axis to control non-neutral continental Europe, the Ukraine, and the Mid East (or an economic equivalent: ± 145 PPs) into Summer 1945.

Axis Minor Victory 75%+

Axis Minor Victory requires the Axis to control non-neutral continental Europe plus some of the Ukraine (or an economic equivalent: ± 125 PPs) into Summer 1945.

Axis Marginal Victory (66.7%+)

Axis Marginal Victory requires the Axis to hold all continental Europe (or the economic equivalent: ± 115 PPs) into Summer 1945.

Draw (33.3%+)

The Axis must retain its core territory (Rhine-Alps-Vienna-Vistula) or economic equivalent (± 75 PPs) into Summer 1945.

3-Way Game Victory Examples

1) The Axis can win the 1944 3-Way Game by holding a perimeter into Summer 1945 that includes Germany, Copenhagen, Oslo, Prague, and Amsterdam. This would give them 9 *Victory Cities*, leaving 10 for the Soviets and Allies to share.

2) Historically the Soviets won the 3-Way Game, capturing **10** *Victory cities*: Bucharest, Sofia, Belgrade, Budapest, **Konigsberg**, Warsaw, Vienna, Prague, and Berlin (2).

The Allies captured 8 *Victory Cities*: Rome, Milan, Paris, Athens, Amsterdam, the Ruhr, Hamburg, and Munich.

The Axis retained none (Copenhagen was Axis controlled but is not counted due to lack of Rail/Sea Supply with Berlin lost).

Istanbul, **Madrid**, and Stockholm remained neutral.

20.1 GERMANY

Germany is the Axis *great power*. Germany includes East Prussia and Austria, and controls Czechoslovakia.

Danzig and West Poland are annexed to Germany upon DE PW (Phony War).

20.11 German Forces

German units have *gray* labels (SS labels are *black*). **Med Front** units have by **orange** circles on the label; **North Front** units have **blue** circles.

Med Front Veterans have “V” inside an orange circle. These units can operate in the *Med Front* without penalty (but are not restricted to it).

Important: no German units are allowed in Egypt before the Afrika HQ arrives.

The DAK unit is elite armor only within the **MF**. Outside the **MF**, it is a normal armor unit.

Med Front Expeditions have “E” inside an orange circle. These units can operate in the *Med Front* without penalty under certain conditions (see *Tunis/Istanbul Basing* 21.385).

North Front Veterans have “V” inside an blue circle. These units have reduced *acclimatization* on entry into the *North Front* and can operate in the *Arctic Zone* without penalty.

The Dietl THQ can provide combat support within the NF.

20.12 Command and Supply

German units can be commanded by German or Italian HQs.

Berlin is the German capital. It is also the *Axis Supply Origin* (10.2) **provided** it can trace rail/sea supply to another friendly *Victory City* (black numbered square).

20.13 Unit Restrictions

2.131 Cooperating Neutrals

Axis forces can *pass through* the territory of a *Cooperating neutral* by **Rail Movement** (only), but cannot remain without a prior *Declaration of War* (see 16.4 & 20.17).

20.132 Occupation Limits

Axis Minors. No more than **four** (4) German (or other foreign Axis) units can be inside the territory of an Axis minor unless Allied/ Soviet units have **entered** its territory (as *currently* defined).

Exceeding *Occupation Limits* requires a *Declaration of War* upon the Axis minor

(see *Betrayal*, 20.17).

Italy. The *Occupation Limit* (4 units) also applies to *Italy Proper* (20.2) unless Italy is *demoralized* (16.71).

20.14 The Molotov Pact

Entry of non-national Axis units into the **Baltic States**, **Turkey**, **Persia** or **Finland** (unless **FL/FX** is in effect), constitutes a *Declaration of War* on the USSR.

Axis units can enter *Eastern Poland* (east of the *Curzon Line*, see sidebar), but must exit **all** units during the month of **Polish Partition** [Allied DE **PP**]. Failure to do so constitutes a *Declaration of War* on the USSR.

20.15 Axis-Soviet Borders

During Soviet neutrality, the Axis should occupy all hexes that border the annexed Soviet territories of *East Poland*, the *Baltic States* and *Bessarabia*. Failure to do so risks their loss (see 16.42 *Axis-Soviet Border Disputes*).

20.16 Axis Surprise

When the Axis *Declares War* upon a neutral, it is **Surprised** for that *fortnight*.

- Surprised HQs are *disrupted*.
- **Assaults** (7.6) within the territory of a surprised nation cannot be *Repulsed* (ignore *Repulse* results). *Note: fortified ports* (1.44) cannot be *Surprised*.
- *Sea Interdiction* (15.7) is **nullified** in seas controlled by *Surprised* nations.

If **Axis Betrayal** (20.17) occurs, *Axis Surprise* effects are canceled in future.

20.17 Axis Betrayal

An *Axis Declaration of War* upon a *pro-Axis Neutral* (see OB Cards), *Cooperating neutral* or *Axis minor power* (e.g., violating *Occupation Limits*) constitutes **Betrayal**.

In the future, **no** further *pro-Axis Alliance Reactions* can occur and +1 is added to all *Diplomatic Event* die rolls (see 16.41 for details).

20.18 Winter Paralysis

During the first Winter season that the *East Front* is active, the Axis suffers serious disadvantages (see 12.45).

20.19 Axis Production

Prior to activation of the *East Front* (21.22) or *Med Front* (21.32) all Axis PPs are considered *West Front* Production. After activation, Axis Production on these other *fronts* is segregated (see 11.5).

The Curzon Line

The **Curzon Line** is the 1941 German/Soviet border, comprising the E/W Poland division **plus** the E Prussia-Baltic States border.

Note: Swalki (originally part of Poland) is west of the Curzon Line.

Danzig & West Poland

Once Poland is defeated, Axis DE PW (Phony War) can *annex* *Danzig* and *West Poland* (that part west of the *Curzon Line*) effectively incorporating them into Germany.

German WF Infantry

German **WF** infantry corps are generally divided into two units, one being a static component. As a result, their infantry components are now limited to 3 cv.

Med Front / North Front Units

MF Veterans

Afrika HQ
DAK Armor Corps
LtAfr Mech Corps
2 Para Static Corps

MF Expeditions [Tunis/Istanbul Basing]

AG ‘G’ HQ
South Armor Corps
90 Infantry Corps
90 Static Corps

NF Veterans

Dietl THQ
18 Mountain Corps
36 Mountain Corps
33 Infantry Corps
33 Static Corps
19 Infantry Corps
19 Static Corps
70 Static Corps
71 Fort Corps

Axis Occupation Limits

Most Axis minor powers resisted the large scale stationing of German forces on their soil, rightly fearful for their independence. Mussolini refused to allow German forces in Libya until after the disaster at Bada Fomm, and resisted major deployments in Italy itself until Tunis had fallen.

The Molotov Pact

The Molotov Pact, signed in August 1939, secretly mandated German and Soviet spheres of influence in Eastern Europe. Finland, Bessarabia, the Baltic States, and Poland east of the *Curzon Line* (the 1941 German-Soviet border in Poland) were assigned to the Soviets. Germany was assigned the remainder of Central Europe, including Western Poland.

Axis Surprise

The Nazis gained considerable military advantages from their unscrupulous policy of attacking neutrals without an advance *Declaration of War*. The Allies (and Soviets) never receive *Surprise* benefits.

20.2 ITALY

Italy is an Axis *major power*. It includes **Sicily and Sardinia**, and controls Albania, Libya, Rhodes, and ETHIOPIA (which contains a *base*).

Italy Proper is composed of mainland Italy, Sicily and Sardinia.

Greater Italy is composed of: *Italy Proper*, Albania, Yugoslavia, Greece, the entire *Med Front*, and **all Mediterranean Basin** islands. Italian units are commonly restricted to *Greater Italy* and adjacent hexes.

20.21 Italian Forces

Italian units have **yellow** labels with green centers. **Med Front** units have **orange** circles on their labels. The **East Front** unit has a **red** circle.

MF Residents have “R” inside an orange circle. They operate in the *Med Front* without penalty, but cannot leave it (*restricted* to the **MF**).

EF/MF Expedition. The Italian **8I** infantry has “E” inside its red circle. This unit can operate in the **EF** if *released* by Axis Diplomatic Event **XR**. It can also operate in the **MF** without *Maintenance* penalty if *Tunis Based* (see **21.385**).

20.22 Belligerence

Italy can become belligerent by *Declaration of War* or *Alliance Reaction*, but most often does so by Axis Diplomatic Event **IX** (which is a **mandatory** DE for the Axis if France is *defeated* and Italy is *not belligerent*).

Setup: Upon *belligerence*, the **1EA** static unit starts in **Ethiopia**, the **3 MF Residents** start one per **Libyan port**, and the *Lib* mech unit arrives in Tripoli the next Production.

Other Italian units are initially deployed in **Italy Proper** and **Albania**, at least one unit in each Italian *major* city and Albania.

Peacetime Production: Upon belligerence, *supplied* Italian units can be built up with *Peacetime Production* (see **16.32**). **MF Residents** may be increased at **double Extreme** Costs. The Ethiopian static 1EA is not supplied (see **10.71**) and cannot be built up with *Peacetime Production*.

The *Med Front* is activated by Italian belligerence. In the next Production phase, both sides make their initial MF PP Allocations (see **21.37**).

20.23 Unit Restriction

Italian **MF Residents** are *Restricted* to the *Med Front*.

If Italy becomes belligerent by Diplomatic Event **IX** (as is usual), **like all Satellites (16.311)** its other forces are *restricted*: in Italy's case to *Greater Italy* and adjacent hexes. Some or all *restricted* units may be *released* from restriction by Axis Diplomatic Events **XR** and **IU**.

20.24 Command & Supply

German HQs can command Italian units, and vice-versa.

National Supply. Italian units trace supply to **Rome**, which must then trace *National Supply* to **Berlin** (see **10.2**).

20.25 Italian Surrender

Provided Italy is an Axis *Satellite*, it is *demoralized* (**16.71**) by Allied control of **Sicily, Sardinia, Libya, Albania** or any Italian major city. Once *demoralized*, it can **Surrender** once the Allies control any port in *Italy Proper* (**16.8**).

20.26 Italian Defeat

Upon Italian *defeat* (see **16.9**), all seas in the *Mediterranean Basin* (see **15.1**) become Allied controlled, **regardless** of *naval base* ownership.

Greater Italy

The full extent of Mussolini's ambition for Italy included all the territories listed plus Ethiopia. Mussolini liked to call this fictional creation the “New Roman Empire”, but he proved himself an unworthy Caesar.

Italian Belligerence & Naval Parity

When Italy joins the Axis, the Ionian and Central Mediterranean seas become Axis controlled, blocking the Mediterranean Seaway for the Allies.

If the Axis has secured a Northern Seaway by conquering Denmark and Norway, Allied Naval Supremacy ends and Naval Parity begins.

Med Front Units

MF Residents

CS THQ
10 Infantry Army
Libya Colonial Army
1 EAfrica Colonial Army (Ethiopia)
20 Mech Corps [reinforcement]

MF Expeditions

8 Infantry Army

Italian Restriction

Italy's agenda in WW2 involved a renewed empire in the Mediterranean and Balkans. Mussolini wanted no part of a major land war in Europe.

For political reasons, Mussolini refused repeatedly to countenance loss of Libyan territory even if military disaster loomed. Requiring Italian Med Front forces to defend North Africa to the death simulates this political imperative.

Italian Surrender

As the tide of war approached, Italy began to doubt the wisdom of continuing the struggle by serving as a battleground for the defense of the Reich. Secret talks undertaken with the Allies led to Italy's surrender even as Allied landing craft approached Salerno Bay.

However, Hitler anticipated this development and deployed sizeable German forces into Italy. Most Italian forces were easily disarmed, although several units resisted and paid dearly (officers were shot).

Control of Sicily and Sardinia

Control of either island is defined as control of all its hexes.

20.3 BRITAIN/U.S.

Britain/US is the Allied *great power*. Britain and the U.S. are considered **one nationality** for game purposes.

Britain controls Gibraltar, Malta, Cyprus, Egypt, Palestine, Arabia, Sudan, Somaliland, Aden, Kenya, Afghanistan, India, South Africa and *bases* in Iraq and Persia (21.397).

20.31 British/US Forces

British forces have *tan* labels. Canadian forces have blue centers and Polish forces red centers. US forces have *olive* labels, Free French with dark blue centers. All these units are functionally equal. **Med Front** units have **orange** circles on the label, **North Front** units have **blue** circles.

North Front Expeditions have “E” inside a blue circle.

- the 3 **NF Brigade Groups** (NExp, HA & TA) are *restricted* to the **NF** and Britain, and may enter the **NF** with reduced *Acclimatization* (21.441) and operate in the *Arctic Zone* without *Maintenance* (see 21.461) after Allied DE **FR**.

- The Canadian Mech units are not *restricted*, but only gain the above **NF** privileges after Allied DE **2F**.

Med Front Residents have “R” inside an orange circle. These units can operate in the *Med Front* without *Maintenance* but cannot leave it (*restricted*).

The 3 **MF Resident Brigade Groups** (HabF, PalF, and IndF) must set up in separate *Mid-East Mandate* ports or *bases*, (or see Setup cards for Historical game).

The other 2 **MF Residents** set up in separate Egyptian ports.

Med Front Veterans have “V” inside an orange circle. These units can operate in the **MF** without penalty (no *Maintenance*) but are subject to *Acclimatization* upon initial entry (see 21.351). They are **not restricted** to the **MF** but **must re-acclimatize** if they leave and re-enter (**change**).

Med Front Expeditions have “E” inside the orange circle. These units can operate in the **MF** without penalty (no *Desert Maintenance*) only if **Morocco Based** (see 21.382).

Garrisons (static units) are *restricted* to Britain, Gibraltar, and Malta (units in the latter 2 fortresses are subject to special rules before the **MF** “*opens*”, see 21.315 and 21.32). Two Home Guard *garrison* units arrive following French *defeat*.

20.32 US Belligerence

In Dec. 1941, the USA joins the Allies. US forces function as British units: **no** distinction is made regarding command, supply, production, etc.

20.33 Command & Supply

British/US HQs can command the movement of British/US forces **only** (**exception**: Allied SHQs can move Allied *minor units*, see 5.34).

London is the Allied *Supply Origin*, provided it can trace rail/sea supply to the Atlantic Ocean.

Chamberlain: The Allies cannot *Declare War* before **W’39**, nor during the *Phony War* (except: *Norway*, see DE **NX**).

20.34 Unit Restrictions

Med Front: Until the *Med Front* opens (Italian *belligerence*), only **MF Residents** can occupy the *Med Front*, and only the *Fortress Garrisons* can occupy Malta/Gibraltar.

French Colonies: While France is *undefeated*, British forces cannot enter *French North Africa* (FNA), unless Axis units have entered first.

Red Army: Allied units (blue blocks) cannot enter a hex containing Soviet units (red blocks).

NOTE: Allied / Soviet territory is common for command, supply, and movement purposes. Units can enter hexes controlled (but not occupied) by the other, but this never alters its ownership for PP purposes.

20.35 Full Motorization

British/US infantry and amphibious units are *fully motorized*, moving 3 hexes in *Dry* weather.

20.36 Allied Betrayal

Allied (**not** Soviet) *Declarations of War* upon neutrals normally constitute **Betrayal** (see 16.41): all future pro-Allied *Alliance Reactions* are cancelled, and +1 is added to all future Allied (**but not Soviet!**) *Diplomatic Event* die rolls (making success less likely).

Exceptions: the following Allied **DoWs** are **not** considered **Betrayal** if the conditions specified below are in effect:

- **DoW on Norway**: DE **NX** in effect.
- **DoW on a ME Mandate** (20.92): DE **ME** has occurred.
- **DoW on a Cooperating Axis Minor**: DE **2F** in effect.

Commonwealth Forces

While British soldiers were respected by the Germans for their defensive staunchness, Commonwealth troops were well regarded for their attacking prowess.

There was great selflessness in the submission of Commonwealth forces to British command, despite serious differences in strategic outlook and style.

The US Army

The strengths of the US Army were logistics, firepower, and organization, with artillery, air, and logistical support on a level unapproached by any other army.

Common language aside, the outstanding level of cooperation achieved with Britain was due in no small part to Eisenhower, and also to the personal qualities of the British commanders.

Med Front Units

MF Residents (British)

ME THQ
WDF Mech Corps
PalF Infantry *BrigadeGroup*
HabF Mech *BrigadeGroup*
IndF Infantry *BrigadeGroup*
ANZ Infantry Corps [reinforcement]

MF Veterans (British)

21 AG HQ
13 Mech Corps
10 Infantry Corps
30 Armor Corps

MF Expeditions

AF SHQ [British]
15 AG HQ [British]
5 Infantry Corps [British]
2 Para Corps [British]
SHAEF US SHQ
2 US Amphib Corps
6 US Amphib Corps

North Front Units

NF Expeditions

*NExp Infantry *BrGroup* [after **FR**]
*HA Static *BrGroup* [after **FR**]
*TA Static *BrGroup* [after **FR**]
1 Cdn Mech Corps [after **2F**]
2 Cdn Mech Corps [after **2F**]

* *Restricted to Britain / NF*

Britain Stands Alone

Once France is defeated, the Allies must walk a very fine line to successfully defend both Britain and the Mid East. They have very limited offensive potential until the US enters the war, and even then the buildup is excruciatingly slow.

20.4 FRANCE

France is an Allied *major power*. It includes Corsica and controls *French North Africa* (Tunis, Algeria, Morocco, W. Africa).

If France is *defeated*, **Vichy (20.48)** or **Free France (20.49)** comes into being. These **successor states** can use surviving French units, but follow distinct rules.

French North Africa (FNA): Control of a *Colonial Capital* confers control over its territory (but *Conquest* applies, **16.92**).

FNA Colony	Capital
Morocco	Casablanca
Algeria	Algiers
Tunisia	Tunisia

Upon French *defeat* (**20.47**) control of **FNA** capitals passes to the Allies, Axis, or Vichy depending on how *defeat* occurs.

20.41 French Forces

French **WF** units have *purple/red* labels. They are *restricted* (**16.311**) to **France, Belgium** and nations adjacent to them. At least one unit (**HQs are units!**) must start in each French major city. Eliminated French units can be rebuilt in any French *major* city.

French Army Artillery: French infantry units, due to their size (armies) and strong artillery, have **DF defensive** firepower. Offensive firepower remains SF.

Sedan Appendix: One French unit can occupy the Phillippeville/ Sedan hex of neutral Belgium. This unit **is** subject to Belgian *Surprise*.

Maginot Line: The 3 French fort units must be deployed in Metz, Strasbourg, and Mulhouse *and cannot be moved*. They lose **all** special fort unit abilities (*including survival at 1cv*) while *unsupplied*.

MF Residents: French units with orange circles containing "R" on the labels. They are *restricted* to the *Med Front*, but exempt from *Desert Maintenance*. They are initially deployed in or adjacent to **FNA** ports, at least one unit per colony.

20.42 Command & Supply

Command Coordination: French HQs can only **move** French units, not British units (**GQG SHQ** can also move Allied *minor* units, see **5.34**). They can provide *combat support* any Allied unit.

Gamelin: during the fortnight of **Belgian Surprise (20.16)**, Allied HQs in **France** cannot **Blitz** (are **NOT** *disrupted*).

National Supply: French *National Supply* (**10.2**) traces **Paris** to **London**.

20.43 Phony War

The Axis **Peace Offer** DE (following Polish *defeat*) begins the **Phony War**. During *Phony War*, the ALLIES can neither *Declare War* nor build more than 1 **French** cv/month.

Phony War ends upon AXIS entry into **France/Belgium/Holland**, ALLIED control of a **City/Resource** hex within Germany, or **Soviet Emergency** (DE **SE**).

20.44 French Morale

France is **demoralized** (Axis **POLITICS**) when Poland is *defeated* and the AXIS controls a French/Belgian major city, OR *Maginot Line* hex.

Effect: All French HQs are permanently **disrupted**, its infantry reverts to **SF/SF** (the Artillery effect is lost), and **Allied Solidarity** (below) must be checked.

20.45 Allied Solidarity

Once France is *demoralized*, **Allied Solidarity** is checked in **that and** each subsequent **Axis** **POLITICS** phase.

Solidarity is based on the size of the *British Expeditionary Force (BEF)*: defined as the number of British units in (or eliminated in) **France/Belgium**, with units in/adjacent to Belgium or Axis controlled hexes in France counting **double**.

Procedure: During **Axis** **POLITICS**, the Axis player announces "solidarity check"; the Allies state **BEF** size. The Axis rolls one die: if the result is *greater than or equal* to the **BEF**, *Solidarity* fails.

On the **first** failure, the *Pétain Regime* takes over France. If it fails a **second** time, France **must** offer *Armistice* in the next Allied **POLITICS**.

20.46 French Armistice

Once per game, the Allies can offer **French Armistice** during Allied **POLITICS**, seeking negotiated peace in France (may be forced, see above).

The Axis must *immediately* either **accept** or **reject** *Armistice*.

Acceptance: France is *defeated* -- all units are eliminated, and a new **neutral** nation, **Vichy**, is created from part of France (see **20.48**). The rest, **Occupied France**, becomes Axis upon **Conquest** (see **16.92**).

Rejection: France is *defeated* and **Free France** is created (see **20.49**). *Anglo-French Union* is declared, and all remaining French units convert to *Free French*.

The Maginot Line

The location of the Maginot Line fortifications was well known before the war. Unlike several German-held fortifications in the war, which survived isolation for lengthy periods, the Maginot Line surrendered once surrounded.

French Artillery

French infantry units in EuF are **armies**, not corps. Larger than other armies in the game (e.g., Italian, Soviet, minor power), with excellent artillery, they were considered the equal of any in Europe. Defensively minded and slow, in practice they proved vulnerable to *Blitzkrieg*. Accordingly, they are represented as 4cv units with DF defensive firepower.

Phony War

Grievously damaged in WWI, France went reluctantly to war over Poland, opposing aggressive Allied action in hopes Germany would remain defensive in the West. When Hitler followed his quick Polish victory with an offer to quit hostilities based on accepting Poland's extinction, many French saw nothing to gain (and much to lose) by continuing the struggle. As a result, the French Army improved little if any over that winter.

Allied Solidarity Example

Brussels is captured by the Axis during May I, 1940. During **Axis** **POLITICS**, the French become *Demoralized*. In Allied **POLITICS**, Allied *Solidarity* must be checked.

Example: 1 British unit was killed in France (1), 2 are in Belgium (4), and one is in France, NOT adjacent to Axis-controlled hexes (1). Allied *Solidarity* = 6. so *Solidarity* fails on "6".

French Armistice

As French *National Supply* becomes untenable, failure to offer *Armistice* risks the loss of FNA as well as France. Once *National Supply* is lost, all French units (including **MF**) begin dying of attrition. After the last unit dies, France is *Defeated* in the next **Axis** **POLITICS** phase, allowing the Allies an opportunity to *Sea Invade* into FNA ports (now Axis controlled) before the Axis can occupy them (by *Sea Movement*) in their ensuing turn. A struggle for FNA will likely follow.

Accepting *Armistice* eliminates the French army at once, but guarantees a *Vichy*-defended "soft spot" for later Allied invasion in French North Africa. It also complicates the process of Spain Joins the Axis (as *Vichy* must be *Betrayed*).

Rejection means that French troops become *Free French* (effectively British troops), and can be evacuated to North Africa or Britain by sea. This usually means a stronger Allied presence in North Africa, though Spanish involvement, which becomes more possible, may offset this.

20.47 French Defeat

France is *defeated* once *Armistice* is either accepted or rejected (with *Vichy* or *Free France*, respectively, becoming its successor state). It is also *defeated* if the *Capital* and all units are lost (see **16.92**).

Upon **French defeat**:

- (Italy *neutral*) DE **IX** (*Italy Joins Axis*) is **mandatory** for the Axis next Diplomacy phase.
- British units can now enter **FNA**.
- The two (2) British *Home Guard* units arrive next PRODUCTION.
- Use the second figure in each cell of the **Alliance Reaction** table.
- Axis DE **RB** becomes possible.
- *Occupied France* (see below) can *Revolt* (**16.73**) once *exploited*.

Arab Nationalism: If France is *defeated* (**16.9**) without an *Armistice* offer, all **FNA** colonies immediately become **Axis** controlled, except where Allied units/ZOCs are located.

20.48 Vichy

If *Armistice* is **accepted**, **Vichy** is created from part of France. Vichy is initially a **neutral** minor power (capital *Lyon*), *Cooperating* with the Axis (see **16.2**). As long as Vichy remains neutral, controlled seas (Gulf of Lyon, West Mediterranean, and Tyrrhenian Sea) also remain *neutral*.

20.481 Vichy Territory

Vichy territory is shown on the map, and also includes *Corsica*. Vichy retains control of **French North Africa** (Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, & W. Africa).

Withdrawal: Upon *Armistice*, all Axis & Allied units within **Vichy** territory must immediately *Withdraw* (**16.721**) to a controlled hex bordering Vichy territory (no command needed and unit speed is irrelevant). Subsequent entry into Vichy territory requires a *Declaration of War*.

Occupied France: The remainder of France (*aside from Vichy territory*). Control is not affected by *French defeat*.

20.482 Vichy Cooperation

As a *Cooperating* neutral (**16.2**), Vichy's production (**4 PPs** with Tunis) is included into Axis **WF** Production.

Axis forces can move or trace supply through Vichy territory **by rail only** (cannot use ports). They **cannot** remain within Vichy territory without a prior *Declaration of War* (and this would constitute **Betrayal**).

20.483 Vichy Forces

As a *Cooperating* neutral, Vichy forces are *stood upright* on the **Pro-Axis Minor** OB card to show that they are buildable but **not** eligible for *Peacetime Production* (*Vichy PPs are ceded* to the Axis).

20.484 Vichy Belligerence

If the **ALLIES** *Declare War* on Vichy, it joins the **AXIS** (use **black block** Vichy units). The *Med Front Residents* set up in/adjacent to **FNA** ports, at least 1 unit/**FNA** Colony (see **20.4**). The other 2 units set up in European Vichy territory.

If the **AXIS** *Declares War* on Vichy, Vichy joins the **ALLIES** as **Free French** (see **20.49**). Its units (**blue block** Vichy units) set up as above.

NOTE: An Axis DoW on Vichy is Betrayal, and also puts France in Revolt (see 16.731).

Vichy can also join the **ALLIES** via Allied DE **VF** if the Allies successfully invade *Occupied France* (setup as above).

20.485 Vichy National Supply

The Vichy capital, **Lyon**, must trace *National Supply* (**10.2**) normally.

A **FNA** colonial capital (**20.4**) can also act as *national capital* for Vichy **MF Residents** (only), provided it can trace *National Supply* (eg, via Spain).

20.486 Demoralization

Vichy becomes *demoralized* if **Libya** is Allied controlled or the Allied **2F** DE occurs (see **16.71**).

Ambivalence (16.711): *Demoralized* Vichy units only *Repulse* Allied *Assaults* on a DR of '1' (see **7.61**). They can also *Capitulate* (**7.7**) to Allied units in combat: if a US unit rolls **1** or **2** in combat, **all** Vichy units in that battle are **eliminated**. British units obtain the same result on die rolls of **1**.

20.487 Vichy Surrender

If *demoralized*, Vichy may **Surrender** (see **16.81**) if the Allies have captured any Vichy ports (including FNA ports).

In the next Production following *Vichy Surrender*, the *Free French 2 Mtn* unit appears (Algiers or Tunis) as a *Volunteer* reinforcement unit.

French Defeat

Retention of its overseas empire was one of France's main reasons for the Armistice settlement with Germany.

Mussolini the Jackal

Despite the Pact of Steel with Germany, and his extensive territorial ambitions, Mussolini understood Italy's military and naval inferiority to France and had no intention of fighting the Allies until the military balance was favorable.

The rapid collapse of France surprised all of Europe, but Mussolini was quick to attack France once it was clear that his Mediterranean rival was doomed. With France out of the way, no Balkan or Mediterranean power could match Italy, and the empire building could begin. Jealous of German successes, Mussolini could not have been restrained by German "advice" (hence automatic belligerence).

Syria

In reality Syria was a Vichy colony, but its overt aid to Germany provoked Allied invasion and conquest, without any effect on Allied-Vichy relations. So in EuF, Syria is treated as an independent ME Mandate.

Vichy Forces

Under Armistice terms, Vichy was limited to a 100,000-man domestic army, but could retain its existing colonial forces.

Vichy Surrender

When the Torch invasion landed in Morocco and Algeria, there was considerable confusion among the local Vichy commanders as to their response.

The Allies had made surreptitious approaches to "sympathetic" Vichy generals; some did what they could to aid the invaders, some resisted fiercely, and others sat on the fence pending "orders" from higher up.

Following the consolidation of the Torch landings, few Frenchmen wanted to continue fighting for the Nazi regime. All resistance ceased within a few days.

NOTE: After Vichy Surrender the FF 2 mountain unit (**MF** Veteran) arrives in Algiers/Tunis as an Allied reinforcement.

Vichy Capitulation upon Repulse

Allied repulse of a Vichy assault (i.e., on a DR 1) can also result in *Capitulation*.

20.49 Free France**20.491 Anglo-French Union**

If *Armistice* is rejected, **Anglo-French Union (AFU)** is declared:

- **France** is *defeated* (see **20.47**). Control of French territory is unchanged (*Conquest* applies).
- **Free France**, a new nation united with Britain, is created.
- Surviving **French** units **convert** to *Free French* (see **20.492**).
- British units **can** now enter **FNA**.
- Axis Diplomatic Event **IU** (*Italy Unleashed*) becomes possible.

20.492 French Converts

Upon **AFU**, all surviving **French** units (including HQs) **convert** to **Free French** (**20.493**). They remain in play but cannot be rebuilt if eliminated.

20.493 Free French Forces

Free French (FF) units are effectively British/US units. They trace *Rail/Sea Supply* directly to London and are no longer *restricted* to France/Belgium and nations adjacent to them.

Free French units (always blue blocks) include three different types:

- **French Converts** (blue/red labels):
If **AFU** occurs, French survivors convert to *Free French* (**20.492**). These units **cannot** be rebuilt if eliminated.
- **Pro-Allied Vichy** units (light blue/ red labels): if the Axis *Betrays* (**20.484**) Vichy, its units are considered *Free French*. They **can** be rebuilt if eliminated.
- **Free French** reinforcements: (light blue labels), which can also be rebuilt:
 - a) Following *Vichy Surrender* (to the Allies, see **16.81**) the **FF 2** mountain corps (**MF Veteran**) arrives **in the next Production** (Algiers or Tunis) as an *Volunteer* unit (**16.84**).
 - b) The **FF 1** Tank and 3 Infantry corps arrive normally As Allied reinforcements in 1944.

Important. All **FF** units not already *MF Residents* are considered **MF Expeditions**, exempt from *Desert Maintenance* when *Cape Town/Morocco Based* (**21.38**), but still subject to *MF Acclimatization*.

20.494 Command and Supply

British/USA HQs can command *Free French* units and vice versa.

FF forces (including French *Converts*) do **not** need *National Supply*. They trace supply directly to **London** (HQs must pay *Overseas Supply* costs when applicable – see **11.731**).

Important: *Converted French HQs can only activate in France, Belgium, FNA, or adjacent nations/colonies.*

20.495 Production

Free French units are built with Allied PPs as for British/US units.

Exception: *Converted (blue/red) French units cannot be rebuilt if eliminated.*

Free France

The Free French under De Gaulle, headquartered in London, were denounced by Vichy France as traitors.

Many were survivors of Dunkirk who elected to remain in the Allied armed forces rather than be repatriated home.

The Free French attempted to seize Vichy West Africa (Dakar) in September 1940, but were repulsed by the Vichy French. They were later successful (with British assistance) in capturing Madagascar from Vichy forces, and participated in the liberation of Europe.

French HQs Integration

Given the command problems of the French army, language differences, and the personalities involved, incorporation of the French command structure into Allied forces could not have been effected.

20.5 SOVIET UNION

20.51 Soviet Neutrality

The Soviet Union is a *Great Power* that is initially neutral. Even while neutral, its forces **are** in play (controlled by the ALLIED side), and the following rules apply:

Territory. The USSR as of 1939 is called *Mother Russia*. *Greater Russia* includes all its annexable *Molotov Pact* territories (see sidebar). Leningrad is **always** a fortress.

Soviet Forces are *restricted* to *Greater Russia* while neutral. Units are moved normally by HQ command, and built up by Production, but cannot enter Axis or neutral territory prior to *belligerence* (*exceptions*: see *Molotov Pact* below and **21.48 Winter War**).

Non-Belligerence. The Soviets cannot *Declare War* on any nation prior to *Belligerence* (**20.52**). *Polish Partition* and *Winter War* Diplomatic Events do **not** affect Soviet neutrality.

Molotov Pact: Soviet units are *restricted* to the USSR during the first fortnight of Sept/39, after which they can enter *E. Poland* & the *Baltic States* **only**.

Border Garrisons: To avoid *Border Disputes* (**16.42**), the Soviets should occupy all hexes within *E. Poland*, the *Baltic States*, and *Bessarabia* that border **Axis** territory.

Peacetime Production: Soviet *Peacetime Production* (see **16.32**) is **one-third** its full wartime Production. *Cavalry* cannot be built in peacetime.

Strategic Reserve: The 5 *Strategic Reserve* units can arrive **individually** by DE **SR**. Following **SG** or **SE** (but **NOT SM**) **all** remaining units arrive next Production in any valid *arrival location* (**11.81**).

20.52 Belligerence

The Soviets can become *belligerent* **only** in two ways [no *Alliance Reactions*].

- By Axis *Declaration of War*, OR
- By Allied *Diplomatic Event SM* (*Soviet Mobilization*). See **20.55**.

20.521 Belligerence Effects

- **The Soviets join the Allies.**
- The *Molotov Pact* is cancelled: Soviet forces are no longer *restricted* to the USSR/E. Poland/Baltic States.
- The Soviets can issue *Declarations of War* which are **not** considered Allied *Betrayal* (see **20.36**).
- The **East Front** is **activated** (see **21.22**). The Axis begins separate tracking of **EF** Production separately.

- **Soviet Production triples** to its full wartime level.
- The **Reserve Armies** (SOVIET OB card) arrive **immediately** in/adjacent to their designated Cities (as on label).
- If *belligerence* is due to an Axis *Declaration of War* (**not Mobilization**), all remaining **Strategic Reserve** units arrive in the following Production.
- **Cavalry** units can build up past 1cv.

20.53 Soviet Forces

Soviet units (red blocks) cannot enter hexes **occupied** by Allied units (blue blocks) and vice-versa.

Allied/Soviet territory is **common** for command, movement, and supply purposes. *Unit entry into hexes controlled* (not *occupied*) by the other power does not alter hex/PP ownership.

North Front Veterans ("V" in a blue circle) can operate in the **NF Arctic Zone** without *Arctic Maintenance* (**21.461**).

Soviet units use *ALLIED* costs until **Great Patriotic War** (**20.56**) occurs, and *SOVIET* costs thereafter. *Units in the Arctic Zone* use *Extreme Costs* before **GPW** and **half Extreme Costs** afterwards (see also **21.462**). They are *MF Aliens*, (**21.314**) subject to all relevant rules and costs when in the *Med Front*.

Occupation Limits: No more than four (4) Soviet units can be within the territory of any Allied minor power (e.g., Poland), unless Axis units have already entered that minor's territory.

20.54 Command and Supply

The Soviet *Supply Origin* is the *SIBERIA Region* (see **10.2**).

Soviet forces move only by Soviet HQ command. STAVKA can command Soviet units on **any front**. The Soviet *Nth* HQ is **disrupted** and cannot blitz **outside** the *North Front*.

Red Army Purge: Initially, Soviet HQs cost **20 PPs/step** (**40PPs/cadre**).

Red Army Reforms: **DEs S1 & S2** reduce Soviet HQ costs. This process can only begin via *Finnish Armistice* (see **Winter War 20.57**), *Soviet Emergency* (DE **SE**) or *Great Patriotic War* (DE **SG**).

- **S1** reduces Soviet HQ costs to **15 PPs/step** (**30 PPs/cadre**).
- **S2** reduces Soviet HQ costs to **10 PPs/step** (**20 PPs/cadre**)

Soviet Territory

Mother Russia is the USSR of 1939, which excludes the assigned Molotov Pact territories below (which can be annexed).

Greater Russia is the USSR of 1941, including all the Molotov Pact territories.

The Molotov Pact

The Molotov Pact, signed in August 1939, secretly mandated German and Soviet spheres of influence in Eastern Europe. Finland, Bessarabia, the Baltic States, and Poland east of the Curzon Line were assigned to the Soviets. Germany was assigned the remainder of Central Europe, including Western Poland.

Molotov Pact Territories

Bessarabia is the portion of Rumania east of the Prut River, plus Cernauti and the hex west (see **20.58**). It is annexed to the USSR by Axis DE RB.

East Poland is Poland east of the Curzon Line (the 1941 German-Soviet border). It is annexed to the USSR by Soviet DE PP.

The Baltic States are Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia. They are also annexed to the USSR by Soviet DE PP.

Finnish Karelia is the area between the Soviet-Finnish 1939 and 1940 borders. It is annexed to the USSR upon *Finnish Armistice* or defeat.

Soviet Peacetime Cavalry

Because of the huge cost of maintaining cavalry, units were kept at minimal strength in peacetime, additional horses being requisitioned in time of war.

Soviet Strategic Reserve

In Spring 1941, when the German buildup in Poland and Rumania could no longer be ignored, the Soviets transferred strong field armies from the Urals, Siberia, and the Caucasus into western Russia.

Stalin's Purges of 1937-39

Due to typical dictator paranoia (possibly encouraged by an Abwehr intelligence plot) Stalin purged the Red Army in 1937-38, eliminating 90% of its generals. The Red Army took years to recover, reflected by the high HQ costs in 1939-40.

Red Army Reforms

Once combat experience exposed the failings of the purged Red Army command, reforms were instigated, and Stalinist cronies were replaced by professionals like Zhukov (ironically, the protégé of Marshall Tukhachevsky, purged head of the Red Army).

Axis Surprise. Soviet HQs are disrupted during the Soviet player-turn following an Axis Declaration of War (Surprise also cancels assault repulses see 20.16). **Surprise** does NOT apply if:

- Axis *Betrayal* (20.17) has occurred; or
- Axis has *Declared War* on **Republican Spain** (see SCW Scenario #10B).

Oil Supply. Soviet HQ costs rise if their *Oil Supply* is disrupted (see 20.591).

20.55 Soviet Mobilization

The **only** way the USSR can initiate war against the Axis is via Soviet *DE SM* (Soviet Mobilization), which equals a Soviet Declaration of War upon the Axis. However, Mobilization has major negative effects:

- 1) *DE SG* (reduced **SOVIET** unit costs) cannot occur until W/41; and
- 2) Axis *DEs* **JL**, **RG**, **AC BP** and **IU** become possible.

20.56 Great Patriotic War

Upon *Great Patriotic War*, the Soviets being using (reduced) **SOVIET** unit costs (see **GAME DATA**). For *Extreme Costs* use *Soviet Costs* x150%, rounded up.

Note: *Great Patriotic War* does **not** affect HQ costs: these can **only** be reduced by *DEs* **S1** & **S2** (see 20.54).

If the Axis *Declares War* on the USSR, *Great Patriotic War* occurs **immediately**.

If the Soviets *Mobilize* (declare war on the Axis), *Great Patriotic War* can **only** occur by *DE SG*, which is not possible until W'41, with *Soviet Emergency* in effect.

Important: Upon *Great Patriotic War*, Soviet *Saved PPs* are **halved** (to prevent doubled value for previously *Saved PPs*).

20.561 Soviet Emergency

Soviet Emergency (SE) is a Soviet *DE* that can occur after Axis forces have entered the USSR, **Finland**, **Turkey** or the **Mid East**. It becomes **more likely** on Axis entry into **Mother Russia** (USSR/1939).

Soviet Emergency enables Soviet *DE SG* if the Soviets have *mobilized* and *DE S1* when *Finnish Armistice* has not occurred. It also terminates *Phony War* (see 20.43).

20.57 The Winter War

Beginning Winter/39, the USSR can initiate the Russo-Finnish *Winter War* via *DE WW*, which does **not** affect either Soviet or Finnish neutrality (see 21.48, 1939 Scenario and the ALLIED DIPLOMACY table for details). Winning the *Winter War* enables *Red Army Reforms*.

20.58 Molotov Pact Annexations

Beginning Oct/39, the Soviets can do *DE PP* (Polish Partition), which annexes **Eastern Poland** and the **Baltic States** into the USSR. Also see *DE CL*.

Upon termination of the *Winter War* with *Finnish Armistice*, the Soviets annex **Finnish Karelia**, the area between the 1939/1940 borders.

Once **France** and **Poland** are defeated, the **Axis** can do *DE RB* (Rumania Cedes Bessarabia), which annexes **Bessarabia** into the USSR (and enables *Rumania Joins Axis*).

20.59 Soviet Production

20.591 Soviet Oil Supply

The Soviet *Oil Supply* is a *Rail/Sea Supply* route from **Baku** to the Soviet *Supply Origin* (SIBERIA). If it (or **Baku** itself) is lost, Soviet HQ costs rise by **5 PPs** (cadres +10 PPs).

The Soviet *Oil Supply SeaRoute* goes from **Baku** to **Guryev** by sea and on by rail to SIBERIA. Soviet Basic Production drops by **5 PPs** if it is interrupted (assuming **Baku** is retained).

20.592 Lend Lease

Murmansk Convoys. If *belligerent*, the Soviets lose **5 PPs** of Basic Production if *Rail/Sea Supply* from **Siberia** to **London** via **Murmansk** is cut.

Persia. The same applies if *Rail/Sea Supply* from **Siberia** to **London** via **Teheran** is cut. Both penalties can apply.

20.593 Soviet Steamroller

The *DE* sequence **SA-SB** upgrades the firepower of specified Soviet units.

SA: Arms Buildup Initiated

During DIPLOMACY, the Soviets can do *DE SA* ("Always") if they have:

- all units in play on the map (no units currently eliminated and all reinforcements have arrived),
- all HQs at full strength, and
- Reserved 100+ PPs during the preceding Production (OK to Spend some PPs to build cadres/HQs etc).

SB: Arms Buildup Completed

DE SB upgrades the offensive firepower of Soviet *Shock* and *Mech* units:

First Buildup: *Shock* fires **TF/DF**; [and] *Mech* fires **DF/DF**.

The sequence **SA-SB** may be done a 2nd time (completely re-qualifying for **SA** as above) to upgrade Soviet *Armor*.

Second Buildup. *Armor* fires **TF/DF**.

Soviet Mobilization

The Allies can only bring the Soviets into the war by Diplomatic Event, and with some serious adverse side effects. It is also difficult to mobilize the Soviets early in the war, becoming less so as time goes on.

Anti Comintern Pact

First the Germans and Japanese, then the Italians and Spanish signed the Anti-Comintern Pact aimed at preventing the spread of International Communism. Soviet Mobilization galvanizes anti-Communist sentiment among the Fascist powers, bringing them into the Axis orbit.

Japanese Intervention

Japan was an original signatory of the Anti-Comintern Pact, and the third nation to join the Axis. Border clashes in Manchuria in 1939 raised the possibility of a Soviet war with Japan. Stalin's fear of a two-front war against Germany and Japan led to non-aggression pacts with Germany (Aug/1939) and Japan (April/41).

Had the Soviets betrayed Germany, Japan would have remained a constant threat. The Trans-Siberian Railway, sole lifeline to Soviet Far East, is dangerously exposed, running very close to the border of Japanese Manchuria for 1000 miles.

Bessarabia

Bessarabia, a former province of Czarist Russia, was seized by Germany as part of their harsh peace with Soviet Russia in 1917 (Treaty of Brest-Litovsk) and then awarded to Rumania by the Treaty of Versailles after the First World War.

Stalin's desire to recover the territory was blocked by the Franco-Rumania alliance, but four days after the French Armistice, Stalin demanded Bessarabia from Rumania, and Hitler declined to intercede. Bessarabia was quickly overrun by Soviet troops, driving Rumania firmly into the Axis camp.

Axis RB

NOTE: This *DE* is Axis because it is a Precondition for Axis *DE RX*: Rumania Joins Axis. No sane Allied player would execute it. See Axis Diplomacy.

Soviet Oil Supply

While Ploesti provided 45% of the Axis Oil, the Caucasus provided 85% of Soviet Oil, distributed mainly via the Volga.

Distribution via Krasnovodsk would depend on a single 2000-mile (30+ hex!) rail line to the Urals via Tashkent. In effect, rail transport distances would be tripled, and petroleum deliveries would be correspondingly reduced.

20.6 MINOR POWERS

Minor powers are either *neutral* (and out of play) or *belligerent* (16.0). Cooperating powers (16.2) are still *neutral*.

Belligerent minors have joined a faction and their forces are in play on the map. They are termed *Satellites*, *Co-belligerents*, or *Interventionists* depending on the cause of *belligerence* (see 16.3).

Defeated minors cease to exist and no longer belong to any *faction*.

20.61 Minor Forces

Upon *belligerence*, the owning faction sets up minor power forces within their territory (stacking 1 unit per hex only).

Minor forces are depicted on the PRO-ALLIED or PRO-AXIS MINOR OB cards as of **September 1939**. Before setup *Peacetime Production* (16.32) must be applied, to account for buildup during the intervening time.

Restriction. Depending on the nature of *belligerence*, minor power units may be *restricted* (see 16.311)

20.62 Minor Command

National HQs (if any) can always command Minor power units.

Any Axis HQ can also command Axis minor units for movement **and** combat support purposes.

ALLIED minor power units can also be commanded for Movement purposes by Allied SHQs (only). They can receive Combat Support from **any** active Allied HQ in *Combat Support range*.

20.63 National Supply

Minor (and major) powers require **National Supply** (see 10.21). Their capitals act as the *Supply Source* for national units **only** if they can trace *National Supply* to the faction *Supply Origin* (**London** or **Berlin**). If not, all national units are *unsupplied*.

20.64 Minor Production

Minor powers with *Rail/Sea Supply* to the faction *Supply Origin* contribute national PPs to the *faction* PP pool and build using that pool. Minor units build using the costs of their faction.

Isolated Minors with *National Supply* **only** (e.g., Poland/39, and also Finland under DE **FL**) spend/save PPs from a *National* PP pool, completely separate from their faction's PP pool.

Eliminated minor units can be rebuilt as cadres in their **capitals**.

20.7 WF MINORS

20.71 Denmark

Denmark has **no** *Peacetime Production*.

20.72 Belgium

Eben Emael. The Belgian fort unit must be located in **Liege**. It loses **all** fort abilities (becoming infantry) when engaged by an airdropped enemy para unit.

Sedan Appendix. One **French** unit can be deployed in the Philippeville hex while Belgium is neutral. It is subject to *Axis Surprise* (20.16) if Belgium is *surprised*.

Gamelin. While Belgium is *Surprised*, Allied HQs **in France** cannot **Blitz** (20.42).

20.73 Greece

Greece includes **Crete**. Its *National Supply* cannot be traced via **Turkey** if the **SOVIETS** are *belligerent* (see also 10.21), and **must often build with MF PPs** (21.381). Once *exploited*, Greece may *Revolt* (see 16.73) once entered by the Allies/Soviets.

20.74 Spain

Spain includes **Mallorca** and controls **Spanish Morocco**. Upon *belligerence*, deploy **Nationalist** forces as per the PRO-AXIS NEUTRAL OB card (see sidebar for *Spanish Civil War* linkage). The THQ commands Spanish units only [anywhere].

MF Veterans ("V" in orange circle) can set up in **Spanish Morocco** (despite 21.321). The *SFL* unit can be *released* by Axis DE **XR**.

Fortress Spain. Spain can trace *National Supply* **internally** from the capital (Madrid) to any friendly port in Spain.

Once *demoralized* by DE **2F**, Spain may **Surrender** (16.8) if Allied occupied. See also **Spanish Volunteers** 17.7.

20.75 Portugal

If *demoralized* (by DE **2F**), Portuguese units become *ambivalent* (16.711). They *repulse* Allied assaults only on die rolls of 1 and may *capitulate* (7.7) to Allied forces.

20.76 Switzerland

Fortress Switzerland. Switzerland can trace *National Supply* **internally** from the capital (Bern) to a fortress hex. It is *defeated* as a **major** power (capital lost & all units eliminated).

20.77 Yugoslavia

Yugoslavia has 5 Pro-Allied (*Serbian*) armies (blue blocks) and 3 Pro-Axis (*Croatian*) armies (2cv black blocks). When *belligerent* via **DE** or **AR**, only **one side** arrives. Upon a **DoW**, all 8 blocks do.

MINOR POWER LABELS

Pro -Allied Minors (Blue Blocks)

Poland	Brown/Red
Belgium	Light Orange/Red
Holland	Orange/Blue
Denmark	Red/White
Greece	Light Blue/Blue
Yugoslavia	Blue/Red
Norway	Red/Blue
Spain (Repub.)	Yellow/Orange*
Switzerland	White/Red
	* (Red blocks)

Pro -Axis Minors (Black Blocks)

Rumania	Light Blue/Blue
Hungary	Light Pink/Pink
Bulgaria	Light Yellow/Yellow
Portugal	Violet/Tan
Vichy	Light Purple/Red
Finland	Light Grey/Light Blue
Spain (Nat)	Yellow/Tan
Sweden	Light Blue/Yellow
Turkey	Green/Red
Iraq	Red/Green
Syria	Violet/Green
Persia	Green/Red

National Supply

National Supply represents commercial transport routes and connection to the outside world. Without it, national morale fails. This provision prevents minor powers from "holing up" in the capital at double defense.

Sedan Appendix/Philippeville

French territory protrudes along the Meuse River into a large portion of this hex. Most of the river crossings are in French territory.

The Baltic States

Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia are considered a single nation (capital Riga) with no units.

Spanish Civil War Linkage

If a **Spanish Civil War** prequel game was played, see the **1936 SCW** scenario Special Rule #10 for linking rules to **EuroFront**.

Yugoslavia's Divided Loyalties

Yugoslavia was a bitterly divided nation. After the Serbian coup and German invasion, the Croatian armies mutinied and did not resist.

Therefore when belligerent via an Alliance Reaction or Diplomatic Event only the 5 Serbian armies are available to the Allies OR the 3 Croatian armies are available to the Axis (Peacetime Production is added in either case).

However, if Yugoslavia is Declared War upon (16.4), all 8 Serbian and Croatian armies are deployed in defense (add Peacetime Production).

20.8 THE **NF** MINORS

Scandinavia includes **Norway**, **Finland**, and **Sweden**.

Ski Troops. Scandinavian **infantry** moves 2 hexes in **Snow** weather within *home territory* (1.7). **Pursuit speed** is "2".

Home Command: Scandinavian **THQs** can *support combat* and make **SF** Airstrikes within *home territory*.

20.81 Norway

Norway is a pro-Allied minor. Its units are **NF Residents** (see 21.411). Upon belligerence, Norwegian units must set up in **ports** (it has **no** *Peacetime Production*).

DE **NP** makes Norway *demoralized and ambivalent* (16.711): its units *Repulse* Allied assaults weakly (7.61), may *Capitulate* (7.7) to the Allies., and may *Surrender* (16.83) if the Allies have captured ports.

Norway is *defeated* as a *Major Power* (**Oslo** lost, all units eliminated). Once *exploited*, it may *Revolt* (16.73).

20.82 Finland

Finland is a pro-Axis minor. Finnish units are **NF Veterans**.

White Death: Finnish infantry fires **DF/DF** within Finland. The Mannerheim THQ can support combat within Finland.

Greater Finland includes Petrozavodsk. If belligerent by **DEs FL/FX**, Finnish units are restricted to *Greater Finland* and adjacent hexes/areas.

Beginning with **WW** (*Winter War*), Finnish *Peacetime Production* rises from 25% to **100%**. *When starting 1940 or later scenarios, assume the Finnish army was worth 30 PPs in June, 1940 and add 2 PPs/month.*

Finland can join the Allies by DE **FI** if DE **2F** is in effect and the Soviets control all of *Mother Russia*.

20.83 Sweden

Sweden is a pro-Axis minor. Swedish units are **NF Veterans**.

Home Defense: Swedish infantry fires **SF/DF** within Sweden.

Swedish Compliance: When DE **DS** (*Denmark Submits*) occurs, Sweden agrees to this limited form of "cooperation" with the Axis, ceding 1 mineral PP to Germany (*Peacetime Production reduced to 3*) and allowing the Axis use of Sweden's *rail lines* (but not its ports!!) for movement/supply.

Fortress Sweden: Sweden can trace *National Supply internally* from **Stockholm** to **Gallivare**.

20.9 THE **MF** MINORS

20.91 Turkey

Turkey is a pro-Axis minor power (**not** a *ME Mandate*). European Turkey is in the **WF**; Asiatic Turkey is in the **EF**.

Turkish *belligerence* activates the *East Front* (21.22). Its units are **MF Veterans** [21.312], its infantry firing **SF/DF** within Turkey. Its fort unit goes in **Kanakkale**. Its **THQ** commands *Turkish units only*.

Fortress Turkey: Turkey can trace *National Supply internally* from **Ankara** to **Istanbul**.

20.92 The ME Mandates

The 4 **MidEast Mandates** listed below are *Pro-Axis Minors* (**MF Resident** units) that can join the Axis as its forces approach (DE **ME**). Allied attack before this is *Betrayal*. If defeated they must be garrisoned to avoid DE **MR**. No Axis *DoWar* is required to enter (see 21.396).

Palestine (capital Jerusalem) is a British colony. It can join the Axis by DE **MR** (*ME Rebellion*) if not garrisoned.

Syria (capital Damascus) is a normal Pro-Axis Minor neutral (20.6). It can join the Axis by DE **ME** (*ME Uprising*).

Iraq (capital Baghdad) is a *British Protectorate* (see 20.921). It can also join the Axis via DE **ME** (*ME Uprising*).

Persia (capital Teheran) is another *Protectorate* that can join the Axis via DE **ME** (*ME Uprising*), **once the Soviets are belligerent AND DE ME has already succeeded in another ME Mandate**.

20.921 British Protectorates

Iraq and **Persia** are *Cooperating* (16.0) with the Allies: they have ceded **PPs**, *Bases* and *Transit Rights* (see below) to the Allies while still remaining 'neutral'. **Even when occupied by the Soviets, they are considered to be Allied controlled.**

Transit Rights: Allied units can move and trace supply via national railroads, roads, **and ports**. However, they cannot remain in national territory (outside *Bases*) without a prior *Declaration of War*. *Occupation Limits apply*.

Bases: **One** Allied unit occupying a *Base* hex (Habbina, Basra, or Abadan) is **automatically supplied**.

20.93 Saudi Arabia

Saudi Arabia is a British colony (no units) but neither a *Mid East Mandate* nor *British Protectorate* (ME/MR).

Norway: Pacifist but Resistant

Prior to the war, Norway neglected its defense, trusting to neutrality and the Royal Navy for protection.

Despite its weak army, it proved difficult to conquer, due to its rugged terrain (and people!), and its long, thin shape.

Mid East Uprisings (DE ME)

As the Axis tide of conquest reached Turkey and Egypt, the new Iraqi leader Rashid Ali surrounded a British airbase near Baghdad and demanded British withdrawal from Iraq. In Syria, Vichy General Dentz allowed the Luftwaffe to occupy airbases in support.

A hastily assembled British brigade force drove east from Palestine, relieved the airbase and entered Baghdad. This was followed in the next few months by successful offensives into Syria and (with the Soviets) Persia, which re-secured the vital Mid East oil supplies and supply routes to Russia.

ME Uprisings become possible once the Balkans are Pacified (17.4) and more likely as the Axis advances nearer Suez.

Mid East Rebellions (DE MR)

ME Mandates that are Allied controlled (either from being colonies or after a defeated Uprising) may Rebel if there is no the Allied (or Soviet) garrison unit present. The 2cv British **MF** mech and infantry groups are well suited to this purpose.

Syria

Although a colony of France and later of Vichy, Syria is considered an independent ME Mandate in *EuroFront*, completely separate from both France and Vichy.

When the Iraqi rebellion began shortly after Crete fell, General Dentz of Syria allowed Luftwaffe planes to land in Syria and bomb British positions from there. After the Allies had regained control of Iraq they promptly invaded and subdued Dentz's Syria.

Despite this campaign, Vichy France raised no protest and remained neutral with respect to the Allies.

ME Mandates & Axis Liberation

These nations were nominally independent but really under British/French control and chafed under this pseudo-colonialism. For this reason they can rebel pro-Axis via ME/MU and do NOT resist Axis occupation if it occurs.

Abadan & Axis Oil Supply

Since Abadan is Allied controlled (*base* hex) it cannot be used as an Axis oil source unless it is captured.

21.0 THE FRONTS

Front-specific rules follow.

21.1 WEST FRONT

The **West Front (WF)** includes Britain, France, Holland, Belgium, Denmark, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Bulgaria, Albania, and Greece. It also includes the western portions of Germany, Poland, Hungary, Bulgaria, and Rumania (west of the *EF/WF* dividing line shown on the map). It also includes *European Turkey*, and all Mediterranean islands.

21.11 WF Weather

- March-October: always Dry (no storms). No weather die-rolls.
- November-February: variable. Weather die-roll each Fortnight.

21.12 WF Activation

The **WF** is always active.

21.13 WF Production

All Axis/ Allied Production (regardless of source location) is generated in the **WF**. **WF** Production can be *allocated* (11.5) to other active fronts.

Builds on *inactive* fronts are paid for with **WF** Production.

21.14 Cape Town Basing

Allied units in the *West Front* that must trace supply via the Indian Ocean have *Cape Town Basing*. These units must be built with **MF** PPs (using **WF** costs), but are not subject to any other **MF** rules.

21.2 EAST FRONT

The **East Front (EF)** includes the USSR and *Anatolia* (*Asiatic Turkey*), plus the eastern portions of Germany, Poland, Bulgaria and Rumania (east of the *EF/WF* dividing line shown on the map), plus the northern part of Persia.

21.21 EF Weather

- June-September: always Dry (no storms). No weather die-rolls.
- October-May: variable. Weather die-roll each Fortnight.

21.22 EF Activation

The **EF** is *activated* upon **Soviet** or **Turkish belligerence**. The Axis must make its initial **EF Allocation** (11.5) in its next Production.

The **EF** is **deactivated** if the Axis **Allocation** falls to zero (affects **OKH Flex point**, see 5.723).

21.23 EF PP Allocations

Soviet Production is always tracked on the **EF** Production Track and can be used to build Soviet units anywhere.

Axis **EF** Production is tracked separately **once** the **EF** is *activated* and thereafter **Axis units in the EF must be built exclusively with EF PPs**.

The Axis can *allocate* *West Front* PPs to the *East Front*. **Allocations** are made in **10 PP** blocks.

Initial Allocation: In the Production Phase following **EF** activation (21.22), the Axis makes its initial **EF Allocation** (0-40 PPs), reducing **WF** Production by that amount. The allocation is added to the PPs located on the *East Front* to determine Axis **EF** production.

Increasing Allocations: The Axis can increase its **EF Allocation** to **40 PPs** (its **EF Initial Capacity**) during **any** Production phase.

Once at or above 40 PPs, the Axis can **only raise the Allocation by 10 PPs at Summer Season Breaks** (June), but **not until the EF has been active for 6 months**.

De-Allocations: in **any** Production Phase, the **EF** allocation can be reduced **by any multiple of 10 PPs**. De-allocated PPs immediately revert to the **WF**.

21.24 PP Transfers

Every month, the Axis and Allies can transfer a block of **10 PPs** from the **WF** and/or **MF** to the **EF**, of which **5 PPs** arrives after a month delay. *In some cases this may be reduced by Shipping Losses*, see below.

21.241 Arctic Convoys

Allied transfers from the **WF** to the **EF** are subject to *Shipping Losses*. Roll **one die** for the **10 PPs** shipped to the *East Front*. The die roll is the number of PPs **that** arrive (**cannot exceed 5 PPs**).

Note: *Naval Supremacy does not cancel Arctic Convoy shipping losses.*

21.25 Axis EF Logistics

Axis HQs activated in the **EF** that are **not EF** HQs (OKH, North, Center, South, A) are **disrupted** and **cannot Blitz** (see 5.32).

During the first **EF** winter, the Axis suffers *Winter Paralysis* (12.45).

Axis **EF** HQs:

OKH SHQ
Army Group North HQ
Army Group Center HQ
Army Group South HQ
Army Group A HQ

Distinguishing Axis EF & WF Units

Axis **WF** (game) units have italicized unit IDs (**EF** game units do not). EuF game units have olive colored unit IDs. This aids in returning units to their proper box.

Axis **EF** & **WF** units are free to occupy either front, but non-**EF** HQs activated in the **EF** are disrupted and cannot blitz.

Lend Lease

Allied Production **cannot** be allocated to the Soviets (historical levels of Lend-Lease to Russia are factored in), although Allied PPs can be *Transferred* there (11.6).

Cape Town Basing

Allied units operating in Greece in 1941 were dependent on a supply line through the Suez Canal, Red Sea, Indian Ocean, Cape Town, Atlantic Ocean to London. This is represented in the game by Cape Town Basing for units in the *West Front*.

Arctic Convoy Example

The Allies wish to ship **10 PPs** to the *East Front*. At most **5 PPs** will arrive a month later. **One** die is rolled to determine the actual amount of PPs that arrive. The total cannot exceed **5 PPs**. Hence, if 6 is rolled, **5 PPs** arrive.

21.3 THE MED FRONT

The **Med Front** includes: **North Africa** (Morocco/Algeria/Tunisia/**Libya**/Egypt); the **Mid East** (Palestine/Syria/Iraq/Persia) except **Northern Persia** (that part north of the **EF/MF** line on the map); and the **Southern Zone** (Sudan, Aden, Karachi, etc).

NOTE: European Turkey and all Mediterranean islands are in the **WF**. Asiatic Turkey and Northern Persia are in the **EF**.

Desert Zone: The portion of the **MF** covered with hexes (i.e., North Africa plus the Mid East). The Southern Zone is **not** part of the Desert Zone, though it contains some desert terrain.

21.31 MF Units

There are three types of **Med Front** units, defined by orange circles on their labels (listed in the sidebar).

21.311 MF Residents

MF Residents have “**R**” in an orange circle on their labels. They are **permanently restricted** to the **Med Front** but exempt from **Desert Maintenance**.

21.312 MF Veterans

MF Veterans have “**V**” in an orange circle on their labels. They are exempt from **Desert Maintenance**, but **not** restricted to the **Med Front**.

21.313 MF Expeditions

MF Expeditions have “**E**” in an orange circle on their labels. They are **not** restricted to the **MF** but are **exempt** from **Desert Maintenance** when **Morocco** or **Tunis/Istanbul Based** (see 21.38).

21.314 MF Aliens

Units outside above 3 classes are **MF Aliens**. All **MF Alien** units occupying the **Desert Zone** must pay **Desert Maintenance** (see 21.372).

21.315 Fortress Garrisons

The Malta and Gibraltar static **fortress garrisons** are **not MF** units. They are restricted to these fortresses.

21.316 MF Prohibited Units

- SiegeGun, Cavalry, SS, and Fort units cannot enter the **MF**.

21.32 MF Activation

21.321 MF Inactive

Before Med Front Activation:

- Only **MF** Residents are allowed inside the **MF**, and only the British fortress garrisons can occupy Gibraltar/Malta.
- These units can be built with **WF** PPs, at **double** the normal [**Extreme**] costs.

- **MF** Reinforcements cannot be advanced.

21.322 MF Activation

The **Med Front** is **activated** by Italian belligerence.

- In the first Production after **MF** activation, both Axis and Allies make initial **MF** Allocations (21.37), and the British ANZ and Italian 20 Corps **MF** reinforcement units arrive.
- **Once** the **MF** is **activated**, units in the **MF** must be built with **MF** PPs at **MF** costs (except see 21.38 **MF** Basing).

21.33 MF Weather

MF Weather is **always Dry**. No separate **MF** weather die-roll is made, but **WF** weather can result in *Mediterranean Basin Storms*.

21.34 MF Command & Supply

The Italian **CS** and Allied **ME** THQs can command units within the **MF** only. *Alien* HQs are *disrupted* in the **MF**.

ME THQ can **support combat** in the **Southern Zone** (range = CV).

MF Supply Lines (10.4) can be no longer than **one hex**.

21.35 MF Movement

21.351 Acclimatization

All units entering the **Med Front** from another **front** immediately lose **2 cv Acclimatization** (this **excludes** reinforcements arriving in the **MF**).

NOTE: Units repulsed attempting to enter the **MF** by assault do not “arrive” and do not Acclimatize until they succeed (i.e., after Defensive Fire but before they fire).

All acclimatized units that leave the **MF** must re-acclimatize on re-entry.

IMPORTANT: N. Africa Victory (17.61) cancels Acclimatization for that side.

21.352 Road Movement

Roads exist in the **MF** where shown and also along all rail lines.

Strategic Road Movement is made along **MF** roads: **one** Supreme Move can move a unit **double** its normal distance, if it follows a **road** and remains within friendly territory for its entire move. Units can only make **one** strategic Road Move per turn (no linking).

Units cannot *engage* or *retreat* by [strategic] Road Movement, but can *disengage* (counts against hexside limit).

MF RESIDENTS

Britain:

ME THQ
WDF Mech Corps
ANZ Infantry Corps [**MF** reinf]
PalF Infantry BrigadeGroup
HabF Mech BrigadeGroup
Ind Infantry BrigadeGroup

Italy:

CS THQ
10I Infantry Army
Lib Static Army
1EA Static Army
20 Corps Mech Group [**MF** reinf]

French:

N Af Infantry Army
Tun Static Army
Alg Static Army
Orn Static Army
Mor Static Army

Iraq:

Iraqi Army

Syria:

1 Syr Army
2 Syr Army

Palestine:

Pal static irregulars

Persia (also allowed in N Persia/EF):

1 Per Army
2 Per Army

MF VETERANS

Britain:

21 Army Group HQ
10 Infantry Corps
13 Mech Corps
30 Armor Corps

Germany:

Army Gp **Afr** HQ† [**MF** reinf]
DAK Armor Corps* [**MF** reinf]
LtAfr Mech Corps [**MF** reinf]
2 Pa Static Corps [**MF** reinf]
 † moves 3 in the **MF**.
 * elite armor.

Free French:

2 Mountain Corps [**MF** reinf]

Turkey:

MK THQ
1 Infantry Army
2 Infantry Army
3 Infantry Army
4 Infantry Army
5 Infantry Army
6 Mtn Army
7 Static Army
8 Static Army
9 Static Army
Tur Cavalry Corps
Kan Fortress Corps

21.353 Off Road Movement

Units moving off-road in the **MF** (for any part of their move) have their speed reduced by 1 (static units cannot leave the road in the **MF**).

21.354 Desert Zone Stacking [change]

Units in the **MF Desert Zone** are limited to **maximum 3 stacking** in all terrain (except 2 stacking in mountains).

21.36 MF Combat

In desert terrain, Armor fires **TF/DF** (DAK: **QF/TF**), and Mech fires **DF/DF**. Other firepower is unchanged.

British **ME THQ** can **support combat** in the **Southern Zone** (range = CV).

21.37 MF Production

Prior to **MF** activation, **MF** building is paid for with **WF** PPs at **double Extreme** costs. After activation, **MF** Production is tracked separately.

IMPORTANT: **MF** City/Resource PPs are added to **WF** Production. Both the **AXIS** and **ALLIES** can **Allocate** **WF** Production to the **Med Front**. **MF Allocations** are increased / decreased **5 PPs** at a time.

Initial Allocation: Once the **MF** is activated (21.322), the **Allies** and **Axis** must make their initial **MF Allocations** (**0-15 PPs**) next Production Phase (reducing their **WF** Production by that amount).

Raising Allocations: Players can raise their **MF** Allocation to **15 PPs** during **any** Production Phase.

Raises above 15 PPs can only be made at **Season Breaks** (Jun & Dec), and always in increments of **5 PPs**. No increases are until the **MF** has been active a minimum of **3** months.

De-Allocations: **MF** Allocations can be reduced by **any multiple of 5 PPs** during **any** Production Phase. De-allocated **MF** PPs revert immediately to the **West Front**.

PP Transfers: Players can **Transfer** 10 **WF** PPs to the **MF**: **half** this (less **Shipping Losses**) arrives 1 month later.

21.371 Shipping Losses

All **Allocated** and **Transferred** PPs arriving in the **Med Front** are subject to **Shipping Losses**.

To resolve **Shipping Losses**, roll **one die** for every **5 PPs** arriving in the **Med Front** that month. For example, for 15 PPs **Allocated**, plus one 5 PP **Transfer** (10 PPs sent), 4 dice are rolled. The die roll total is the number of PPs arriving safely. This

cannot exceed the PPs being shipped.

Note: *Axis Shipping Losses are cancelled if they control Malta, Suez, or Gibraltar (see 17.5). **Naval Supremacy does not cancel Shipping Losses.***

21.372 Desert Maintenance

Each **MF Alien** unit in the **MF Desert Zone** (21.3) costs **5 PPs** per month **Desert Maintenance**. This is deducted from **MF Allocated PPs before Shipping Losses** are resolved (deduct 1 die per maintained unit). **MF Expeditions** without **MF Basing** (21.38) also pay **Desert Maintenance**. If PPs **arriving** in the **MF** are insufficient to pay **Desert Maintenance**, excess units are disbanded (owner's choice).

Desert Victory (17.62) cancels **Desert Maintenance** for that side.

MF Expeditions (17.63) are exempt from **Desert Maintenance** if they have **Morocco** (Allies) or **Tunis/Istanbul** (Axis) **Basing**. See 21.38.

21.373 MF Building

All units in the **MF** build/rebuild with **MF** PPs using **EXTREME COSTS**, which are about 50% higher than normal. See **UNIT DATA** (p. 96). **Only MF units eliminated in the MF are rebuildable there as cadres.**

MF Victory (21.395) allows the victor to use **WF** PPs and **WF** Costs.

IMPORTANT: with **MF Basing** (21.38) units in the **MF** may also build with **WF** PPs under limited circumstances.

NOTE: Prior to **MF Activation** (Italian belligerence), units in the **MF** can only be built at **double Extreme** costs (21.321).

Example: Units in the **British Empire Box** cost double to build before **MF** Activation. This area was not a war priority before Italian belligerence.

21.374 MF Arrival Locations

MF Residents must arrive in the **MF** as reinforcements. **MF Veterans** can arrive in the **MF** as reinforcements (but need not).

Axis units (cadres or reinforcements) can arrive **only** in Tripoli. Allied units can arrive in any friendly **MF** major port.

21.38 MF Basing**21.381 Allied Cape Town Basing**

Allied units that must trace supply (including **National Supply**) via or from **SOUTH AFRICA** (e.g., Greece in 1941) must build with **MF** PPs (using **MF** costs if within the **MF**, and **ALLIED** costs elsewhere).

MF EXPEDITIONS**Britain:**

AF SHQ
15 Army Group HQ
5 Infantry Corps
2 Para Corps

USA:

SHAEF SHQ
2 Amphibious Corps
6 Amphibious Corps

Free France:

WF French units (blue/red labels)

Germany:

Army Group **G** HQ
5th Armor Corps
90 Infantry Corps
90 Static Corps

Italy:

8 Infantry Army

Malta

Note that Air Assaults versus fortress hexes are Repulsed on DR 1-3.

South Africa Basing

Units in South Africa have Cape Town Basing.

MF Basing

Northwest Africa has a wetter climate, larger population base, and considerably better infrastructure than Libya/Egypt, including a better rail net. It also has shorter and more defensible shipping lanes for both sides: Tunis to Sicily, and Casablanca to London.

Therefore, both sides are allowed to "shunt" a limited amount of **WF** PPs directly into FNA, provided they have short, secure supply lines, Axis via Tunis/Istanbul, and Allies via Casablanca (or Tangiers).

Tunis Basing Example

With **Vichy Cooperating**, **Tunis Basing** is still not possible because **ports** of a **Cooperating** nation cannot be used (only rail lines). If Vichy joins the Axis (or if the Axis conquers Tunisia) **Tunis Basing** becomes possible.

Example: Vichy has joined the Axis, enabling **Tunis Basing**. Axis armor unit 'G' in Mareth is adjacent to a friendly rail line connecting to Tunis. As this unit is an **MF Expedition**, it is now free to operate in the **MF** without incurring **Desert Maintenance**.

During Production the Axis can spend **WF** PPs not exceeding half its current **MF** Allocation on units with **Tunis Basing**. Assuming this is 20 PPs, the Axis can spend 10 **WF** PPs to build the armor, adding an additional 2 **MF** PPs to complete its 12 PP step cost in the **MF**.

An Axis unit in Tripoli W1 is **never** eligible for **Tunis Basing** because it is two hexes from the Gabes railhead and thus cannot trace a **Supply Line** to a rail line connected to Tunis.

21.382 Allied Morocco Basing

Allied units in the **MF** that can trace supply to **Casablanca/Tangiers** or a rail line connected to them, and thence on by sea to London can use a limited amount of **WF** PPs for building (at **MF** costs, no Shipping Losses apply).

Important: The total **WF** PP expenditure on Morocco-based units cannot exceed **half** the current Allied **MF** Allocation.

21.383 Allied Dual Basing

Allied units in the **MF** that can trace supply by **both** the above methods can build using **WF** and/or **MF** PPs in any combination.

21.384 Axis Standard Basing

Axis units in the **MF** tracing supply by any route build using **MF** PPs / **MF** costs.

21.385 Axis Tunis/Istanbul Basing

Axis units in the **MF** that can trace supply to a rail line connected to **Tunis** or **Istanbul** (or directly to those cities) and then on to Berlin by *Rail Line/Sea Lane* can use a limited amount of **WF** PPs for building (at **MF** costs, **no** Shipping Losses apply).

Important: Total Axis **WF** PPs spent on Tunis/Istanbul-based units cannot exceed **half** the current Axis **MF** Allocation.

21.386 Axis Dual Basing

Axis units in the **MF** that can trace supply by **both** the above methods (**Standard** and **Tunis/Istanbul**) can build using **WF** and/or **MF** PPs in any combination, at **MF** costs.

21.39 MF Special Rules**21.391 MF Sea Invasions**

- *Sea Invasions* between **MF** ports are **not allowed**.
- *Sea Invasions* into/out of the **MF** must start from a **major** port, and land in a port in a **different front**.

21.392 MF Paratroops

- **Paratroops** are **prohibited** in the **MF** unless combined with a *sea invasion* into the same hex.

21.393 MF Airstrikes

- Axis Airpower is **DF** maximum.
- Only **MF Resident/Veteran** HQs can make Airstrikes into the **MF** from another *front*.

21.394 Suez Canal

- Naval operations through the Suez Canal are governed by *Straits* rules (see 1.371 and 15.12). The Canal is treated as a river for *River Assaults*, but *Repulse* is '1' only.

21.395 MF Control

Control of **all six** (6) major ports in *North Africa* (Suez, Alexandria, Benghazi, Tripoli, Tunis, Algiers), constituting *North Africa Victory* (17.61), confers a benefit.

Also controlling Basra constitutes *Desert Victory* (17.62) and adding Karachi gains *MedFront Victory* (17.63), which confer added benefits

21.396 ME Mandates/Axis Entry

Axis units are allowed **free entry** into *ME Mandates*. They can enter without a *Declaration of War* and without committing *Betrayal*. The *ME Mandate* does not become *belligerent* as a result and no national units appear (though they may appear subsequently as a result of **DE ME**, see below).

21.397 MF Bases

One unit in a friendly *base* hex is automatically supplied (i.e., **has** a ZOC). If more than one unit is present, **neither** is automatically supplied.

Unoccupied base hexes become national territory upon *Uprising* or *Rebellion* (revert to being *bases* if re-occupied).

21.398 ME Uprisings

ME Uprisings (**DE ME**) can occur once the Balkans are *Pacified* (17.4) and **all** hexes of Greece/Bulgaria are Axis controlled.

ME Mandates **Iraq** and/or **Syria** may suddenly join the Axis, creating problems for the Allies. **Once either has occurred, Persia may do the same, provided the Soviets are belligerent**

NOTE: Upon **DE ME**, *Cooperation with the Allies terminates: all national territory not controlled by Allied units/ZoCs (including bases) becomes Axis-controlled.*

21.399 ME Rebellions

ME Rebellions (**DE MR**) are possible when Allied-controlled *ME Mandates* do not contain an Allied garrison unit. **ONE** pro-Axis unit appears in the the capital.

The East Africa Campaign

An East African campaign can also present a problem to the overstretched British in the Mid East. Failure to deal with Ethiopia presents three dangers.

Firstly the Italian 1ea can leave its base in Ethiopia and move into Somaliland, cutting the Red Sea straits. This blocks Allied sea movement into Egypt and threatens a further move to Aden, further complicating the situation.

Secondly, if the Axis captures Alexandria, Allied units retreating up the Nile into Sudan will become reduced to Siege Supply if engaged there.

Thirdly, closing the straits leaves Allied units in the **MF** reliant on a single road supply line via Palestine and Iraq to the Persian Gulf, easily cut by ME Uprising.

However, the Italian 1ea is unsupplied outside its Ethiopian base, so it must return there immediately upon capturing Somaliland or die. A British unit sent to Aden can reopen the straits by crossing them to liberate Somaliland. If Aden is also lost, things become more difficult.

ME Uprisings

ME Uprisings occurring at a crucial time also present serious problems to the Allies.

It is critical to understand how National Supply and ME Bases work in this regard.

National Supply is traceable by rail or sea, but NOT by road. For Axis ME Mandates it must reach Berlin via the Balkans.

British units in bases retain their ZOCs, which can help in cutting National Supply. An unoccupied base becomes national territory upon Uprising/Rebellion

Iraq must trace National Supply either via Mosul - Turkey or via Basra - Persian Gulf - Abadan - Persia - Turkey. The Allies can quickly defeat an Iraqi Uprising by cutting both routes, which requires pre-placed units in both Habbiniya and Basra.

Persia must trace National Supply via Turkey. The Soviets can easily cut this.

Syria must also trace via Turkey. Two Allied units are normally required to cut this route while tying down the Syrians.

ME Rebellions

ME Rebellions can occur whenever Allied controlled ME Mandates (Iraq/ Syria/ Persia once conquered, or Palestine at any time) are left ungarrisoned. In the pressure of events this risk must occasionally be taken, but the Allies will find it unprofitable to take unnecessary chances with ME Rebellions.

Rebellions can be defeated like Uprisings. Palestine needs National Supply via Syria, but its 0 cv unit is easily overcome.

21.4 NORTH FRONT (NF)

The **North Front (NF)** consists of **Scandinavia** (Norway/Sweden/Finland), excepting **Southern Finland** (hexed area), which is in the **EF**, plus the **Arctic USSR**.

For **Weather**, Production and most Command purposes, the **North Front** is split between the **WF** and **EF**: Norway and Sweden are **WF**; Finland and the USSR are **EF** (see **EF/WF** boundary on the map).

However, (as for the **MF**), some special rules apply in the **NF**: **Extreme** Production costs for non-natives, alien HQ **disruption**, unit **Acclimatization** upon entry, **Arctic Maintenance** and some other special rules

Arctic Zone: The tan-colored part of the **NF** containing **Areas** (see **18.0**). **Arctic Maintenance** applies only in the **Arctic Zone**.

NF Temperate Zone: The southern parts of **Norway** and **Sweden** (hexes).

21.41 NF Units

As for the **MF**, there are special **North Front units**, as defined by blue circles on the label (listed in sidebar).

21.411 NF Residents

NF Residents have “**R**” in a blue circle on their labels. They are exempt from **Arctic Maintenance** (**21.461**) but are **restricted** to the **North Front**.

21.412 NF Expeditions

NF Expeditions have “**E**” in a blue circle on their labels. **British Brigade Groups** (**restricted** to **Britain/NF**) only take **-1 cv NF Acclimatization** and are exempt from **Arctic Maintenance** after Allied **DE FR**. The two Canadian mech corps gain these **NF** abilities after **DE 2F**.

21.413 NF Veterans

NF Veterans have “**V**” in a blue circle on their labels. Unrestricted, they incur only **-1 cv Acclimatization** entering the **NF** and are exempt from **Arctic Maintenance**.

21.414 NF Aliens

Units outside above 3 classes are **NF Aliens**. **NF Alien** units entering the **NF** lose **-2cv acclimatization** and **Aliens** in the **Arctic Zone** pay **Arctic Maintenance** (**21.461**).

21.415 Prohibited Units

SiegeGun, **Cavalry** and **SS** units are prohibited from the **Arctic Zone** (Forts OK).

21.42 NF Weather

No separate die-roll is made for **NF** weather. The **WF** portion has **WF** weather, and the **EF** portion has **EF** weather. **EF** and **WF** Weather die-rolls may provoke **Storms** in northern Sea Basins.

Frozen Seas: The **Gulf of Bothnia** and **White Sea** freeze in **Snow** weather, becoming **impassable** to **all Sea Movement/Supply** (including **LoCs**).

Axis Winter Paralysis: Axis Scandinavian units are **exempt** from Axis **Winter Paralysis** (**12.45**).

21.43 NF Command & Supply

NF Alien HQs can command normally in the **NF Temperate Zone**, but are **disrupted** in the **Arctic Zone**.

The German **Dietl THQ** (when within the **NF**) can command any Axis movement in the **NF** (only). Within the **NF**, it can provide **combat support** along with its **airstrike** (combat support/Air range = CV). **Dietl THQ** costs 5 PPs/cv and is **disrupted** in **Snow** weather.

Soviet Nth HQ. Outside the **NF**, the **Nth HQ** is **disrupted** and cannot blitz.

Scandinavian THQs can move national units **only**, but they can provide **SF airstrikes** and **combat support** to battles *within national territory*. They cost 5 PPs/cv and are **not disrupted** in **Snow**.

21.431 SHQ Cross-Command

Axis: OKW SHQ can command in the **Western NF** if located there, or at **half efficiency** from the **WF**. From **Copenhagen**, it can command at full efficiency that turn in either front, and at half efficiency in the other.

OKH SHQ can command in the **Eastern NF** if located there, or at **half efficiency** from the **EF**. From **Leningrad**, it can command at full efficiency in either front for that turn, at half efficiency in the other.

Allied: AF & SHAEF SHQs can command in the **NF** if located there, or from the **WF** at half efficiency. From **Glasgow**, they can command at full efficiency in **either** front that turn, and half efficiency in the other.

Soviet: STAVKA can command at full efficiency in the **NF** from any location.

21.44 NF Movement

21.441 NF Acclimatization

Units entering the **NF** from another front (**not** reinforcements) suffer **Acclimatization**. **All units that leave and re-enter the NF** must re-acclimatize.

Axis/Allies: **NF Expeditions** and **Veterans** lose **-1 cv Acclimatization**. **NF Aliens** lose **-2 cv Acclimatization**.

NF RESIDENTS [restricted to NF]

Norway:

- 1 Static Corps
- 2 Static Corps
- 3 Static Corps
- 4 Static Corps
- 5 Static Corps

NF EXPEDITIONS

Britain: [**BrigGps** restricted to **Britain/NF**]

- TA** Static *BrigGp* [**NF** reinf - restricted]
- HA** Static *BrigGp* [**NF** reinf - restricted]
- NX** Inf. *BrigGp* [**NF** reinf - restricted]
- 2 Cdn Mech Corps [**NF** reinf - if **2F**]
- 1 Cdn Mech Corps [**NF** reinf - if **2F**]

NF VETERANS

Germany:

- Dietl THQ** [**NF** reinf]
- 18 Mountain Corps [**NF** unit]
- 19 Infantry Corps [**NF** reinf]
- 19 Static Corps [**NF** reinf]
- 33 Infantry Corps [**NF** reinf]
- 33 Static Corps [**NF** reinf]
- 36 Mountain Corps [**NF** reinf]
- 70 Static Corps [**NF** reinf]
- 71 Fortress Corps [**NF** reinf]

Soviet Union:

- North HQ**
- 7 Guards Infantry Army
- 14 Infantry Army
- 25 Infantry Army
- 32 Infantry Army [*Reserve Army*]
- 52 Infantry Army [*Reserve Army*]

Finland:

- Mann THQ**
- 1 Infantry Corps
- 2 Infantry Corps
- 3 Infantry Corps
- 4 Infantry Corps
- 5 Infantry Corps
- 6 Infantry Corps
- 7 Static Corps

Sweden:

- Swe THQ**
- 1 Infantry Corps
- 2 Infantry Corps
- 3 Infantry Corps
- 4 Infantry Corps
- 5 Infantry Corps
- 6 Infantry Corps
- 7 Static Corps
- 8 Static Corps

Soviets: *NF Aliens* units entering the *NF* lose **-1 cv** *Acclimatization*.

Scandinavians (20.8): all units are **exempt** from *NF Acclimatization*.

NOTE: Units repulsed attempting to enter the *NF* by assault do not “arrive,” so do not *Acclimatize* until they succeed.

All units that leave and re-enter the *NF* must re-acclimatize.

21.442 Finnish Ski Troops

In **snow** Finnish **infantry** have **speed 2** within *home territory* (for *Pursuit* also).

21.45 *NF* Combat

Mountain units fire **DF/DF** in the *NF* regardless of *terrain*.

Finnish infantry fires **DF/DF** within *home territory*. **Swedish** infantry fires **SF/DF** within *home territory*.

Axis *NF* Airpower is limited to **DF** (minor **THQs: SF**), as for the *MF*.

Note: Dietl and Scandinavian THQs can support combat (see 21.43).

21.46 *NF* Production

NF Production is **not** tracked separately. *NF* Production sources accrue to the *WF* (Allies/Axis); or *EF* (Soviets). PPs spent in the *NF* are not subject to *Shipping Losses*.

Axis building in **Norway/Sweden** is paid for with *WF* Production; Axis building in **Finland/USSR** uses *EF* Production.

Allied building in the *NF* is always paid for with *WF* Production.

Soviet *NF* building is always paid for with *EF* Production.

21.461 Arctic Maintenance

NF Alien units occupying the *NF Arctic Zone* incur *Arctic Maintenance* of **-5 PPs/unit** of deducted each month.

21.462 Building *NF* Units

Units in the *NF* build using **EXTREME COSTS**, which are about 50% higher than normal (see 11.7; **Soviets use half Extreme Costs** after *GPWar*, see 20.53). **Scandinavians** are **exempt** (normal costs).

***NF* Unit Arrival.** Allied units arrive in friendly major ports and Soviet units in home cities as usual. Axis units can arrive in **Oslo** (a *Victory City*, also in *Stockholm*, if Axis). **Only *NF* units** eliminated in the *NF* are rebuildable there as **cadres**.

21.47 Invasions

21.471 Sea Invasions

- *Sea Invasions* and *Sea Assaults* into

or out of the *NF* must leave from *WF/EF* ports and must land in *NF* ports **only**. They are **NOT** allowed between *NF* ports.

- The Soviets (**only**) can **make *Sea Invasions*** (but not *Sea Assaults* 15.53) into **Snow** hexes (not during *Storms*).

21.472 Parachrops

- **Parachrops** into the *NF* are **prohibited** unless combined with a *Sea Invasion* into the same hex.

21.48 The Winter War

Beginning in **W'39**, the Soviets can initiate the Russo-Finnish *Winter War* with Soviet *Diplomatic Event WW*. This is **NOT** a *Declaration of War*; both Soviet and Finnish neutrality remain in effect during this ‘sideshow’ campaign.

The Allies play the Soviets and the Axis plays the Finns (and cannot *Declare War* on Finland during the *Winter War*).

See also **1939 Scenario** and the **ALLIED/ SOVIET DIPLOMACY** card.

21.481 Winter War Rules

- Upon *WW*, the Axis player sets up the Finns (**multiple** stacking allowed -- **ignore 20.61**) which **must** defend the *Mannerheim Line*: hexes (Vyborg and Vyborg NE1). Finland begins **100% Peacetime Production**.
- Finland is an **isolated minor (20.64)**, with no *Alliance Reactions*.
- Finland traces *National Supply* to Berlin (but **not** via frozen/ Soviet seas, eg: *Gulf of Bothnia* or *Gulf of Finland*). Note the provisions of **18.5 re: Areas and Rail Supply**.
- Finnish infantry moves 2 in snow and fires **DF/DF** within Finland/39.
- The Finnish THQ (**Mann**) can support combat and deliver **SF** airstrikes inside Finland (air/ *Combat Support Range* = CV).
- **Soviet forces may enter all of Finland**.
- Soviet Airpower fires **DF** and Soviet mech is treated as **armor**: it fires **DF/DF** (but cannot *sea assault*).
- *Winter War* ends with *Finnish Armistice*, *Finnish defeat*, or **DE FX** (*Finland joins Axis*).

21.482 Finnish Armistice

Once per game (Axis **POLITICS**), the Axis player can request **Finnish Armistice**, a negotiated settlement of *Winter War*. The Soviet player must immediately either **accept** or **reject**.

The Winter War

The *Winter War* costs the Soviets a lot of expensive HQ steps. What is the upside?

- Finnish *Armistice* (or Finland defeated) enables Soviet **DE S1** (and then **S2**), which reduce Soviet HQ costs from 20 PPs to 15 (then to 10). Failing this, Soviet HQ costs remain 20 PPs until Soviet *Emergency* occurs (which can be fatal)
- **DE WW** is also a prerequisite for Allied **DE FR** (*Finnish Relief*), itself a pre-requisite to Allied intervention in Norway.

Winter War Special Rules

Soviet Air / Mech **DF**. The Finns were woefully short of A/T and A-A weapons.

Finnish National Supply

The Finns are unable to trace *National Supply* through the Soviet-controlled *Gulf of Finland* or frozen *Gulf of Bothnia*. They must trace it by rail to Sweden and from there to Berlin by sea. Therefore Finnish *National Supply* depends on the rail line through Tampere and Oulu to Sweden.

Oulu is a *Region* (square area), so the rail line through it remains useable if engaged: the Soviets must capture Oulu to break the rail link and cut *National Supply*.

Tampere is a *District* (round area), so the rail link through it is cut if it is engaged. Therefore the Soviets will cut Finnish *National Supply* if they engage Tampere.

Finland must also maintain control of a rail line from Helsinki to Tampere to maintain *National Supply*. These rail lines are broken if they become engaged or disputed (by a Soviet **ZOC**). Therefore sea invasions into Turku or Kotka also pose threats to Finnish *National Supply*.

A) Soviets Accept Armistice:

- The USSR **annexes** Finnish Karelia, the area between the Finland 1939 and 1940 borders.
- Soviet forces inside Finland/40 must immediately *Withdraw* (**16.721**) to a Soviet location on the Finnish/40 border (no command required).
- Soviet DE **S1** *Red Army Reforms Begun* (reduced HQ costs) becomes possible (otherwise this requires **SG** or **SE**).
- **Finland** reverts to *inactive* neutrality within its revised borders. Surviving forces are removed to the PRO-AXIS NEUTRALS OB card at **current cv**. If it later becomes belligerent, its *Peacetime Production* is **100%** from this point.
- After Soviet *belligerence*, Axis DE **FL** (*Finland Limited War*) allows 4 German units into Petsamo/Oulu **only**.
- Axis DE **FX** (*Finland Joins Axis*) cannot occur unless the Axis controls **Leningrad**.
- Axis DE **SJ** *Sweden Joins Axis* cannot occur.

B) Soviets Reject Armistice:

- *Winter War* continues until Finnish *defeat* or **FX** occurs.
- The Axis still cannot intervene in Finland without a *Declaration of War* upon the USSR.
- Axis DE **SJ** *Sweden Joins Axis* becomes possible.

C) No Armistice Offer/Finland Defeated

- Finns are **permanently** removed from play. *Conquest* (**16.92**) applies to Finnish territory. Soviets gain **+2 PPs** (Helsinki/ Petsamo) and may occupy **all of Finland**.
- DE **S1** (*Red Army Reforms*) is enabled.

D) No Offer/Finland Undeclared

- If the USSR becomes *belligerent* with *Winter War* still ongoing, Axis DE **FX** (*Finland Joins Axis*) can occur, giving Germany full access to Finland and full control of Finnish troops.

21.49 Operation Weser

Operation Weser was the German invasion of Norway, control of which has significant effects, including:

- Allied *Naval Supremacy*
- Axis *Ore SeaRoute* (see **17.2**)
- Allied DEs **AB**, **EB**, & **TB**.

See **20.81** Norway. Also see **20.16** Axis Surprise; **10.21** National Supply; **18.5** Area Rail Supply; and **7.22** (0 cv Static units in combat).

21.491 Norway Expedition

Once Soviet DE **WW** (*Winter War*) has occurred, the Allies can do the following DEs (in order) which enable them to intervene in Norway:

- **FR** (*Finnish Relief*).
- **NP** (*Norway Expedition Prepared*) Norway becomes *Ambivalent* (**16.711**) to resisting the *Allies*: its units *Repulse* them weakly and may *Capitulate* (**7.7**), and Norway may *Surrender*.
- **NX**: (*Norway Expedition Approved*) The Allies can *Declare War* on Norway despite *Phony War* (**20.43**) and *without* committing *Betrayal* (**16.41**).

21.492 Denmark Submits

Denmark is immediately *defeated* by Axis *Diplomatic Event* **DS**.

Swedish Compliance. Upon **DS**, Sweden cedes the Axis **1 PP** of mineral production (Axis +2 PPs) and *Rail Transit* rights through Sweden (*but no use of Swedish ports* -- see sidebar). Allied DE **SC** cancels *Compliance*.

Note: *Compliance* does **not** block *National Supply* (see **10.21**).

21.493 Weser Surprise

If Norway is *surprised* (**20.16**) while *Phony War* (**20.43**) is in effect, in the Axis player-turn following DE **DS**:

- The AXIS has temporary **Naval Supremacy** within the *Northern Seaway* (**15.81**) only: *Invasion Range* is **2** seas (*LongRange*: 4 seas), and *Interdiction*/ *Assault* repulses are modified accordingly.

NOTE: *Surprised neutrals* have no *Sea Interdiction*, and only their *fortified ports* can *repulse* assaults.

- All German **NF** *infantry/mountain* units invade Norway as *amphibious* units (reduced *Sea Assault Repulse*; *Long-Range* invasions possible).

21.494 Norway Defeat

Norway is *defeated* as a **major** power (Oslo is lost **and** all units are eliminated).

Remember: 0 cv static units engaged alone in a **Combat** phase are eliminated (not when reduced to 0 cv in a **Supply** phase).

Also, see **16.92 Conquest** regarding Norwegian territory after *defeat*.

If Allied DE **NP** has occurred, Norway may *Surrender* to the Allies and (one unit may *defect* -- see **16.83**).

Norway: Zone of Destiny

The Norway Campaign costs the Axis a lot of expensive HQ steps. What is the upside?

- *Naval Supremacy*. Together with Italian *belligerence*, Axis control of the Northern Seaway gains them *Naval Parity*.
- Axis *Ore*. Axis loss of the *Ore Searoute* (see **17.2**) from Narvik to Berlin loses them 5 PPs/month until restored.
- *Naval Bases*. Allied DEs **AB** and **EB** (possible with undisputed Allied control Norwegian naval bases) enable greater Allied success in the Battle of the Atlantic, giving them +5 PPs/month in each case. Allied DE **TB** costs the Axis -5 PPs/month.

Swedish Compliance

Compliance is partial *Cooperation*. The Swedes cede 1 mineral PP, which costs them 1 PP of *Peacetime Production*, but yields +2 Axis PPs (double resource PPs).

The ceded *Rail Transit* rights do **not** allow Axis units to remain inside Sweden or any Axis use of Swedish ports. Axis units can rail through Sweden but not stop there (*Axis may use the Rail Straits for Movement and Supply*).

Note that isolated Axis units (Narvik) can trace supply through Sweden if necessary.

Weser Surprise

Despite their own plans to invade Norway, the British were caught completely off guard by the audacious German plan.

The Norway Campaign

Temporary *Naval Supremacy* allows the Axis to invade all the historical targets if they expend a maximum effort. Less than maximum effort often affords the British good intervention opportunities and the chance of an extended fight.

The British can sea move into any Norwegian ports not invaded by Germany. They can also counter-invade (if prepared) into invaded ports to retain control after Norway is defeated. Norway cannot be defeated on the first turn even if Oslo is taken because it is defeated as a major power (Oslo lost and all units eliminated). Even if Oslo is immediately lost and all Norwegian units attrit one step due to loss of *National Supply*, 0 cv static units are not eliminated until the next combat phase giving the British time to counter-invade and preserve Allied control of that port (or naval base!)

The Axis must deploy its invasion forces efficiently to make best use of Temporary *Naval Supremacy*.

Norwegian Leads invaders (Bergen or Trondheim) should set up in Hamburg (westernmost port to westernmost ports).

Invaders of Narvik should set up in Stettin (easternmost port to easternmost port).

Skagerrak invaders (Kristiansand or Oslo) should set up in Rostock (middle ports).

22.1 SCENARIOS

Scenarios specify game starting conditions. The **Campaign Game** starts in **September, 1939**. The other **Scenarios** begin in **Summers (June I, unless otherwise mentioned in Scenario Special rules)** of the succeeding years.

The full 1939-45 *EuroFront* **Campaign Game** plays in ± 60 hours, comparatively quickly for this size of game. Team play can speed things up considerably. The late-war **Scenarios** are naturally shorter.

22.11 Short Games

For those with limited time or space, some shorter and smaller **EuroFront** mini-games are offered (see the **1940** and **1944** Scenarios).

22.2 SCENARIO SETUP

See section **3.0 STARTING PLAY** regarding game options and arranging forces on OB CARDS.

All **Scenarios** state *Starting Forces* and controlled territory for each faction, which faction must set up first, and which has the **Initiative** (first turn). To save time, players should set up simultaneously, the faction setting up last having the last adjustment.

NOTE: Setup requirements do not imply that units must remain in that location.

Scenarios also list **Reinforcement** units that enter the game in succeeding game months (*those arriving in the first month must setup in valid Arrival Locations*). The GAME RECORD sheets also prompt players for reinforcement arrival.

1939 Campaign Game

Select **1939 Starting Forces** for all belligerent powers (plus Soviets) as found on the OB CARDS. Deploy as directed in **1939 Scenario** rules.

With the markers provided (and/or on the *Game Record* sheet), record starting *Production Levels* for each side on the Production Tracks. Note current Air Firepower for each side (**SF**, **DF**, **TF**) on the *Game Record* sheet.

Note the **1939** scenario *Special Rules*, and then begin the first fortnight of play.

Note: No Production or Diplomacy phase precedes the first fortnight of any game. They are factored into the Starting Forces and conditions given.

1940-44 Scenarios

Available Forces. Assuming all

units have been located on the relevant OB Cards, units already arrived "in play" on any given starting date are easily determined, and upcoming reinforcements are arranged in order.

Example: 1940 Available Forces include 1939 Starting Forces plus 1939 Reinforcements.

To begin a **EuroFront** scenario, players select their starting units from *Available Forces*. Then, referring to the *Starting Forces* charts for that **Scenario**, each side then assigns the proper **number** and **strength** (cv) of each unit type to the various fronts.

Unit cv can be assigned as desired, so long as the total cv of each unit type matches that given for that *Front* (*but SS unit cv cannot be greater than the average for that unit type*). Units left over are currently eliminated (but can be rebuilt).

Deploy these forces on each *Front* as instructed in the *Scenario* rules. Record the current *Production Levels* and *Airpower* on each *Front*.

Note all scenario **Special Rules**, and begin the first fortnight of play (omitting **PRODUCTION** and **DIPLOMACY** phases as usual).

22.3 STARTLINES

Scenario **Startlines** separate the territories of the combatants (where these are not national frontiers). Most **Startlines** are printed on the maps. **All Startlines** are described in the *Scenario* instructions.

22.31 Frontline Hexes

Hexes bordering a **Startline** are termed **Frontline** hexes. To begin a **Scenario**, players usually must occupy all **Frontline** hexes with at least 1 unit.

Note: Only MF Frontline road hexes must be occupied on setup.

Otherwise players deploy forces as desired within friendly territory (in **supplied** or **fortress**, or **base** locations only).

22.4 CONTINUITY

Season Breaks occur when a new Summer or Winter *Season* begins (just before December or June *Production*).

Certain game parameters, such as Basic *Production* and *Airpower* may change at *Season Breaks*. See **3.3**.

Historical Setups.

Follow the *Historical Setup* directions, consulting the *Historical OB* (if any).

Semi-Historical Setups

Available Forces at any given starting date are easily determined using the relevant OB Cards, and upcoming reinforcements are arranged in order.

Players select their starting units from *Available Forces*, assigning unit cv as desired, so long as number of units and a total CV for each unit-type agree with the *Starting Forces* table. Deploy starting forces as directed by *Semi-Historical Setup* instructions.

Surplus *Available Forces* units that are not included in listed *Starting Forces* have been eliminated in a previous scenario, but are eligible for rebuilding.

Free Setups

These setups allow players more flexibility in unit deployment, at the cost of historical accuracy. Determine *Available Forces* as above and deploy them as desired.

Free Setup Example

If a scenario lists *Armor: 5 units / 13 cv*, the player can set any individual armor unit strengths desired, as long as there are 5 armor units totaling 13 cv.

SS Units & Free Setups

SS units cannot start at cv greater than average cv [round down] for that German unit-type on that *Front*.

Game Start

In all **Scenarios**, **Production** and **Diplomacy** are omitted from the first month of play. They have already been factored into the start data.

1939: ASSAULT ON POLAND

AXIS						
	(EAST) ¹		WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	3 ²	9	1 ³	3		
Armor	5	15	1	1		
Mech						
Infantry	12	34	7	17		
Mountain	1	2	1 ⁴	2		
Para						
Fort			1	1		
Static	1	0				
Cavalry						
SAT Infantry						
IT Infantry						
IT Mech						
IT Static						
PPs	1		37 ⁵			
Air Power	TF		TF			

¹ East Front not active. Deploy on Polish border.
² Including OKH ³ OKW ⁴ 18 Mtn (NF Vet)
⁵ Includes Czechoslovakia 3PPs

SOVIET		
	EAST	
	Unit	CV
HQs	7 ¹	15
Armor		
Mech	4 ²	7
Infantry	17	39
Shock		
Cavalry	3	3
Amphibious		
Mountain	2	2
BH R/P		
PPs	55/3	
Air Power	SF	

¹ Including Stavka, III cv
² 1 unit Guards

ALLIED				
	WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
FRENCH				
HQs	3 ¹	4		
Mech	2	5		
Infantry	6	13	1	1
Mountain	2	2		
Fort	3	11		
Static			4	3
BRITISH	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	3 ²	3	1 ³	2
Armor	1	1		
Mech	3	4	2	2
Infantry	3	6	2	4
Amphibious	1	2		
Static	3 ⁴	4		
BH R/P				
PPs	24			
Air Power	SF			

¹ Including GQG
² Including AF
³ ME THQ
⁴ TA & Gibraltar / Malta garrisons

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
OCT '39	33 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
OCT '39	33 Corps	Static 0
NOV '39	Dietl THQ	THQ III
NOV '39	36 Mtn Corps	Mountain 1
DEC '39	81 Fortress Corps	Fort 1
DEC '39	82 Fortress Corps	Fort 1
DEC '39	16 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
DEC '39	35 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JAN '40	AG "Center"	HQ 0
JAN '40	19 Inf Corps	Infantry 3
FEB '40	19 Corps	Static 2
FEB '40	38 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
FEB '40	39 Pzr Corps	Armor 1
FEB '40	Den Inf Corps	Infantry 1
MAR '40	41 Pzr Corps	Armor 1
MAR '40	42 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
APR '40	1 Para Corps	Para 1
APR '40	43 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
APR '40	44 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
APR '40	29 Inf Corps	Infantry 1

ALLIED REINFORCEMENTS		
OCT '39	Home Army	Static 0
NOV '39	2 Cdn Mech Corps	Mech 1
JAN '40	Nwy Exp Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JAN '40	French 1 Tk Gp	Armor 1
MAR '40	French 2 Tk Gp	Armor 1

SOVIET REINFORCEMENTS		
OCT '39	1 Gds Mech Corps	GdsMech 1
DEC '39	2 Gds Mech Corps	GdsMech 1
APR '40	4 Gds Mech Corps	GdsMech 1

1939: ASSAULT ON POLAND

1939: ASSAULT ON POLAND

AXIS

Germany: includes Austria and East Prussia, and controls Czechoslovakia. The Axis is at war with the ALLIES.

ALLIES

Britain: controls Gibraltar, Malta, Egypt, Sudan, Palestine, Afghanistan, India, Aden, Kenya, and South Africa.

France: includes Corsica. Controls Morocco, West Africa, Algeria, and Tunisia.

Poland: excludes Danzig (see below). Allied *Naval Supremacy* is in effect.

NEUTRALS

Soviet Union: The Allied/Soviet side sets up and plays the Soviet Union. See Soviet Union neutrality rules (20.51). 1939 Finnish Borders are in effect.

Baltic States (Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia) are unarmed neutral countries. Under the *Molotov Pact* (see #2 below), Axis forces cannot enter their territory without a Declaration of War upon the Soviet Union.

All other powers are also neutral (*ME Mandates are Cooperating with the Allies, none with the Axis*).

1939 BORDERS

Danzig is a demilitarized Free City and cannot be occupied by either Axis or Polish units upon setup (adjacent hexes are not necessarily *Frontline* hexes). It may be subsequently entered by either side without a *Declaration of War*.

Konigsberg can produce Axis PPs while Danzig is neutral (it has no SeaPower).

Poland, Rumania, and Finland. Use the 1939 borders.

FRONTS

Only the *West Front* is active. If the *East Front* becomes active (Soviet belligerence), the Axis can initially Allocate 0-40 PPs to the *EF*. Axis SHQ Cross-Command (5.722) is in effect regarding Poland, which is partly in the *EF*, partly in the *WF*.

If the *Med Front* becomes active (Italian belligerence), both sides can initially Allocate 0-15 PPs to the *MF*.

1939: HISTORICAL GAME

NOTE: see *Winter War and Operation Weser* scenarios, p. 71.

ALLIES

Set up first, but move second.

Britain: Set up according to the *ALLIES 1939-41* OB card (also see 20.31)

Poland: Set up in Poland according to the *PRO-ALLIED NEUTRALS* OB card (no stacking). **Forward Defense:** all *Frontline* hexes adjacent to Axis territory *except those adjacent to E. Prussia must be occupied*.

Forward Defense: the Polish 4cv armies must set up on the western frontier (adjacent to Pomerania/Silesia/Czechoslovakia).

France: Units set up according to the *ALLIES 1939-41* OB card. French units (except *MF* Residents) are restricted to France, Belgium and adjacent countries. At least one unit (*HQs are units!*) must be deployed in each major city and in each hex bordering Germany or Italy. The Maginot Line fort units must set up in Metz, Strasbourg, and Mulhouse and cannot be moved.

Sedan Appendix: One French unit can set up in (and continue to occupy) the Sedan/Philippeville hex, even while Belgium remains neutral.

Med Front units (orange circles) set up in/adjacent to French North Africa (Tunisia, Morocco and Algeria) ports, at least one unit per colony. They are restricted to the *MF*.

SOVIET UNION

Units must set up within Soviet territory (1939 borders) according to the *SOVIETS 1939* OB card, observing the Military District (MD) boundaries as defined below. All hexes bordering on Poland and Rumania must be occupied. Red Army Purge is in effect (HQ steps cost 20 PPs / cadres 40 PPs).

Northern MD: Must set up in the Arctic Zone on the Finnish border.

Leningrad MD: Must set up in/adjacent to Leningrad, or along the Finnish, Estonian or Latvian border.

Western MD: Must set up on the Polish border, north of the Pripet River.

Ukrainian MD: Must set up on the Polish border, south of the Pripet River.

Southern MD: Must set up on the Rumanian border.

Moscow MD: Must set up with 2 hexes of Moscow.

Caucasus MD: Must set up on the Turkish border.

AXIS

Set up second and move first.

Germany: Units set up according to the *GERMANY 1939-40* OB card, observing Army Group (AGp) boundaries as shown below. All *Frontline* hexes bordering on France, Belgium or Poland (except those inside E. Prussia) must contain at least 1 unit.

AGp East Prussia: Must set up in East Prussia.

AGp Pomerania: Must set up on the Polish border, north of the Oder River.

AGp Silesia: Must set up on the Polish border, south of the Oder River.

AGp Bohemia: Must set up in Czechoslovakia, in or NW of Brno/Ostrava (Bohemia/Slovakia border is in gray).

AGp Slovakia: Must set up in Czechoslovakia, SE of Brno/Ostrava.

AGp West: Must set up on the French, Belgian, or Dutch border, or in a German *WF* port.

1939 SEMI-HISTORICAL GAME

As for 1939 Historical Game, except:

- Axis units in Army Groups Pomerania, Silesia, Bohemia, and Slovakia can be interchanged freely. Army Groups East Prussia and West set up as directed.
- Allied/Soviet units need not set up at historical cv, as long as total units/total cv (as per Starting Forces table) are preserved. *Polish 4cv units need not set up along the western frontier.*

1939 FREE SETUP GAME

As for 1939 Semi-Historical Game, except:

- All Axis units can set up freely within friendly territory, except Army Group East Prussia must set up there.
- Allied forces (including Maginot Line forts) can set up freely within national territory. *MF* Residents remain restricted to the *MF*.

1939: ASSAULT ON POLAND

1939 SPECIAL RULES

1) Late Start

The **1939** scenario begins in September, 1939. Germany is at War with Poland, Britain and France.

2) Poland

Poland is defeated as a Minor Power (16.9). It can trace *National Supply* to Murmansk (and on to London) via neutral Soviet territory. But since *Rail/Sea Supply* cannot be traced through neutral nations, Poland is an *Isolated Minor* (20.64), and can only build with its 4 national PPs.

If the USSR becomes belligerent, Poland can trace *Rail/Sea Supply* to London and build using Allied **WF** PPs.

3) Surprise

During the first fortnight the Polish HQ is disrupted, and no assaults can be repulsed (see 20.16).

4) Molotov Pact (see 20.51)

The Soviets are restricted to the USSR in their first turn, but may enter E. Poland in the second fortnight.

In October Diplomacy, the Soviets can do DE PP, which annexes Eastern Poland and the Baltic States into the USSR (allowing strategic movement and unit building there). [*Germany annexes Western Poland and Danzig upon Polish defeat.*]

The Axis must exit all units from E. Poland by the end of that month: failure to do so equals a Declaration of War on the USSR. Both sides have one month to garrison the new Axis-Soviet border hexes to avoid Border Disputes (16.42).

This Pact ends if the Soviets Mobilize or the Axis Declares War on the USSR.

5) Naval Supremacy

The Allies have *Naval Supremacy*, and normally maintain it *until they lose use of the Middle Seaway* (normally when Italy becomes belligerent), assuming that the Axis also is blocking its *Northern Seaway*.

6) Phony War

Once Poland is defeated, the Axis can do DE PW (Phony War), which generally prohibits Allied Declarations of War and limits French building to one step per month (see 20.43).

7) Scenario Transition (Dec/39)

WINTER '39	AXIS			ALLIED			SOV
	WF	MF	EF	WF	MF	EF	

Production	-	•	•	+5	•	-
Airpower	TF	DF	TF	SF	SF	SF

8) Winter Initiative

If the East Front becomes active, the order of Player-Turns will depend on East Front weather (see 12.7).

9) W'39: The Winter War

Beginning Winter 1939 (Dec/39), the Soviets can initiate a *Winter War* with Finland by choosing DE **WW**. Obtaining a Finnish Armistice in the *Winter War* enables the Soviets to begin reducing their HQ costs from 20 PPs to 10 PPs.

NOTE: Neither the USSR nor Finland becomes belligerent for the Winter War: both remain neutral, at Peacetime Production (100% for Finland, 1/3rd for the Soviets).

Finland is played as an Isolated Neutral, tracing *National Supply* to Berlin (via Oulu-Sweden, as not via frozen seas).

See *Winter War* special rules in **21.48**.

10) W'39: Operation Weser

The Norway Campaign. Beginning March, 1940 (certain **WF** Dry weather), the Axis can do DE **DS**, which delivers Denmark to the Axis, clearing the way for *Operation Weser* (invasion of Norway) with a turn of Temporary Naval Supremacy. The Axis can invade only into **NF** ports.

If Allied, Norway can trace *National Supply* to London via Sweden, the USSR and the sea. Remember that:

- 1) fortified ports can repulse assaults even if Surprised,
 - 2) Norway is defeated as a major power, and
 - 3) 0 cv static units engaged alone are not eliminated until a combat phase.
- See also the Area Supply rules.

Control of Norway is crucial regarding the Axis Ore SeaRoute (see 17.2), Allies DEs AB (Atlantic Barrage) and EB (Effective Blockade) and Naval Supremacy.

Operation Weser special rules are outlined in **21.49**.

1939 HISTORICAL DIPLOMACY		
	ALLIES	AXIS
Oct 39	PP	•
Nov 39	CL	PW
Dec 39	WW	•
Jan 40	FR	•
Feb 40	NP	•
Mar 40	NX	DS
Apr 40	S1	•
May 40	S1	•

1939 GAME COMMENTARY

1939 is largely about planning and efficiency. If the Axis follows a historical strategy, it will consist of a quick, one-sided Polish Campaign, followed by a pair of preliminary campaigns requiring tight planning and execution.

The Axis must efficiently defeat Poland, garrison the Curzon Line, and redeploy most of the army west for Norway and France, not neglecting the Peace Offer DE PW. Then they must deploy forces for *Operation Weser* by March, and execute the multiple sea invasions and followup campaign that should bring them victory in this important preliminary.

To conserve costly HQ steps, the Soviets must efficiently occupy Eastern Poland and deploy adequate forces for the *Winter War*. In December/39, they should start the *Winter War*, which, though costly, enables essential Red Army Reforms.

The Allies must decide early what their building emphasis will be (strong BEF/France, strong Norway Expedition, strong *Med Front*, strong Britain, or balanced), as *Phony War* will quickly limit Allied building options. Moving a strong BEF to France will greatly strengthen France and ensure Solidarity when the inevitable attack comes. Pre-positioning **NF** units in ports will allow the Allies to challenge the Axis in Norway if the situation is favorable. Defending Norway with its very thin forces presents some interesting choices.

NOTE: Beginners should try a few Winter War and Operation Weser "practice runs" using the following mini-scenarios before assaying 1939 in earnest. See next page for details.

1939: ASSAULT ON POLAND

1939A: WINTER WAR

	FINNISH		SOVIET	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	1 ¹	3	4 ²	8
Infantry	6	10	5 ³	14
Mech (DF/DF)			4 ⁴	9
Static	1	0		
NF HQs			1	2
NF Infantry			3 ³	7
Moscow HQ			1	1
PPs	2		18	
Air Power	SF		DF	
¹ Mann THQ ² Includes STAVKA & West				
³ Includes 1 Guards unit ⁴ Includes 3 Gds units				

1939A: Winter War Introductory Scenario

Try this scenario before playing the full 1939 scenario.

Situation

Start in Dec., 1939. The USSR has annexed E. Poland and the Baltic States. Play is limited to the USSR & Finland 1939.

The Soviets have done DE WW, initiating the Winter War. Use the *Winter War* Special Rules as per 21.48.

Finland is an Isolated Minor (20.64), tracing National Supply to Berlin (NOT via frozen seas, e.g., Gulf of Bothnia).

Setup

Axis: set up first, and move second.

Finns: Deploy Finnish units inside Finland (can stack).

Soviets: set up second, and move first.

Deploy main units within 1 hex of Leningrad or Tallinn.

Deploy **NF** units in the North Front.

Deploy Moscow HQ within 2 hexes of Moscow.

Victory

Length: Scenario ends after March 1940 (4 months).

Victory: *COUNT* Soviet HQ CV remaining + Finnish units eliminated at Armistice (must be accepted).

Decisive Axis Victory: Finland undefeated / no Armistice.

Minor Axis Victory: Finnish Armistice. *COUNT* < 10

Minor Soviet Victory: Finnish Armistice. *COUNT* >= 10.

Major Soviet Victory: Finland defeated (no Armistice).

Winter War Notes

The USSR needs to win the Winter War to reduce its crippling 20 PP HQ costs (Red Army Reform). The Finns are tough and so is their home terrain. With the Gulf of Bothnia frozen, the Finns must trace National Supply through Oulu and Sweden. Cutting this supply line or capturing Helsinki will finish the campaign. Options include direct assault through the isthmus, sea landings at Turku or Kotka, northern overland drives or a combination of the above. Soviet DF Airpower and DF mech fire help a lot.

1939B OPERATION WESER

	BRITISH		GERMAN	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	3 ¹	6	6 ²	17
Armor	1	1		
Mech	4	10		
Infantry	4 ³	12	3 ³	8
Mountain			2 ³	8
Amphibious	1	4		
Static	2 ³	4	3 ³	6
PPs	29	[5]	45	[5]
Air Power	SF		DF	
¹ Includes AF ² Incl. Dietl THQ, OKH, OKW				
³ Includes 2 NF units				

1939B: Operation Weser Introductory Scenario

Try this scenario before playing the full 1939 scenario.

Situation

Start in March, 1940. Play is restricted to Germany, Calais, Britain, Denmark and Norway. Germany has done DE DS, giving it control of Denmark. Use 21.49 *Operation Weser* Special Rules.

Important: In May, both Axis and Allied Production drop to 5 PPs (*Battle of France* underway).

Setup

Allies (Britain only): set up first, and move second.

Deploy BEF (HQ II, Mech 4, Mech 3, Inf 4) in Calais. Deploy all other units in Britain (ports recommended).

Axis: set up second, and move first. Recommended setup:

Bremen: OKH III, Inf 2.

Hamburg: HQ III, **NF** Mtn 4, **NF** Inf 3, **NF** Static 2.

Rostock: HQ II, **NF** Mtn 4, **NF** THQ III, OKW III.

Stettin: HQ III, **NF** Inf 3, **NF** Static 2, Static 2.

Victory

Length: Scenario ends after June 1940 (4 months).

Victory: *COUNT* Axis HQ CV – Allied HQ CV doubled.

Major Axis Victory: Norway conquered *COUNT* > 0

Minor Axis Victory: Norway defeated, *COUNT* > 0

Minor Allied Victory: Norway defeated, *COUNT* <= 0

Decisive Allied Victory: Norway undefeated.

Operation Weser Notes

The Axis fear Allied control of Norway: loss of the Ore Sea Route, Atlantic Barrage, and Allied Naval Supremacy are very damaging. Spring 1940 is their best shot, and if they don't take it the British may. The operation is technically demanding (hence the need for a few "practice runs"). There are many offensive possibilities, but suffice to say that the most expensive are the surest. If the commitment is half-hearted or unlucky, a strong British response can save Norway.

Warning: In a full EuF game, a maximal Allied effort in Norway has serious negative effects in other theaters.

1940: ASSAULT ON FRANCE

AXIS								
	EAST ¹		WEST		MED		NORTH	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs			5 ²	13			1 ³	2
Armor			8	18				
Mech								
Infantry	6	8	21	76			2	4
Mountain			1	3			2	5
Para			1	1				
Fort	3	3						
Static	1	0					2	2
Cavalry								
SAT Infantry								
IT Infantry								
IT Mech								
IT Static								
PPs			45 ⁴					
Air Power	TF		TF		(DF)		DF	

¹ These units are garrisoning the *Curzon Line*
² SHQs: 5 CV total; Field HQs: 8 CV total
³ THQ
⁴ *Ore SeaRoute* lost (5 PPs have been deducted).

SOVIET				
	EAST		NOR	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	7	1	0
Armor				
Mech	7 ²	12		
Infantry	14 ²	35	3	5
Shock				
Cavalry	3	3		
Amphib				
Mountn	2	3		
BH R/P				
PPs	56/3			
Air Power	SF			

¹ Includes **Stavka**
² Includes 4 *Guards*

ALLIED						
	WEST		MED		NOR	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
FRENCH						
HQs	3 ¹	5				
Armor	2	3				
Mech	2	5				
Infantry	6	17	1	1		
Mountn	2	3				
Fort	3	11				
Static			4	3		
BRITISH	Unit	CV	Unit	CV		
HQs	3 ²	4	1 ³	2		
Armor	1	2				
Mech	4	10	2 ⁴	2		
Infantry	3	9	2 ⁴	4	1	1
Amphib	1	4				
Static	2 ⁵	3				
BH R/P						
PPs	34	(+5) ⁶				
Air Power	SF		SF			

¹ Includes **GQG** ² Includes **AF**
³ **ME THQ** ⁴ incl. *HabF/PaF/Ind*
⁵ *Gib/Malta* garrisons
⁶ Basic Production increases +5

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '40	AGp 'G'	HQ 0
NOV '40	25 Corps	Static 0
NOV '40	20 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
DEC '40	AGp 'A'	HQ 0
DEC '40	50 Mech Corps	Mech 1
DEC '40	52 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
DEC '40	59 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
DEC '40	61 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JAN '41	AGp 'E'	HQ 0
FEB '41	AGp Afrika*	HQ 0
FEB '41	55 Mech Corps	Mech 1
MAR '41	DAK Pzr Corps*	Elite Armor 1
MAR '41	3 Pzr Corps	Armor 1
MAR '41	40 Pzr Corps	Armor 1
MAR '41	53 Mech Corps	Mech 1
MAR '41	57 Pzr Corps	Armor 1
APR '41	54 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
MAY '41	70 Corps†	Static 0

May arrive in: **Med Front* [Tripoli] †*North Front* [Oslo]

ALLIED REINFORCEMENTS		
MAY '41	Br 2 Para Corps	Para 1

SOVIET REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '40	37 Army	Infantry 1
JUL '40	4 Tk Corps	Armor 1
SEP '40	8 Tk Corps	Armor 1
NOV '40	10 Tk Corps	Armor 1
DEC '40	11 Tk Corps	Armor 1
JAN '41	26 Army	Infantry 1
FEB '41	9 Tk Corps	Armor 1
MAR '41	18 Army	Infantry 1
APR '41	7 Tk Corps	Armor 1
APR '41	Coastal Army	Amphibious 1
MAY '41	12 Tk Corps	Armor 1
MAY '41	27 Army	Infantry 1

1940: ASSAULT ON FRANCE

Axis

Germany (includes Danzig). Controls Czechoslovakia, W. Poland, Denmark, and Norway (except Narvik).

Narvik is an enemy battle location (Allies are Original Defender), so the Axis Ore SeaRoute is broken (-5 PPs). **DS** is in effect (Axis +2 PPs & Swedish Compliance).

Allies

Britain controls Gibraltar, Malta, Egypt, Palestine, Aden, Sudan, Kenya, South Africa, Afghanistan and India.

France (inc. Corsica). Controls Morocco, West Africa, Algeria, and Tunisia.

Poland is defeated. Allied **Naval Supremacy** and *Phony War* are in effect.

Neutrals

Soviet Union (includes E. Poland and the Baltic States). The *Molotov Pact* and *Finnish Armistice* (Feb/40) are in effect. **CL** has occurred.

All other powers in Europe remain neutral. No neutrals are Cooperating (Sweden is Complying, see DE **DS**).

1940 Borders

Rumania 1939 includes Bessarabia and Transylvania.

Active Fronts

Only the *West Front* is active. If the *Med Front* becomes active due to Italian belligerence, both sides can allocate 0-15 PPs to it. If the *East Front* becomes active due to Soviet belligerence, the Axis can allocate 0-40 PPs to it.

1940 Semi-Historical Game

ALLIES: set up first, but move second.

Britain: Gibraltar/Malta garrisons (tan circles) deploy in those fortresses, all others (except BEF) set up in Britain.

BEF: A maximum of 4 British units can set up in France, in/adjacent to Lille. *NOTE: British HQs in France are subject to Sea Supply costs (15 PPs/step) unless in/adjacent to a major port.*

NF: NX infantry starts (1 cv) in Narvik (engaged, Original Defender).

MF: The 3 **MF Resident** brigade groups (2cv max) start in Mid East bases/ports. The other 2 **MF Residents** (ME & WDF) start in separate Egyptian ports. All 5 units are restricted.

France: Deploy at least 1 unit in each major city and in each hex bordering Germany or Italy.

Maginot Line: the 3 fort units must set up in Metz, Strasbourg, and

Mulhouse and cannot be moved.

Sedan Appendix: 1 French unit can set up and remain in the Philippeville/Sedan hex while Belgium is neutral.

MF Residents set up in/adjacent to French North African ports, at least one unit per colony. They are restricted to the **MF**.

Soviet Union: Set up within Soviet territory. All *Frontline* hexes bordering on Axis territory must be occupied. Two units must set up in/adjacent to both Moscow and Leningrad, and one unit in/adjacent to both Minsk & Kiev. **NF** units (blue circle) must deploy in the *Arctic Zone*. All 4 cities on the Turkish border must be occupied (see DE **TX**). *Finnish Armistice* occurred in Feb/40. DEs **S1** and **CL** are in effect.

AXIS: Set up second and moves first.

Germany: Units set up in Axis territory, with at least 1 unit in each *Frontline* hex bordering France and the USSR.

EAST units must set up in W. Poland, E. Prussia or Czechoslovakia; **WEST** units in Germany or Denmark.

Note: "Germany" includes E Prussia, so "WEST" units may also deploy there.

One **NORTH** unit starts engaged in Narvik (*Original Attacker*) and one in Trondheim. The rest set up in southern Norway (*outside the Arctic Zone*).

1940 Free Deployment Game

Deploy as above, except Allied West forces and Axis forces can freely deploy anywhere within friendly territory. Neither side can increase (but can decrease) the number or CV of units in the **MF** or **NF**. All *Frontline* hexes must be occupied.

1940 SPECIAL RULES

1) Early Start

The 1940 game begins in May, one month early. The PP figures listed (e.g., Allies 34) apply to June Production.

2) Operation Yellow

See 20.16 *Axis Surprise Attacks*, 20.41 *French Forces* (Artillery & Sedan Appendix), 20.44 *French Morale*, and 20.46 *French Armistice*.

See also 20.72 *Belgium* (*Eben Emael*) and 20.42 *Gamelin* (Allied HQs *disrupted* and cannot Blitz while **Belgium** is *Surprised*).

3) Allied Command & Supply

See 5.34 *Allied Command Coordination*.

4) Italian Belligerence

Italy will join the Axis by Diplomatic

Event IX as France crumbles or following French defeat. When deploying Italian forces, add *Peacetime Production* (16.32) to Italian forces (Italian Production is 8 PPs).

NOTE: Italian Peacetime Production spent in the Med Front incurs double MF costs. Peacetime Production cannot be used for units in unsupplied locations (Ethiopia).

This activates (21.32) the *Med Front*. **Nsxt** Production, both sides must make **MF Allocations** and the Italian *Lib* mech and British ANZ **MF** reinforcements arrive.

5) Naval Supremacy

While Italy remains neutral, the Allies will have Naval Supremacy. However, when Italy enters the war Allied use of the Middle Seaway is lost and Naval Parity comes into effect (assuming the Axis has a Northern Seaway), reducing Allied naval capabilities. See 15.8.

6) Scenario Transition (Dec/40)

WINTER '40	AXIS			ALLIED		SOV
	WF	MF	EF	WF	MF	EF
Production	-	•	•	+5	•	+6
Airpower	DF	DF	TF	SF	SF	SF

Allied and Axis **MF** Allocations [**MF** active] can be raised by 5 PPs. Axis **EF** Allocations cannot be increased.

7) Weather Initiative

The Axis has first Player-Turn in the **MF/ WF**, but the Soviets have the first Player-Turn in **EF** Snow fortnights. Hence, the order of turns will be Axis/Allies/Soviets until Snow arrives on the **EF**, then Soviets/Axis/Allies until Mud arrives. See 12.7.

8) Rommel and the Afrika Korps

The German Afrika HQ (Rommel) and DAK armor reinforcements can arrive in the Med Front (Tripoli) without acclimatization. Within the **MF**, Afrika HQ moves 3 hexes (as a mechanized unit) and DAK is an elite armor unit which fires TF (QF offensively in Desert).

9) Mid East Uprisings

If the Axis gains *Balkan Pacification* (17.4), ME Uprisings (Axis DE **ME**) can occur. It is advisable that the British have 3 units in the MidEast at this juncture.

1940: ASSAULT ON FRANCE

1940 SCENARIO NOTES

France's military position was fatally undermined by Belgium's reversion to neutrality in 1935, leaving the Maginot Line with an open flank. After five years of German rearmament and French political and military confusion, the French army is no match for the Germans even with significant British help.

As defeat approaches (Paris about to be lost or surrounded), France should consider offering Armistice. Axis acceptance conserves Axis resources but preserves a French empire, leaving the Allies a Vichy-defended "soft spot" for later re-entry into French North Africa. If Britain has over-committed to the continent, the Axis can follow up a quick Armistice with an invasion of England. A dicey proposition, Sea Lion can win the war, or prove a costly failure (even while scaring the daylight out of the Allies).

Axis refusal of Armistice often leads to an intensive Mediterranean campaign, with the Allies threatening Libya from east and west. Successful evacuation of French forces can prove a great boost to Allied capabilities.

Axis conquest of Malta or Gibraltar will allow a greatly expanded Axis presence in North Africa, but taking either fortress requires a major Axis effort. A Gibraltar campaign presupposes the belligerence or defeat of Spain. In the latter case, the Allies should be sure to secure Tangier, facilitating the defense of the fortress. Malta is more vulnerable, being hard to reinforce or supply if Italy is belligerent, but the Axis window of opportunity is tight, with Axis TF airpower ending in winter.

During the German attack on France, there is a great temptation to Mobilize the Soviets and attack Rumania to deprive Germany of oil. But even if Mobilization is obtained, success in Rumania is iffy. Loss of Ploesti is a huge blow to the Axis, but failure endangers Soviet survival, as it must fight the Germans until at least W'41 with expensive units and reduced Production (Japanese Intervention).

After the French campaign, the Axis may also want to clear up the Balkans. This will clear up their rear areas in advance of a Russian campaign and put additional pressure on the British in the **MF** by encouraging Mid East Uprisings (see DE ME).

1940A: FALL OF FRANCE

This smaller, faster mini-game retains much of the interest of the full 1940 situation, lacking mainly the chance of Soviet intervention.

SPECIAL RULES

1) Setup

Ignore the USSR and the North Front. This mini-game lasts only 13 months, from May 1940 through May 1941.

Deploy according to the 1940 Starting Forces, ignoring Soviet forces. Axis East forces begin on the Curzon Line.

2) Endgame Diplomacy

No Allied Diplomatic Event is allowed in May 1941 (the last game-turn).

3) Mid East Uprising

Axis Diplomatic Event ME (see Axis Diplomacy) can be attempted if the Balkans are Pacified.

4) Fall of France Victory

Following May 1941, victory is evaluated based on Axis achievement of the following conditions:

- **England Invaded:** Axis control of at least one major port in England is an automatic Decisive Victory.
- a) Continental Hegemony:** Britain is the sole remaining undefeated Allied power in the west. All other **WF** nations are Axis, neutral, or defeated.
- b) Defense of Rumania:** Rumania must be Axis, and AGp Rumania (see **EF** game Axis OB card), must occupy **EF** Rumania. These units must be at or above listed strength.
- c) Defense of Poland:** Army Group North (see **EF** game Axis OB card), or equivalent must occupy E. Prussia. These units must be at or above listed strength.
- d) Barbarossa Buildup:** Army Groups Center and South (see **EF** game Axis OB card), or equivalent, occupy W. Poland. These units must be at or above listed strength.
- e) Mare Nostro:** Axis controls Malta, Gibraltar, or Suez.
- f) Axis North Africa Victory:** Axis controls all six (6) major ports in North Africa (Vichy Cooperation is not sufficient, as the Axis would not control Tunis or Algiers).
- g) Abadan and Basra** are controlled by the Axis.
- h) Axis Naval Supremacy:** (see 15.82).

1940A VICTORY EVALUATION

# OF CONDITIONS ACHIEVED	RESULT
England Invaded/8	Axis Decisive
7	Axis Major
6	Axis Minor
5	Axis Marginal
4	Draw
3	Allied Marginal
2	Allied Major
0-1	Allied Decisive

Fall of France Notes

The Fall of France scenario encompasses some of the crucial strategic decisions of the war. Assuming Germany can knock off France in fairly short order, it arrives at a major strategy crossroads. Taking any one path will permanently prejudice efforts in other directions.

Sea Lion? Spain/Gibraltar? Malta? **Med Front**/Mid East? Balkans/Russia? These can be combined to some degree, but time-and-motion severely hampers large changes of strategic direction.

With no threat of Soviet intervention, the Axis can be a bit bolder in this scenario, so it can see more that its share of strategic 'adventures'.

The Allies, of course, must defend against all of these threats. Britain can be hard-pressed to hold everywhere (as the next mini-scenario demonstrates). Historically, Britain did hold at every crucial point, with **very** limited resources compared to the Axis, arguably the best strategic performance of the war.

1940b: BRITAIN STANDS ALONE

AXIS				
AXIS UNIT	WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	12	1 ²	3
Armor	8	16		
Infantry	21	66		
Mountain	1	3		
Para	1	2		
IT Inf	8	15	1	4
IT Mech	1	2	1 ⁴	1
IT Static	2	1	2	2
PPs	62 ³		15	
Air Power	TF		DF	
¹ Includes OKH and OKW ² CS THQ ³ Includes Holland, Belgium, France, and Italy. ⁴ Reinforcement arriving Tripoli				
ALLIES				
BRITISH UNIT	WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	3 ¹	2	1 ²	2
Armor	1	2		
Mech	4	6	2 ³	3
Infantry	3	9	3 ⁴	4
Amphibious	1	2		
Static	4 ⁵	3		
PPs	7		15	
PPs Saved	14		•	
Air Power	SF		SF	
¹ Includes AF ² ME THQ ³ Includes HabF ⁴ Includes ANZ, PalF, Ind ⁵ 2 Home Guard + Gibraltar/ Malta garrisons				

1940B: BRITAIN STANDS ALONE

By Dave Lockwood

Situation

France is defeated, Vichy is Cooperating, and Italy is belligerent. The Med Front is active, and both sides have allocated 15 PPs. Naval Parity is in effect.

Use Special Rules as for 1940A Fall of France, except start in August 1940 using the forces given above.

Setup

Axis: Germany and Italy. Sets up first, and moves first. Controls Czechoslovakia, Western Poland, Denmark, Norway, Holland, Belgium, Occupied France, Albania, and Libya. Vichy is cooperating.

Germany: Every Victory City, French major city, and Atlantic/Baltic basin port must be occupied. All remaining units must set up in Occupied France.

Italy: 1EA static (0 cv) starts in Ethiopia. The other 3 **MF Residents** start in Libyan ports. One **West** unit must start in Nice, all others according to 20.21.

ALLIES: Sets up second, moves second. Includes Britain; controls Gibraltar, Malta, Egypt, Palestine, Aden, Somaliland, Kenya, India, Afghanistan, South Africa and the ME bases.

Britain: IndF must start in Karachi, PalF in Jerusalem, and HabF in Habbanya. The other 2 **MF Residents** start in Egyptian major ports, one per port.

All **West** units must set up in England.

NOTE: The Allies' 14 PPs Saved can be spent before beginning play, but this will delay MF reinforcements past the historical timetable. To meet this schedule, Britain must start with AF @ I cv, 21 HQ @ I cv, 10Br @ 3cv, spend no HQs in August, and then spend the saved 14PPs+7PPs in Sept/40 to build AF and 21 HQ to II cv each. Then AF's 4 Sea Moves can move 21HQ (II cv =>0) and 10Br (3 cv =>1) to the South Africa box, from where ME THQ can bring them to Egypt in September/October.

Britain Stands Alone Notes

At this point, with the British standing behind their last and deepest ditches, the Axis has considerable freedom of action, too many targets, and too little time. Choosing the historical option is for wimps, but none of the Britain / Mediterranean options are either cheap to prosecute or certain no matter how hard you hit.

In SeaLion, capture of a control port cancels naval interdiction and permits cheap sea movement: SE England will then last no longer than the Low Countries. Lacking this, invasions will suck HQ capacity, face DR/DF Sea Interdiction and up to TR/DF beach defense fire, and receive only occasional Sea Supply. All too soon winter Mud and Storms arrive, and TF Airpower departs.

Med options involve either relying on the Italians, betraying the Vichy French or Franco, and/or assaulting fortresses with two unsuppliable units. Those Russian winters start to look quite cozy.

1940C: SURF AND SAND

By Dave Lockwood

A simplified version of 1940B.

Gibraltar is out of play. Units can transfer between **WF** and **MF**, the Allies via South Africa as usual, the Axis via Italy and the Mediterranean. Axis Diplomatic Event ME (see Axis Diplomacy) can be attempted if the Balkans are Pacified.

Axis: Include all Axis HQs and **MF** units, but delete half the German **WF** combat units/cv (leaving armor 4/8, infantry 10/33, para 1/2), and all **WF** Italians and non-**MF** reinforcements. Deleted units are assumed to deploy in the east (as per Fall of France Victory conditions b & c). Ignore Britain Stands Alone deployment restrictions. Omit Diplomatic Events.

Allies: Include all Britain Stands Alone forces as above (delete the Gibraltar garrison).

Victory: Use 1940 Fall of France rules, assuming the Axis achieves conditions #2 & 3 with its deleted units.

Surf and Sand Notes

Pain. Grief. Headaches. These are just some of the great things awaiting players of this mini-game. Play twice, exchanging sides. Good for solitaire, too.

1941: ASSAULT ON RUSSIA

AXIS								
	EAST		WEST		MED		NORTH	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	5 ¹	13	3 ¹	2	2 ²	4 ²	1 [†]	3
Armor	10	37	1 ³	3	1	2		
Mech	1	3	2 ³	2				
Infantry	24	90	8 ⁴	12			2	4
Mountain	1	4					2	8
Para			1	1				
Fort			3	3				
Static			2	1			3	5
Cavalry								
SAT Inf	2	7	2	3				
SAT Static			2	2				
It Mech			1	2	1	1		
It Infantry			8	12	1	3		
It Static			2	0	1	1		
PPs*	54		17		25		--	
Air Power	TF		DF		DF		DF	

¹ Includes one SHQ ² Includes CS II cv [†] Dietl THQ
³ In Italy / Balkans (see 17.4) ⁴ Two in Italy / Balkans
 * If no Axis DoWar on USSR: 0 / 71 / 25 PPs

SOVIET				
	EAST		NORTH	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	13	1	0
Armor	7	14		
Mech	8	15		
Infantry	22	69	3	7
Shock				
Cavalry	3	3		
Amphib	1	1		
Mountain	2	4		
BH R/P				
PPs	68	(+6) ²	--	
Air Power	SF		SF	

¹ Includes Stavka
² Basic Prod. rises by 6 PPs.

ALLIED				
	WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	2 ¹	3	2 ²	3
Armor	1	2		
Mech	4	9	2	4
Infantry	3	9	4	10
Para	1	1		
Static	6 ³	9		
Amphib	1	4		
BH R/P				
PPs	7	(+5) ⁴	25	
Air Power	SF		SF	

¹ Includes AF ² Incl ME II cv
³ Incl Mal/Gib/TA/HA & HGds.
⁴ Basic Prod. rises by 5 PPs.

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '41	64 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JUN '41	34 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JUN '41	90 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JUL '41	34 Corps	Static 0
JUL '41	68 Ftrs Corps	Fort 1
JUL '41	90 Corps	Static 0
JUL '41	91 Mech Corps	Mech 1
SEP '41	LtAfr Mk Corps*	Mech 1
DEC '41	15 Corps	Static 0
DEC '41	PzrGp 'G'	Armor 1
APR '42	OB West HQ	HQ 0
APR '42	58 Pzr Corps	Armor 1
MAY '42	71 Ftrs Corps †	Fort 1
May arrive in: *Med Front [Tripoli] †North Front [Oslo]		

ALLIED REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '41	BH (Br1)	Prep
FEB '42	US 5 Amph Corps	Amphib 1

SOVIET REINFORCEMENTS		
NOV '41	1 Shock Army	Shock 4
NOV '41	2 Shock Army	Shock 4
DEC '41*	3 Shock Army	Shock 4
DEC '41*	4 Shock Army	Shock 4
DEC '41	1 Para Army	Para 1
DEC '41	BH (CA)	Prep
APR '42	1Gds Tank Army	Gds Armor 1
APR '42	2Gds Tank Army	Gds Armor 1
MAY '42	3Gds Tank Army	Gds Armor 1

* Do not arrive if Japan Intervenes (DE JI)

1941: ASSAULT ON RUSSIA

Axis

Germany, Italy, Rumania, and Bulgaria. Controls Czechoslovakia, W. Poland, Denmark, Norway, Holland, Belgium, *Occupied France*, Yugoslavia, Albania, Greece, and Libya (except Tobruk). *Balkan Pacification* is in effect.

Finnish and French Armistice are in effect. Vichy and Hungary are *Cooperating*. *Swedish Compliance* is in effect. Axis DEs **RB** (Rumania Cedes Bessarabia) and **RX** (Rumania joins Axis) have occurred. The Axis has not Declared War on the USSR.

Allies

Britain controls Gibraltar, Malta, Egypt, Palestine, **Iraq**, Aden, Sudan, Ethiopia, Somaliland, Kenya, South Africa, Afghanistan, India and *its base* in Persia. France and Norway are *exploited*.

Iraq has been defeated after Uprising (DE **ME**). Uprising is still possible in Syria and Persia. Axis DE **MR** is possible in Palestine and Iraq if they are not garrisoned by an Allied unit.

Neutrals

Soviet Union includes E. Poland, the Baltic States, and Bessarabia. The Molotov Pact is in effect. Finnish Armistice is in effect. Red Army Reforms are completed: Soviet DE S2 is in effect (Soviet HQs cost 10 PPs/step; 20 PPs/cadre).

The USSR, Sweden, Finland, Spain, Switzerland and Portugal are neutral. The Axis has conquered the rest of Europe.

1941 Borders

Hungary 1941 includes Transylvania (use 1941 borders).

Rumania 1941 excludes Bessarabia and Transylvania (use 1941 borders).

Vichy includes Corsica, and controls Tunisia, Algeria, Morocco, and W. Africa.

Fronts

The *West* and *Med Fronts* are active. Axis and Allies have allocated 25 PPs to the **MF. Naval Parity** is in effect.

1941 Semi-Historical game

ALLIES: Set up first, but move second.

BRITAIN: Most units may set up in Britain or Gibraltar. **NF** units (blue circles) set up in Britain and *garrisons* (tan circles) in Gibraltar or Malta, to which they are *restricted*.

MF (orange circle) units must set up in Egypt (on/adjacent to a road), Tobruk, Palestine, Iraq, India, or **Abadan** [base].

Frontline road hexes **must** be occupied.

SOVIET UNION: Soviet units set up as per the **EastFront** game **SOVIET OB** card. Units designated to deploy in cities can set up *in or adjacent* to those cities. All hexes bordering current Axis territory (i.e., **not** Hungary) must be occupied.

Baltic, West, and Kiev Military District [MD] units set up **in/adjacent to** *Curzon Line* hexes within their respective MD boundaries (separated by red triangles, see 1.1 sidebar errata). **Odessa MD** units set up **in/adjacent to** Rumanian border hexes.

Caucasus MD units set up in cities on the Turkish border.

Northern MD units (blue circle) deploy in the *Arctic Zone*.

Note: All 5 Strategic Reserve units have arrived and **are** included in Starting Forces table. However, no Reserve Armies are yet in play (these arrive upon belligerence).

AXIS: Deploys second and moves first.

GERMANY: Units deploy within Axis territory, observing *Occupation Limits* (20.132) as applicable. All hexes bordering the USSR must be occupied.

East units set up as per the **EastFront** game **AXIS OB** card. Army Groups **North, Center, and South** set up along/adjacent to their respective segments of the *Curzon Line* (black triangles separate the *Curzon Line* into **N/C/S**). Army Group **Rumania** sets up within Rumania.

West units set up in the *West Front*.

NF units (blue circles) set up in Norway. The **MF DAK** and *Afrika* HQ set up in **Libya** (except Tobruk). No other German units can do so. **MF Frontline** road hexes must be occupied.

ITALY: **WF** units are restricted to inside or within one hex of *Greater Italy*. At least one unit must deploy in France, Yugoslavia, Albania, and Greece.

Italian **MF Residents** deploy in **Libya** (except Tobruk), but no others can.

AXIS SATELLITES: Rumanian / Bulgarian units are *restricted*: they must deploy inside or within 1 hex of home territory (1939 borders). Units designated **WEST** may set up within **EF** home territory.

1941 Free Deployment game

Deploy as *Semi-Historical* game, except Allied forces can freely deploy within the **West Front**, Soviets within the **East Front**, and Axis forces in either front. Neither

side can increase (but can decrease) the number or CV of units deployed on the **Med Front** or **North Front**. All *Frontline* hexes must be occupied.

1941 SPECIAL RULES

1) Late Start

When starting a game in **1941**, begin two weeks *late*; there is only **one** fortnight in June 1941.

2) Odessa / Sevastopol

If Odessa and/or Sevastopol become Axis controlled, certain Satellite armies can be released from *restriction*. See *Axis Diplomatic Events* **3R** and **SR** (AXIS DIPLOMACY card).

3) Finland

When beginning play in 1941, assume *Finnish Armistice* occurred in Feb/40, with the Finnish army reduced to **30 PPs**. With 100% *Peacetime Production* (2 PPs/month) since then, it will have grown to **64 PPs** in July, 1941 (e.g. THQ2, Inf 5/8cv, static 0). Upon DE **FL**, Finland becomes an Axis *Isolated Minor* (separate PP pool of **3 PPs/month**—resources doubled for Axis).

4) Scenario Transition (Dec/41)

WINTER '41	AXIS			ALLIED		
	WF	MF	EF	WF	MF	EF
Production	+5	•	•	+10	•	+6
Airpower	DF	DF	DF	DF	DF	SF

If the **MF** is active, Axis/Allied Allocations can be raised 5 PPs. The Axis **EF** Allocation cannot be raised in Winter.

5) Winter Initiative and Axis Paralysis

Because **East Front** initiative varies with the weather, the sequence of Player Turns in winters can vary (see 12.7). Axis units in the **East Front** move and fight at reduced capacity during the first winter in the east (see 12.45).

1941 HISTORICAL COMMENTARY

As the Battle of the Atlantic rages and the North African campaign seesaws back and forth, an isolated but defiant Britain girds for the expected German invasion.

To its unutterable relief, the mighty Wehrmacht instead heads east into Russia, allowing Britain to deploy the best of its meager forces to beleaguered Egypt. The Soviets, on the other hand, have a fight for survival on their hands.

1942: AXIS HIGH TIDE

AXIS								
	EAST ¹		WEST		MED		NORTH	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	5 ¹	12	4 ²	6	2 ³	4	2 ⁴	6
Armor	11	38	2	2	1	3		
Mech	3	10	1	2	1	4		
Infantry	29	88	6	12			2	4
Mountain	1	4					2	7
Para			1	2				
Fort			4	6			1	1
Static			5	7			3	6
SAT Inf	2	8	5	9			6 ⁴	12
SAT Static			2	2			1 ⁴	1
IT Mech			1	2	1	2		
IT Infantry			8	14	1	4		
IT Static			2	0	1	1		
PPs	80	F3 ⁵	12	(+5) ⁶	30		--	
Air Power	DF		DF		DF		DF	

¹ Includes OKH ² Includes OKW
³ Includes Italian CS II cv ⁴ Finnish forces (NF & EF)
⁵ Finland = Isolated Minor ⁶ Basic Prod. +5 PPs

SOVIET				
	EAST		NOR	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	11	1	0
Armor	4	8		
Mech	5	9		
Infantry	28	88	5	10
Shock	4	12		
Para				
Cavalry	4	10		
Amphib	1	2		
Mountain	2	4		
BH R/P	0/1			
PPs	60	(+6) ²	--	
Air Power	SF		SF	

¹ Includes Stavka
² Basic Prod. rises by 6 PPs.

ALLIED				
	WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	2 ¹	5	2 ²	4
Armor			1	3
Mech	3	10	3	6
Infantry	2	7	5	11
Para	1	1		
Static	6 ³	11		
Amphib	2	8		
BH R/P	0/1			
PPs	17	(+10) ⁴	35	
Air Power	DF		DF	

¹ Includes AF ² Incl ME II cv
³ Garrisons & NF Expeditions.
⁴ Basic Prod rises by 10 PPs.

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '42	80 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JUN '42	2 Para Corps*	Static 0
JUL '42	88 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JUL '42	Mech Group 'E'	Mech 1
AUG '42	88 Corps	Static 0
SEP '42	65 Corps	Static 0
SEP '42	89 Fortress Corps	Fort 1
OCT '42	89 Corps	Static 0
OCT '42	66 Corps	Static 0
NOV '42	1Para Corps	Static 0
NOV '42	84 Ftrs Corps	Fort 1
DEC '42	Army Grp 'C'	HQ Ø
DEC '42	87 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JAN '42	85 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JAN '42	87 Corps	Static 0
FEB '43	1ss Pzr Corps	SS Armor 1
FEB '43	2ss Pzr Corps	SS Armor 4
MAR '43	Army Grp 'B'	HQ Ø
MAR '43	2 Para Corps	Para 1
APR '43	Pzr Group West	Armor 1
APR '43	Pzr Group 'C'	Armor 1
APR '43	78 Cav Corps	Cavalry 1
APR '43	68 Inf Corps	Infantry 1

*May arrive in the Med Front (Tripoli)

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
APR '43	73 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
APR '43	62 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
MAY '43	73 Corps	Static 0
MAY '43	21 Corps	Static 0
MAY '43	74 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
MAY '43	85 Corps	Static 0
JUN '43	76 Pzr Corps	Armor 2
JUN '43	4ss Pzr Corps	SS Mech 1
JUN '43	Italy Pzr Grp	Armor 1
JUN '43	69 Corps	Static 0
JUN '43	86 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JUN '43	74 Corps	Static 0

ALLIED REINFORCEMENTS		
OCT '42	US 6 Amph Corps	Amphibious 4
OCT '42	BH (US6)	Ready
NOV '42	US 1 Army Gp	HQ III
NOV '42	US 2 Amph Corps	Amphibious 4
NOV '42	BH (US2)	Ready
APR '43	US 3 Para Corps	Para 1

SOVIET REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '42	5 Gds Tank Army	Gds Armor 1
JUL '42	6 Gds Tank Army	Gds Armor 1

1942: AXIS HIGH TIDE

AXIS

Germany, Italy, Rumania, Hungary Bulgaria and Finland: controls

Czechoslovakia, Poland, Denmark, Norway, Holland, Belgium, *Occupied France*, Yugoslavia, Albania, Greece, Libya west of the **1942 Startline**, the Baltic States, and Russia west of the **1942 Startline**. Rumanian 3A has been released (DE **3R**).

Finnish Limited War (**FL**) is in effect (Finland is an *isolated minor* using its own production).

NOTE: *Volkhov* (**EF**) is a battle hex: the Axis and Soviets must deploy at least one unit there (Axis is *Original Defender*).

ALLIES

BRITAIN: controls Gibraltar, Malta, Libya east from Tobruk/Bir Hacheim, Egypt, Palestine, Syria, Iraq, S. Persia, Aden, Sudan, Ethiopia, Somaliland, Kenya, South Africa, Afghanistan and India. All 3 *MidEast Uprisings* (**ME**) have been defeated. *Mid East Rebellion* (**MR**) is possible in any *ME Mandate* that is not garrisoned. Axis DE **RS** (*Rising Sun*) is possible if India is not garrisoned. Yugoslavia, France and Greece are *exploited* (see *Revolt* **16.73**).

SOVIET UNION: The Soviets control *Leningrad* and all territory east of the **S'42 Startline** (see above re: *Volkhov*) and N. Persia. *Finland Limited War* (**FL**) and *Great Patriotic War* (**SG**) are in effect. *Red Army Reforms* (**S1** & **S2**) are complete (HQs cost 10 PPs/step, cadres 20 PPs).

NEUTRALS

Vichy is *Cooperating* with the Axis. *Swedish Compliance* is in effect. Switzerland, Spain and Portugal remain neutral. The rest of Europe is conquered by the Axis.

1942 BORDERS

Vichy (20.48) includes Corsica. Controls Tunisia, Algeria, Morocco and West Africa.

FRONTS

All three *Fronts* are active. The Axis has allocated **50 PPs** to the **EF**, and **30 PPs** to the **MF**. The Allies have allocated **35 PPs** to the **MF**. *Naval Parity* is in effect in the **WF** and **MF**.

1942 SEMI-HISTORICAL GAME

ALLIES: Deploy **first**, but move second. Yugoslavia is in *Revolt* (**Tito** may arrive).

BRITAIN: Most units may set up in Britain or Gibraltar. **NF** units (blue circles) set up in Britain and *garrisons* (tan circles) in Gibraltar or Malta, to which they are *restricted*.

MF units (orange circle) set up in the **MF**, east of the **1942 Startline** on/ adjacent to a road. All *Frontline road* hexes must be occupied. One **MF Alien** sets up in India. Both **MF HQs** are 2cv.

SOVIET UNION: Units deploy within Soviet territory. All *Frontline* hexes must be occupied.

AXIS: Deploy second and move **first**.

GERMANY: Deploy in friendly territory, subject to *Occupation Limits* (20.132). All *Frontline* hexes must be occupied. The *SiegeGun* unit is activated.

MF units (orange circle) set up in the **MF**, west of the **1942 Startline**. All *Frontline road* hexes must be occupied. Both **MF HQs** are 2cv.

NF units (blue circle) set up in the **NF**. German units in Finland are *restricted* to *Petsamo* and *Oulu* (DE **FL** in effect)..

ITALY: Units are *restricted* to inside or within one hex of *Greater Italy*. At least one unit must set up in France, Yugoslavia, Albania and Greece.

MF Residents (orange circle) must deploy in the *Med Front*, to which which they are *restricted*.

AXIS SATELLITES: Rumanian 3rd Army (3R) is *released*; all other Satellite units (Hungarian, Finnish, Bulgarian) are *restricted*: they must remain in/ adjacent to their *home territory* (use **larger** of 1939/current borders). Units designated **WEST** may set up within *home territory* in the **EF**.

1942 SPECIAL RULES

1) German Siege Guns

Beginning this scenario, the German **54th** Infantry Corps (three dots within infantry symbol) has heavy Railroad Siege Guns attached. It fires **TF** versus fortresses (must be in Rail Supply), but cannot move/ invade by sea.

2) Axis Satellite Demoralization

Allied DE **2F** (*Second Front*) becomes possible this scenario, giving the Allies the initiative in the *West / Med Fronts*, and causing Axis Satellites and Vichy (but not Italy) to become *demoralized* (16.71) and subject to *Surrender* (16.8).

Italy is *demoralized* by the loss of Libya, Albania, Sicily, Sardinia, or any Italian major city.

3) Morocco (Allies) or Tunis/Istanbul (Axis) Basing

Units in the **MF** that trace *Supply Lines* to a rail line connected to Casablanca/ Tangiers (Allies) or to Tunis/Istanbul (Axis) have special privileges. See **21.38**.

4) Vichy Demoralization and Torch

Once *2nd Front* DE is in effect, Vichy is *demoralized* and *ambivalent*: its units only *repulse* Allied assaults on *dierolls* of '1' and may *Capitulate* (see **20.486**), and Vichy may *Surrender* (20.487).

5) W '42 Scenario Transition (Dec/42)

WINTER '42	AXIS			ALLIED		
	WF	MF	EF	WF	MF	EF
Production	+5	•	•	+10	•	+8
Airpower	SF	SF	DF	DF	DF	DF

If the *Med Front* is active, Axis and Allied **MF** Allocations can be raised by 5 PPs. The Axis **EF** cannot be increased.

6) Winter Initiative

Because *East Front* initiative varies with the weather, the sequence of Player Turns in winters can vary. See **12.7** for details.

1942 HISTORICAL COMMENTARY

The war in Europe still hangs in the balance. The Axis still has good prospects in the East, while the Allies remain relatively impotent in the West for the time being.

The war in Africa remains undecided, although the American aid has begun to tilt the balance against the Axis, and Torch invasion forces are nearing readiness.

1943: CLOSING THE RING

AXIS						
	East		West		North	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	5 ¹	12	6 ²	12	2 ⁶	5
Armor	12 ³	42	7 ³	15		
Mech	3	12	3 ⁴	5		
Infantry	28	88	14	20	2	4
Mountain	1	2			2	6
Para			2	4		
Fort			6	10	1	1
Static			16	13	3	6
Cavalry			1	2		
SAT Infantry	3	3	4	9	6 ⁵	12
SAT Static			2	2	1 ⁵	1
IT Mech			1	2		
IT Infantry			8	15		
IT Static			2	1		
PPs	90	F3 ⁶	41	(+5) ⁷		
Air Power	DF		SF		[SF]	

¹ Includes OKH
² Includes OKW
³ One SS
⁴ One SS
⁵ Finnish forces (NF & EF)
⁶ Finland Isol. Minor (3PPs)
⁷ Basic Production rises by 5 PPs.

SOVIET		
	East	
	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	14
Armor	11	32
Mech	7	20
Infantry	29	94
Shock	4	10
Cavalry	4	8
Amphibious	1	2
Mountain	2	4
NF HQ	1	1
NF Inf	5	10
BH R/P	0 / 1	
PPs	68	
Air Power	DF	

¹ Includes Stavka

ALLIED				
	West		Med	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	4 ¹	10	1 ²	1
Armor	1	4		
Mech	4	13	2	2
Infantry	3	9	4	6
Mountain	1 ³	2		
Para	2	2		
Static	6 ⁴	12		
Amphibious	4	12		
BH R/P	3 / 0			
PPs	73	(+10) ⁵		
Air Power	TF		[TF]	

¹ Includes AF
² Includes ME
³ Free French (Fr2)
⁴ Includes Mal/Gib. Hm Gd & NF.
⁵ Basic Production rises by 10 PPs.

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
JUL '43	3SS Mech Corps	SS Mech 3
JUL '43	51 Mtn Corps	Mountain 2
JUL '43	Houck Mtn Corps	Mountain 2
AUG '43	15 Mtn Corps	Mountain 1
AUG '43	21 Mtn Corps	Mountain 1
SEP '43	5SS Mtn Corps	SS Mountain 1
SEP '43	22 Mtn Corps	Mountain 1
JAN '44	75 Inf Corps	Infantry 1
JAN '44	80 Corps	Static 0
FEB '44	AOK Mk Corps	Mech 1
FEB '44	86 Corps	Static 0
APR '44	Pzr Group 'B'	Armor 1
APR '44	67 Inf Corps	Infantry 1

ALLIED REINFORCEMENTS		
AUG '43	Polish Corps	Infantry 4
SEP '43	SHAEF	SHQ Ø
OCT '43	Cdn 1st Mech Corps	Mech 4
DEC '43	BH (US 5)	Ready
DEC '43	US 7th Corps	Amphibious 4
JAN '44	US 8 Tk Corps	Armor 3
FEB '44	US 15 Tk Corps	Armor 3
FEB '44	US 19 Mk Corps	Mech 4
MAR '44	12th Army Gp	HQ Ø
MAR '44	BH (US 7)	Ready
APR '44	US 20 Tk Corps	Armor 3
APR '44	US 4 Mk Corps	Mech 4
MAY '44	US 12 Tk Corps	Armor 3

SOVIET REINFORCEMENTS (None)

1943: CLOSING THE RING

AXIS

Germany, Italy, Rumania, Hungary, Bulgaria and Finland. Controls Czechoslovakia, Poland, Denmark, Norway, Holland, Belgium, **all** of France, Corsica, Albania, Yugoslavia, Greece, the Baltic States, and Russia west of the **S'43** Startline.

NOTE: Volkhov is a battle hex: the Axis and Soviets must deploy at least one unit there (Soviets are now Original Defender).

Swedish Compliance is in effect. Finnish Limited War (**FL**) is in effect: Finland is an isolated minor using its own production. Yugoslavia, France and Greece are exploited (see Revolt 16.73).

Second Front is in effect: **Italy, Rumania, Hungary and Bulgaria** are demoralized. All Satellite expeditions (8I, 2H, 3R & 4R) are permanently restricted (eliminated and rebuilt). **Vichy** has Surrendered to the Allies.

ALLIES

BRITAIN/US: Control Gibraltar, Malta, and **all** the Med Front. **MF Victory** and Allied **Naval Supremacy** are in effect. Axis **DE MR (ME Rebellion)** is possible in **ME Mandates** that are not garrisoned, and **RS (Rising Sun)** is possible if India is not garrisoned.

SOVIET UNION: Controls Soviet territory east of the **S'43** Startline (see above re: *Volkhov*), Leningrad, and N. Persia. **Red Army Reforms** are complete (normal HQ costs). **Great Patriotic War** is in effect. **Finland Limited War** is in effect.

NEUTRALS

Switzerland, Sweden (Complying), Spain and Portugal remain neutral.

FRONTS

The Axis has allocated 60 PPs to the **EF**. Neither the Axis nor the Allies have any PPs allocated to the **MF**.

1943 FREE SETUP GAME

AXIS: Deploy **first** and move second.

GERMANY: Units deploy in Axis controlled territory, subject to *Occupation Limits* (see 20.132). All Frontline hexes must be occupied. **NF** units set up in the **NF**. All **MF** units are eliminated (but can be rebuilt).

ITALY: Non-**MF** units set up inside or within one hex of *Greater Italy*. At least 1 unit must be in Yugoslavia, Albania,

Greece and France. **MF Residents** (orange circles) are permanently eliminated (out of play). Italy is **demoralized** and may *Surrender*.

AXIS SATELLITES: Hungarian, Rumanian, Finnish and Bulgarian units are *restricted*: they must set up and remain in/adjacent to *home* territory (use the larger of 1939/current borders). Units listed as **WEST/NORTH** may also set up within **EF home territory**. All Satellites are **demoralized** and may *Surrender*.

ALLIES: Deploy second, but move **first**.

Britain/US: WEST units can set up in Britain, Malta/Gibraltar, or the **MF**. The 5 **NF Expeditions** (blue circles) are *restricted* to Britain/**NF**; 2 **Garrisons** (tan circles) are *restricted* to Gibraltar/ Malta (all full strength/may be *disbanded*). All 6 **MF Residents** (R in orange circle) are *restricted* to the **MF**. One **MF Alien** (1cv) starts in **Karachi**.

SOVIET UNION: Units set up in Soviet controlled territory, **NF units** (blue circle) within the **Arctic Zone**. All Frontline hexes must be occupied.

1943 HISTORICAL GAME

AXIS: Set up as shown all units on the **WestFront** game **Axis S43 OB** card ("*Northern Italy*" is that north from the **Florence** hexrow, "*Southern*" to the south). The 4 **AG 'E'** units must set up in Albania, Greece, and Yugoslavia ("**E**" Mech at 1cv), along with: 91 Mech (1cv), 68 Inf (1cv), 21 static (0cv), 68 Fort (1cv), and 8I Inf (2cv).

Axis EAST and NORTH units set up freely in controlled territory within the **EF** and **NF**. No units set up in the **MF**.

ALLIES: Set up WEST units according to the **WestFront** game **Allied S43 OB** card. Add 1 **NF Inf** (3cv) + 4 static (8cv) in Britain & 2 static (4cv) in Malta/Gibraltar.

MF Residents (R in orange circle) set up in the **MF**, along with one **MF Alien** (at 1 cv) in **Karachi**. No units are in the **NF**.

SOVIETS: Set up all Soviet units as per **Free Setup Game** setup above.

1943 SEMI-HISTORICAL GAME

AXIS: NORTH units on the **WestFront** game **Axis S43 OB** card must set up in France, Germany, Czechoslovakia, and points northward. SOUTH units on that OB card must set up in Italy, Yugoslavia, Hungary, and points southward. Otherwise the above Axis setup rules are unchanged.

ALLIES: NORTH units on the **WestFront** game **Allied S43 OB** card may

set up in Britain or Gibraltar. SOUTH units on that card may set up in Gibraltar, Malta, or the *Med Front*. Otherwise the above Allied free setup rules are unchanged.

SOVIETS: Set up all Soviet units as per **Free Setup Game** setup above.

1943 SPECIAL RULES

1) Late Start

The 1943 scenario begins in **July**, not in June as usual.

2) W'43 Scenario Transition

WINTER '43	AXIS			ALLIED			SOV
	WF	MF	EF	WF	MF	EF	
Production	+5	•	•	+10	•	•	--
Airpower	SF	SF	SF	TF+	TF+	DF	

Basic Production rises 5 PPs (Axis) and 10 PPs (Allies). Axis **EF** Air Firepower drops from DF to SF. Allied Extended Air Range begins in the **WF** (see #3 below).

Axis and Allied **MF** Allocations (if any) can be raised by 5 PPs. The Axis **EF** Allocation cannot be increased.

Med Front allocations can be raised by 5 PPs. The Axis East Front allocation cannot be raised in Winter.

3) Allied Extended Air Range

Beginning W'43, Allied airpower has Extended Air Range in the **WF** and **MF**. Allied Air Range doubles the CV of the commanding HQ (triple for SHQs).

Strategic Bombing: The resulting increased effectiveness of Allied strategic bombing raises rebuilding costs of German HQs in the **WF** to 15 PPs/step (cadres 30 PPs) for the rest of the game.

4) Winter Initiative

Because **EF** initiative varies with the weather, the winter sequence of Player Turns can vary. See 12.7 for details.

1943 Historical commentary

This scenario marks the beginning of the end for the Axis. With Soviet strength approaching parity and its production in full gear, prospects in the East are fading.

In the West, hard-won Allied Naval and Air Supremacy begin to tell, US forces begin to arrive in quantity, and Allied production is simply overwhelming. Still, tenacious German defense can make progress slow and costly, and the panzers still pack a mighty punch.

1944: ANVIL OF VICTORY

AXIS						
	EAST		WEST		NORTH	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	5 ¹	12	6 ²	14	2 ⁵	6
Armor	12 ³	36	7 ³	17		
Mech	4 ³	12	4 ⁴	8		
Infantry	28	82	16	31	2	4
Mountain	1	4	6 ³	12	2	5
Para			2	6		
Fort			6	14	1	1
Static			17	19	3	6
Cavalry			1	2		
SAT Infantry	3	11	4	9	6 ⁵	12
SAT Static			2	2	1 ⁵	1
IT Mech						
IT Infantry						
IT Static						
PPs	66	F3 ⁵	55 ⁶	(+5) ⁷		
Air Power	SF		nil		[nil]	

¹ Includes OKH ² Includes OKW
³ One SS ⁴ Two SS
⁵ Includes Finns (Isolated Minor / 3PPs)
⁶ Ore SeaRoute lost (-5 PPs.) ⁷ Basic Production +5

AXIS REINFORCEMENTS		
JUL '44	PzrGp Eberhard	SS Mech 4
DEC '44	FHH Pzr Corps	SS Armor 4

SOVIET		
	EAST	
	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	14
Armor	12	34
Mech	8	24
Infantry	30	94
Shock	4	15
Cavalry	4	12
Amphibious	1	2
Mountain	2	4
NF HQ	1	2
NF Inf	5	10
BH R/P	0 / 1	
PPs	86	
Air Power	TF	

¹ Includes Stavka

ALLIED				
	WEST		MED	
	Unit	CV	Unit	CV
HQs	6 ¹	16	1 ²	1
Armor	5	16		
Mech	7	24	2	2
Infantry	4	14	4	6
Mountain	1	3		
Para	2	4		
Static	6 ³	12		
Amphibious	5	18		
BH R/P	3 / 2			
PPs	94	(+10) ⁴		
Air Power	TF*		[TF*]	

¹ Includes AF and SHAEF ² ME
³ Includes Hm Gd, Gib/Mal & NF
⁴ Basic Production rises by 10 PPs
* With Air Supremacy

ALLIED REINFORCEMENTS		
JUN '44	6th Army Gp	HQ Ø
JUL '44	FF 1st Tk Corps	Armor 3
AUG '44	US 13th Mk Corps	Mech 4
AUG '44	US 18th Mk Corps	Mech 4
SEP '44	US 3rd Mk Corps	Mech 4
SEP '44	US 16th Inf Corps	Infantry 4
OCT '44	US 21st Inf Corps	Infantry 4
OCT '44	Br 3rd Inf Corps	Mech 4
NOV '44	US 22nd Inf Corps	Infantry 4
NOV '44	US 23rd Inf Corps	Infantry 4
DEC '44	FF 3rd Inf Corps	Infantry 4

SOVIET REINFORCEMENTS (None)

1944: ANVIL OF VICTORY

AXIS

Germany, Finland, Rumania, Hungary and Bulgaria. Controls Czechoslovakia, Poland, Denmark, Holland, Norway, Belgium, France, Italy north of the **S'44** Startline, Albania, Yugoslavia, Greece, the Baltic States, and the USSR west of the **S'44** Startline. Allied **Strategic Bombing** is in effect: Axis HQ costs in the *West/Med Fronts* are **15 PPs** per step. The Axis *Ore SeaRoute* (**17.2**) is lost (**-5 PPs**) due to *Allied Air Supremacy* (see Special Rule #2 below). *Swedish Compliance* is in effect. Yugoslavia, France and Greece are *exploited* (see *Revolt* **16.73**).

Rumania, Hungary and Bulgaria are *demoralized* and subject to *Surrender* (**2F** in effect). The Satellite *Expeditions* (2H, 3R & 4R) have all been eliminated and rebuilt and are *permanently restricted*. **Axis Finland** may become an *Isolated Minor* (**20.64**) using only its own production if **Tallinn is lost**. **Italy** has *Surrendered*.

ALLIES

Britain/US. Control Britain, Gibraltar, Malta, Corsica, Sardinia, Sicily, Italy south of the **S'44** Startline, and all the *Med Front* (**MF Victory**). The Allies have *Naval & Air Supremacy* and *Strategic Bombing* (**13.31**) is in effect. *Rebellion* is possible in ME Mandates that are not garrisoned. *Rising Sun* is possible if India is ungarrisoned. See **11.37** re *HQ costs in Sea/BH Supply*.

Soviet Union. Controls Soviet territory east of the **S'44** Startline and N. Persia. **Finnish Limited War** is in effect. **Red Army Reforms** are complete (HQs cost 10 PPs/ step, cadres 20 PPs). **Great Patriotic War** is in effect.

NEUTRALS

Switzerland, Sweden (*Complying*), Spain and Portugal are neutral.

FRONTS

The Axis has allocated 50 PPs to the **EF**. Neither the **AXIS** nor **ALLIES** have PPs allocated to the **Med Front**.

1944 FREE SETUP GAME

AXIS: Sets up **first** and moves second.

Germany: Units set up in Axis controlled territory, subject to *Occupation Limits* within Axis *Satellite* territory (see **20.132**). All *Frontline* hexes must be occupied (in **Italy** by mountain, para, or panzer units). German Paras are *grounded*.

NF units set up in the **NF**. **MF** units are eliminated but are available for rebuilding.

Axis Satellites: Hungarian, Rumanian, Finnish and Bulgarian units are *restricted*: they must set-up and remain within 1 hex of their *home* territories (current/1939 borders). **3R, 4R and 2H** set up in the *East Front*. Units designated **WEST** may also set up within *home* territory in the **EF**.

Italy has *Surrendered*: all Italian units are out of play.

ALLIES: Set up second, but move **first**.

Britain/US: Most units may set up anywhere in Allied controlled territory, occupying all *Frontline* hexes. *Garrisons* (tan circles) and **NF Expeditions** (blue circles) are *restricted* to Britain, Malta and Gibraltar.

MF Residents set up in are *restricted* to the **MF**. British 3rd Corps (1cv) is in Karachi.

SOVIET UNION: Units set up in Soviet controlled territory, **NF units in the Arctic Zone**. All *Frontline* hexes must be occupied.

1944 HISTORICAL GAME

Set up as above, except deploy **Axis** and Allied **West** units according to the 1944 Historical OBs (next page).

1944 SEMI-HISTORICAL GAME

AXIS: *North* units on the **1944 OB** (next page) must set up in France, Germany, Czechoslovakia, and points northward. *South* units on that OB must set up in Italy, Yugoslavia, Hungary, and points southward. Otherwise see free setup.

ALLIES: *North* units on the **1944 OB** (next page) must set up in England or Gibraltar. *South* units on that card must set up in Gibraltar, Malta, or the *Med Front*. Otherwise see free setup.

SOVIETS: Set up all Soviet units as per **FREE SETUP**.

1944 SPECIAL RULES

1) Hitler Standfast Order

When starting a game in June 1944, the Axis cannot activate HQs on the **EF** during its first turn.

2) Allied Air Supremacy

Beginning Summer 1944, the Allies have *Air Supremacy*. All Axis movement in the *West* (and *Med*) *Front* is **suppressed**:

land movement is one hex slower than normal (min 1), and rail movement is **halved** (5 hexes per Rail Move).

The Allies also gain complete control of all seas in the *Atlantic Basin* (regardless of naval base control) and the Axis loses all seapower there.

3) Ploesti

The Axis *Oil Supply* rule (**17.1**) may come into effect.

4) 1944 Scenario Victory

Games begun in **1944** use different Victory Conditions based on *Victory City* control. See **19.5**.

5) Balkan Pacification

Axis DEs *Mid East Rebellion* (**ME**) and *Rising Sun* (**RS**) become impossible once Rumania (or any other Balkan nation) *Surrenders* and *Balkan Pacification* is lost.

6) W'44 Scenario Transition

WINTER '44	AXIS			ALLIED		SOV
	WF	MF	EF	WF	MF	EF
Production	•	•	•	•	•	•
Airpower	•	•	•	TF	TF	TF

Axis and Allied Allocations to the **Med Front** can be raised by **5 PPs**. The Axis **EF** Allocation cannot be raised.

7) Winter Initiative

Because **East Front** initiative varies with the weather, the sequence of Player Turns in winters can vary. See **12.7**.

8) Bulge Surprise

In any one selected Axis Turn, Axis armor in the **WF** fires normally (i.e., not limited to **SF**) despite *Mud* weather. Other *Mud* rules (e.g., *double defense*) still apply.

1944 SCENARIO NOTES

This scenario traces the final downfall of the Reich from east and west. When starting in **1944**, consider a technical *Draw* (Axis holds Berlin) an *Axis Moral Victory*, and an *Axis Moral Victory* (holding the Rhine/Vistula line into 1945, a great accomplishment) a *Major Victory*.

1944A: The Struggle for Europe

This scenario (only) can also be played as a three-sided game, with the Allies and Soviets playing as separate "sides." The Allies and Soviets observe all normal rules, but are *in competition* with each other and with Germany for control of post-war Europe. See **19.5**.

1944: ANVIL OF VICTORY

1944 ALLIES / NORTH

SHAEF AF HQ	SHAEF III AF II	London Bristol
BRITISH		
21 AG HQ	HQ III	Portsmouth
Br 1 Amph Corps	Amph 4	Coast
Br 30 Tk Corps	Armor 4	Coast
Br 8 Mk Corps	Mech 4	Britain
Br 12 Mk Corps	Mech 4	Britain
Cdn 2 Corps	Mech 4	Britain
UNITED STATES		
12 AG HQ	HQ III	Plymouth
1 AG HQ	HQ III	Dover
5 Amph Corps	Amph 4	Coast
7 Amph Corps	Amph 4	Coast
8 Arm Corps	Armor 3	Coast
19 Mech Corps	Mech 4	Coast
17 Para Corps	Para 3	Britain
12 Arm Corps	Armor 3	Britain
15 Arm Corps	Armor 3	Britain
20 Arm Corps	Armor 3	Britain

SOUTH (Note: **MF** Residents in/restricted to the **MF**)

BRITISH		
15 AG HQ	HQ II	Italy
Br 13 Mk Corps	Mech 3	Front
Br 10 Corps	Infantry 4	Front
Br 5 Corps	Infantry 3	Front
Pol Corps	Infantry 3	Front
Cdn 1 Corps	Mech 4	Front
FF2 Mtn Corps	Mountain 3	Front
Br 2 Para Corps	Para 1	Italy
Br 3 Inf Corps	Inf 1	Karachi
UNITED STATES		
US 2 Amph Corps	Amph 2	Front
US 6 Amph Corps	Amph 4	Front
US 4 Mech Corps	Mech 3	Italy

June/44 Reinforcement:

6 AG HQ	HQ 0	Major Port
---------	------	------------

Allies 1944 Historical WF Setup

Deploy all units as above, using the historical strengths given. *City* units must set up in the city named or an adjacent hex. *Country* units must set up anywhere in that country. *Coast* units must deploy in coastal hexes. *Front* units must deploy in *Frontline* hexes in Italy.

Allies 1944 Semi-Historical WF Setup

Using historical unit strengths. Deploy **North** units freely in Britain or Gibraltar. Deploy **South** units in Italy (*south* of the **S'44** Startline), Sardinia, Corsica, Sicily, Gibraltar, Malta, or North Africa. *Front* units must set up in *Frontline* hexes (Italy).

Axis 1944 Historical WF Setup

Country units set up in controlled hexes within that country, and *City* units in that city or an adjacent hex. *Coast* units must set up in coastal hexes (within army boundaries when given). *Front* units must set up in *Frontline* hexes. **N. Italy** is north of Florence hexrow.

Axis S'44 Semi-Historical WF Setup

Use historical unit strengths. Deploy **North** units freely within France, Belgium, Holland, Germany, Denmark, Czechoslovakia, and Austria. Deploy **South** units in Italy (*north* of the **S'44** startline), Yugoslavia, Hungary, Rumania, Albania, Bulgaria & Greece.

1944 AXIS / NORTH

OKW	OKW III	Berlin
Den Corps	Inf 2, Static 2	Denmark
AOK	Mech 2	Denmark
88 Corps	Inf 2, Static 2	Holland
PzrGp B	Armor 1	Holland
OB West	OBW III	Paris
Army Group B	HQ II	Rouen
15th Army (Rhine-Seine)		
1SS Pzr Corps	SS Armor 3	Lille
58 Pzr Corps	Armor 3	Brussels
89 Corps	Fortress 3, Static 2	Coast
82 Corps	Fortress 4	Coast
81 Corps	Fortress 4	Coast
65 Corps	Static 1	Coast
67 Corps	Infantry 3	Rouen
7th Army (Seine-Loire)		
PzrGp West	Armor 4	Tours
84 Corps	Fortress 1, Inf 3	Cherbourg
64 Corps	Infantry 2	Coast
2 Para Corps	Para 4	Nantes
74 Corps	Inf 2, Static 1	Coast
25 Corps	Fortress 1, Static 2	Brest , <i>Coast</i>
Army Group G	HQ II	Lyon
1st Army (Loire-Spain)		
4 SS Mech Corps	SS Mech 3	Limoges
66 Corps	Static 1	<i>Coast</i>
80 Corps	Inf 1, Static 0	<i>Coast</i>
86 Corps	Inf 2, Static 1	<i>Coast</i>
19th Army (France South Coast)		
PzrGp G	Armor 2	Lyon
90 Corps	Inf 2, Static 2	<i>Coast</i>
85 Corps	Inf 2, Static 1	<i>Coast</i>
62 Corps	Infantry 1	<i>Coast</i>

SOUTH

Army Group C	HQ II	Italy
1 Para Corps	Para 2	Florence
PzrGp C	Armor 2	Florence
87 Corps	Inf 2, Static 1	N. Italy
73 Corps	Inf 2, Static 1	N. Italy
75 Corps	Infantry 2	N. Italy
51 Mtn Corps	Mountain 2	<i>Front</i>
Gp Houck Mtn	Mountain 3	<i>Front</i>
76 Pzr Corps	Armor 2	<i>Front</i>
Army Group E	HQ II	Yugoslavia
15 Mtn Corps	Mtn 2, Static 0	Yugoslavia
34 Corps	Inf 2, Static 0	Yugoslavia
69 Corps	Static 1	Yugoslavia
5 SS Mtn Corps	SS Mountain 2	Yugoslavia
78 Cav Corps	Cavalry 2	Yugoslavia
Mech Gp E	Mech 2	Yugoslavia
22 Mtn Corps	Mountain 2	Albania
21 Mtn Corps	Mountain 1, Static 0	Greece
91 Mech Corps	Mech 2	Greece
68 Corps	Fortress 1, Inf 2	Greece
1 Bulg Army	Sat Inf 2	Bulgaria
2 Bulg Army	Sat Static 1	Bulgaria
1 Rum Army	Sat Inf 3	Rumania
2 Rum Army	Sat Static 1	Rumania
3 Rum Army	Sat Inf 4	Rumania
4 Rum Army	Sat Inf 4	Rumania
1 Hung Army	Sat Inf 2	Hungary
2 Hung Army	Sat Inf 3	Hungary
3 Hung Army	Sat Inf 2	Hungary

1936: SPANISH CIVIL WAR

NATIONALISTS

UNIT TYPE	Unit	CV
HQs	2 ¹	4
Armor	•	•
Mech	•	•
Infantry	6	10
Static	4	2
PPs	4 ²	
Air Power	DF	
¹ Includes JDN THQ		
² Includes 4 PPs Foreign Aid		

REINFORCEMENTS

DEC '36	BS Mech Corps*	Mech 1
* Arrives in a friendly port		

THE SITUATION

The Spanish **Nationalists** have risen in revolt against the **Republican** government. Some units of the army and militia have sided with the rebellion, others remain loyal to the government, including those controlling the capital (Madrid) and the second largest city, Barcelona.

Portugal is aiding the rebellion and Lisbon acts as the Nationalist capital. Germany and Italy also support the Nationalists. France and the USSR support the Republicans.

The game begins in July 1936, which only has one fortnight. *West Front* weather applies. No special *Med Front* rules are used. Spanish Morocco is considered a *West Front* location in this scenario. Neither side needs *National Supply*.

IMPORTANT: No form of Seapower can be used in the SCW scenario.

THE MAP

Use only the **WestFront** southern map. Units can only enter Spain and Spanish Morocco. Portugal and France are in play only as supply sources. All other areas are out of play.

Within Spain, red cities and towns are loyal to the *Republicans* and black cities and towns are loyal to the *Nationalists*. This is important to play.

THE NATIONALISTS

Nationalist units are black blocks with yellow/brown labels. The *Nationalist* capital (and *Supply Origin*) is Lisbon (although no units can enter Portugal). The *Nationalists* always have the first turn.

THE REPUBLICANS

Republican units are red blocks with yellow/orange labels. The *Republican* capital is Madrid. The *Republicans* always take the second turn.

REPUBLICANS

UNIT TYPE	UNIT	CV
HQs	2 ¹	2
Armor	•	•
Mech	•	•
Infantry	4	6
Static	6	3
PPs	3 ²	
Air Power	SF	
¹ Includes FP THQ		
² Plus 0-3 PPs Foreign Aid		

REINFORCEMENTS

SEP '36	International Brigade†*	Infantry 1
OCT '36	Pavlov Tank Corps*	Armor 1
† Arrives Albacete * Arrives in a friendly port		

SCW HISTORICAL GAME

Deploy all units in the historical locations noted on the SCW O/B card. Railhead markers are placed in friendly controlled ports and French border hexes, Bayonne and Perpignan.

SCW SEMI-HISTORICAL GAME

(*Recommended*). Deploy infantry and HQ units in the historical locations noted on the SCW O/B card.

Random Militia Deployment. Taking one static unit at a time (without revealing its cv), the owning player rolls 1 dice for its **Region** of appearance, and another dice for the **City/Town** within that region, according to the Militia Table. If that location already has a militia unit, roll again.

SCW FREE SETUP GAME

The *Nationalist* player deploys his 3 Spanish Morocco units in separate cities there. Players then alternate placing one infantry or HQ unit at a time in a loyal city (*Republicans* go first). No more than four (4) units can start in a major city, two (2) per minor city, and one (1) per town.

When this has been done, complete **Random Militia Deployment** as above.

1936: SPANISH CIVIL WAR

SCW SPECIAL RULES

Because this scenario reflects a civil war, several special rules altering the game system are in effect.

1) HEX CONTROL

In the SCW, prior control of a hex has no meaning. Hex control is determined as follows.

Controlled Hexes

- Occupied solely by friendly units or garrisons.
- Friendly battles (Original Defender).
- Unoccupied but in an undisputed friendly ZOC.
- Unoccupied and no ZOC present, but contains a loyal city or town.

Disputed Hexes

- Unoccupied and contains a ZOC of both sides.

Normal rules for Disputed hexes apply (e.g., units cannot disengage into them, rail through them, etc.).

Uncontrolled Hexes

- Unoccupied and contains neither a ZOC nor a city/town.

In the SCW, *uncontrolled* hexes are treated as friendly, except that units cannot disengage into them. Command, supply, and rail movement are allowed through *uncontrolled* hexes.

2) GARRISONS

In the SCW, (as in most civil wars) territory control was confused. Use blank black and red blocks, placed flat, as *garrisons*. During Production, *garrisons* can be built for 1 PP in any controlled, supplied, unengaged hex.

Garrisons are **not** units: they cannot move, fight, or restrict movement. They simply control their own hex and exert a ZOC. They are immediately eliminated if an enemy unit enters their hex (need not stop) unless a friendly unit is also present. Unsupplied *Garrisons* continue to exist and control their hex, but lose their ZOC.

3) FOREIGN AID

In addition to the 3 PPs they initially control (Madrid: 2 PPs; Barcelona 1 PP), the Republicans may also receive *Foreign Aid* from France and Russia.

French Aid: The Republicans receive intermittent and erratic Foreign Aid from France, varying between 0-2 PPs per month (initially 2 PPs). Each Production, the Republican player rolls one die for

FRENCH FOREIGN AID	
1	1 PP of French Aid received. Place a RailHead marker on a controlled port or French border hex.
2	2 PPs of French Aid received. Place two RailHead markers on controlled ports or French border hexes.
3-4	No change from previous month.
5-6	French Aid is reduced by 1 PP. Remove one RailHead marker (if any remain).

French Aid. Place 0-2 Railhead markers in French border rail hexes (Bayonne/Perpignan) **or in friendly port(s)** for arriving French Aid.

Soviet Aid: The Republicans can also receive 1 PP of Soviet Foreign Aid each Production, provided they control a port (place a RailHead marker next to the selected port). Beginning S'37, however, Soviet aid is subject to Blockade (see #5).

Axis Aid: The Nationalists receive 4 PPs of Foreign Aid per month, 1 PP from Portugal, 1 PP from Italy, and 2 PPs from Germany. Axis Foreign Aid can arrive in Lisbon (where it is not subject to Blockade), or in a Nationalist controlled port (place RailHead marker).

4) SUPPLY

The respective Capitals (Lisbon and Madrid) and/or **External Supply** (below) can act as the *Supply Origin* for SCW units. Neither side needs *National Supply*.

External Supply: Arriving Foreign Aid also provides External Supply to friendly units (Soviet and French Aid for the Republicans, and Axis Aid for the Nationalists). RailHead markers serve as External Supply Sources for SCW units.

Loyalty: Units defending Loyal cities and towns are immune to supply attrition: they can survive indefinitely without a supply line. However, these unsupplied units cannot be built during Production.

5) BLOCKADE

Beginning S'37, sea-borne Foreign Aid/External Supply is subject to *Blockade*.

To begin Production, the Republican player selects a controlled port and rolls 1 dice to see if 1 PP of Soviet Aid arrives.

If the number rolled is less than or equal to the number of Republican-controlled ports in European Spain (Barcelona counts double), the blockade is run successfully and Soviet Aid arrives (place a RailHead marker in that port).

If the die roll fails, the Republicans receive neither the 1 PP nor External Supply that month by sea.

Blockade applies equally to the arrival of Nationalist External Supply to any one port other than Lisbon (which cannot be blockaded). If the Nationalist player desires External Supply to arrive elsewhere than Lisbon, he must declare the target port (controlled) and roll one die. If the die roll is less than or equal to the number of Nationalist-controlled ports in European Spain (Barcelona counts double), the Foreign Aid/External Supply arrives: place a RailHead marker in the port. If not, both External Supply and 1 PP of Nationalist Foreign Aid are lost that month.

6) FOREIGN AID "ENDS"

In Spring, 1939, the great powers agreed that foreign intervention in the SCW would end (but this was not fully honored by the Axis). Beginning December, 1938 (W'38), each player rolls one die at the start of every Production. If doubles are rolled:

- All 3 foreign units (BS mech, Pav tank, and International Brigade infantry) are removed from play.
- All Soviet and French *Foreign Aid* PPs to the Republicans are canceled. *External Supply* continues as before, still subject to Blockade. Axis *Foreign Aid* (4 PPs) and *External Supply* to the Nationalists continue.

7) PRODUCTION

Nationalist and Republican units rebuild using SCW Unit Costs. These are the same as Allied costs except for Statics (3/2) and the *International Brigade* (2/4).

SCW UNIT COSTS		
UNIT TYPE	CV	CADRE
HQ	10 ¹	20 ¹
THQ	0 ²	0 ²
Armor	8	16
Mech	6	12
Infantry	4	6 / 8 ³
Static	3	2
Int'l Brig	2	4
Garrison	•	1
¹ Halved in Double Supply ² Free 1 CV build/month ³ 6 PP for Nationalists / 8 for Republicans		

1936: SPANISH CIVIL WAR

A) Cadres: Eliminated units can be rebuilt as new cadres in any controlled *Loyal City* in rail supply (not embattled). See UNIT COSTS Table.

B) Garrisons: During PRODUCTION, Garrisons can be built in unengaged, supplied friendly hexes for 1 PP.

C) HQs: A Field HQ is in **Double Supply** when it can trace supply both to its Capital **and** to *External Supply*. HQs in *Double Supply* can be built at a reduced cost of **5 PPs/cv** (10 PPs/cadre). Other unit costs are unaffected by *Double Supply*. Thus, the *Nationalist* HQ can always build a step for 5 PPs when it can trace supply to Lisbon, but the *Republican* HQ can only do so when it can trace supply both to Madrid **and** to an *External Supply* marker.

D) THQs: SCW Theater HQs can be rebuilt **one step only** per Production at no PP cost (for free).

8) RAILROADS

In the SCW, friendly Rail Lines can extend through Friendly and Uncontrolled hexes, but not through Disputed or Enemy controlled hexes.

NOTE: Cities and towns of enemy loyalty block Rail Lines unless the hex is otherwise friendly controlled.

9) SCW VICTORY

A) Defeat: all enemy units eliminated.

B) Foreign Recognition. Beginning **W'36**, either side can win via *Foreign Recognition* as the legitimate Spanish government. **Once** per Summer/ Winter season, each side can try for *Foreign Recognition* at the beginning of any PRODUCTION phase. Each side rolls a pair of dice -- if **each** pair totals **less than** the current *Pacification Level* (see below) the leader wins via *Foreign Recognition*.

Pacification Level: Each side counts the number of controlled Spanish Cities (excluding Morocco) that are in *Rail Supply* (connected by rail to the friendly Capital or to *External Supply*). Major Cities (Madrid/ Barcelona) count **double**. *Pacification Level* equals the difference between the counts.

Example: The Nationalists have 11 Cities to the Republicans' 6, for a Pacification Level of +5. If the Nationalists roll '4' but the Republicans roll '7', Recognition fails.

C) Stalemate: If neither side wins by the end of W'38 (May/39), the *Republicans* win a *Marginal Victory*.

10) EUROFRONT CARRYOVER

If the **SCW** is played as a prequel to **EuroFront**, play to a decision or to Sept/39, then proceed as follows: :

A) Nationalist Victory: This is the historical result and **EuroFront** proceeds normally (see **20.74**).

B) Republican Victory: **EuroFront** proceeds normally as above, except:

- Upon Spanish *belligerence*, set up **Republican Spain** forces as per the **PRO-ALLIED MINOR** OB card.
- Allied DE **RE** is possible, Axis DE **SX** is not, and some *Alliance Reactions* are altered (see **AR** table).
- An Axis *Declaration of War* on *Republican Spain* **raises the odds of Soviet Mobilization (SM)** & cancels *Axis Surprise* if it attacks the USSR.

C) Stalemate: The **SCW** continues, becoming treated after Sept/39 as a **EuF** sideshow: both sides are "neutral" and **neither need trace National Supply**.

Lisbon remains the **Nationalist Capital/Supply Source** but no *Foreign Aid* can arrive unless it can trace a **LoC (10.22)** to **Berlin**.

Madrid remains the **Republican Capital/Supply Source**, and *Foreign Aid* **can** only arrive if it can trace a **LoC to Paris**.

Important: Reduce Allied/Axis PPs by 2 for each *Foreign Aid* PP sent.

SCW continues (usual rules) until:

1) **Victory** (see #9 above): the victor becomes **Spain**, a new **EuF neutral**. Remove its units at **current cv** to the relevant **MINOR OB** card [begin *Peacetime Production*]. Remove defeated units from play.

2) **Intervention:** if the Axis or Allies declare **SCW Intervention** [same requirements as *Declaration of War*], the *Nationalists* become **Axis Satellites** and the *Republicans* become **Allied Satellites**.

- **Lisbon/Madrid** remain capitals.
- All **SCW Special Rules** except **#7A** (cadre rebuilds) are canceled and normal **EuF** rules (eg, *National Supply*, *Occupation Limits*) apply.
- Note that neither side is "**Spain**", so **17.7 Volunteers** and **20.74 Fortress Spain** do not apply.
- Upon **SCW Victory**, all foreign units must **Withdraw (16.721)**.

SCW SCENARIO NOTES

The Spanish Civil War, perhaps the saddest war of the 20th Century, reflected the clash of Fascism and Socialism. In the early 1930s Spain was wracked with political upheaval through a series of bitter, closely fought elections between leftist and rightist multi-party coalitions with nearly equal popular support.

The Popular Front, a loose coalition of landless peasants, labor activists, liberals, socialists, anarchists, Communists, and Catalanian and Basque nationalists, formed the government after a narrow election victory in Feb 1936. On the right were the army, wealthy landowners, the Church, Royalists, and the proto-fascist Falange.

An exchange of assassinations shook the country, prompting Generals Franco and Mola to raise an army revolt in July 1936. Some risings were suppressed by loyalists (notably in Barcelona and Madrid) and a bloody tradition of execution of "traitors" began on both sides, the Nationalists executing 500,000 of its opponents versus 20,000 by the Republicans.

The war was fought with a terrible outpouring of passion, valor, and hostility on both sides. Portugal, Germany, and Italy openly aided Franco, while Russia sent help to the Republic, France vacillated and Britain stood aloof. Motivation was not lacking on either side, just armaments. While the Republican government could never fully arm its numerous volunteers, Germany and Italy saw to it that Franco's army was well endowed.

The Nationalists advanced on Madrid, spearheaded by the Spanish Legion (which Franco commanded in the '20s) and the largely Moorish Army of Africa. The capital was saved by a stubborn defense keyed by the 11th-hour arrival of the first International Brigades.

The struggle continued for 3 long years, ending in the slow strangulation of Republican Spain by an international arms blockade, while Franco continued to receive German and Italian arms covertly via Portugal.

SCW Continues through Sept 1939

Once the Allies become belligerent, they block all land and sea Lines of Communication from Lisbon to Berlin: Franco will lose most of his Foreign Aid and will be at a grave disadvantage without it.

If Intervention occurs, all Foreign Aid is canceled and the Nationalists and Republicans become minor Satellites of the Axis and Allies, using normal Production rules (except 7A still applies). Existing Garrisons remain in play to clarify hex control, but no more can be built.

SOVIET / ALLIED DIPLOMACY

ALLIANCE REACTIONS (France Undeclared / Defeated)

New Belligerent	LINKED NEUTRALS (Become a New Belligerent on DR <= # below)													
	Italy	Hung*	Yugo ^Y	Rum	Bulg*	Greece [†]	Belgm	Holland	Spain	Port [†]	Denmk	Norway	Sweden	Finland
Italy	•	1*							3R / •					
Hungary	2	•	1 [†]	1										
Yugoslavia	1*	1* / 2*	•	3 / 2	1* / 2*	2 [†] / 3 [†]								
Rumania		5*	3 / 2	•	3* / 4*	1 [†] / 2 [†]								
Bulgaria	1				•	2 [†] / -								
Greece	1*		2	1 / -	2*	•								
Belgium							•	5 / 1						
Holland							6 / 1	•						
Spain	2								•	1 [†]				
Portugal									3N / 5N	•				
Denmark											•	2		
Norway											6	•	-- / 1 ^x	
Sweden											4	2	•	1
Finland													1	•

* Joins Axis in all cases

^R Only if Spain Republican: Joins ALLIES

^X Only if Norway Axis: Joins Axis

[†] Joins ALLIES in all cases

^N Only if Spain Nationalist: Joins Axis

^Y Deploy Serbs OR Croats (20.77)

SOVIET DIPLOMATIC EVENTS

EVENT	PRECONDITIONS	DIEROLL	OTHER EFFECTS
PP* SOVIETS Annex East Poland & Baltic States (Polish Partition)	Axis has Declared War on Poland. Soviets neutral.	Always	USSR annexes E. Poland & Baltic States. Axis failure to exit E. Poland this month equals a Declaration of War on the USSR
CL* SOVIETS Occupy Curzon Line	PP	Always	USSR can immediately make 6 free Rail Moves (9.21) to move units adjacent to the Curzon Line (20.14).
WW* SOVIETS Declare Winter War	W'39 or later. USSR & Finland both neutral.	Always	Winter War rules (see 20.57) are in effect for USSR & Finland. Both sides remain neutral (Finland begins 100% Peacetime Production).
S1* SOVIETS Initiate Red Army Reforms	Finnish Armistice / defeat occurred in a previous Season OR SG OR SE in effect.	1--2	Soviet HQ costs drop to 15 PPs/cv (cadres 30 PPs). S2 possible. Reduce die roll result by 1 / prior failure.
S2* SOVIETS Complete Red Army Reforms	S1 occurred in a previous Season.	1--2	Soviet HQ costs drop to 10 PPs (cadres 20 PPs). Reduce die roll result by 1 for each prior failure.
SR* SOVIETS Redeploy Strategic Reserve unit	CL. COUNT Axis EF Reserve Units [†] Divide by 2 (round down). France defeated.	Less than COUNT 1--3	Deploy 1 Strategic Reserve unit in any valid Soviet arrival location. [†] # of Axis EF units minus # of Axis EF Frontline hexes.
SM* SOVIETS Mobilize [*Greater Germany = Germany, E. Prussia, Danzig, Austria and Czechoslovakia]	CL in effect. COUNT war year [S/W'39 = 1; S/W'40 = 2; etc.] + ALLIED/SOVIET hexes in Greater Germany* Yugoslavia or Rumania ALLIES. BX or Axis DoW on Republican Spain.	Less than or equal to COUNT 1--3 1--4	Soviets join ALLIES. EF activated (see 20.52). All Reserve Armies arrive now. (Remaining Strategic Reserve units do NOT automatically arrive next Production, only via SR, SE, or SG - see which). AXIS AC, RG, HX, BP, & JI become possible.
SE* SOVIET Emergency Declared [[†] Mother Russia = 1939 borders]	German units within the USSR, Finland, Turkey, or the Mid East (see 21.3). Axis units within Mother Russia. [†]	1 1--2	Remaining Strategic Reserve units arrive next Production in any valid arrival location. Phony War ends. S1 possible. SG may be possible.
SG* SOVIETS Declare Great Patriotic War	SE. W'41/later. [Occurs immediately upon Axis Declaration of War without affecting future Allied-Soviet DE choices.]	1	All Reserve Armies arrive now. Soviets begin using Soviet Unit Costs (for HQ costs, see S1 & S2). Remaining Strategic Reserve units arrive next Production in any valid arrival location.

* Soviet DEs are not affected by Allied Betrayal (20.36).

SOVIET/ALLIED DIPLOMACY (Continued)

EVENT		PRECONDITIONS	DIEROLL	OTHER EFFECTS
SA*	SOVIET Arms Buildup Initiated	SOVIETS <i>belligerent</i> . All Soviet units in play on-map, all HQs at full strength, and 100+ PPs <i>Reserved that Production</i> .	Always	Reduce Soviet <i>Reserved PPs</i> to 0. (<i>SA-SB</i> sequence may be done twice, with <i>Armor</i> units upgraded the 2nd time -- see below)
SB*	SOVIET Buildup Completed	SA in effect for one complete Season.	1-3	1st Buildup: <i>Shock</i> fires <i>TF/DF</i> & <i>Mech</i> fires <i>DF/DF</i> . 2nd Buildup: <i>Armor</i> fires <i>TF/DF</i> .
NO	NORWAY Joins ALLIES	Axis Declaration of War on Denmark OR DS (Denmark Submits).	1-2	Allies +1 PP, can enter Norway (Occupation Limit 4) Axis – 5 PPs (Ore Supply SeaRoute - see 17.2)
		Denmark or Sweden is either ALLIES or ALLIED controlled	1-4	Allied <i>Naval Supremacy</i> probable. AB, EB possible
FR	FINNISH RELIEF Expedition Proposed	WW [WINTER WAR]	Always	Allied <i>NF Brigade Groups</i> have reduced <i>NF Acclimatization</i> , and need no Arctic Maintenance
NP	NORWAY - FINLAND Expedition Proposed	FR	Always	Norway is demoralized and ambivalent (16.711): it may Surrender (16.83); its units Repulse Allies weakly (7.61) & may Capitulate (7.7)/Defect to them.
NX	NORWAY EXPEDITION Approved	NP	1-4	ALLIES can Declare War on Norway despite Phony War and without committing Betrayal
AB	ATLANTIC BARRAGE Minefield Established	ALLIED <i>Naval Supremacy</i> . ALLIES have undisputed control of a naval base in Norway or Denmark.	1-3	While Preconditions hold: ALLIES +5 PPs [Battle of the Atlantic advantage]
GR	GREECE Joins ALLIES [Mussolini's War]	Italy Axis. France Defeated.	1	Axis BX is possible YU may be possible
		Italy Axis. Rumania or Hungary Axis controlled.	1-3	
		Italy Axis. Yugoslavia or Bulgaria is Axis	1-5	
YU	YUGOSLAVIA Joins ALLIES	Greece ALLIES. Rumania & Bulgaria are Axis controlled	1	Axis HX may be possible
		Greece ALLIES. Rumania ALLIES OR Soviets <i>belligerent</i> .	1-2	
		Greece & Rumania ALLIES, Sovs <i>belligerent</i>	1-4	
RU	RUMANIA Joins ALLIES	France & Yugoslavia ALLIES.	1-3	Axis <i>Oil Supply</i> lost (see 17.1)
VF	VICHY Joins ALLIES [becomes <i>Free France</i>]	Soviets <i>belligerent</i> . France exploited. COUNT Allied hexes in <i>Occupied France</i> (ports count <i>double</i>).	Less than COUNT	Deploy ex-Vichy forces as <i>Free French</i> (see 20.49). FF 2 Mtn can arrive (FNA major port) next Production. <i>Allied 2F automatically occurs NOW</i> .
2F	SECOND FRONT Imminent	Soviets <i>belligerent</i> . S'42 / later. COUNT Allied BHs Prep/Ready [Ready counts <i>double</i>].	Less than or equal to COUNT.	All Axis <i>minor</i> Satellites become <i>Demoralized</i> . Allies gain the <i>Initiative</i> on WF/MF, and may stack 4 units in Malta/Gibraltar. Allies may now <i>Declare War</i> on neutrals <i>Cooperating with the Axis without Betrayal</i> , Canadian Mech Cps become <i>NF Expeditions</i> .
EB	EFFECTIVE BLOCKADE	Soviets <i>belligerent</i> . ALLIES control Suez, Gibraltar, & ALL naval bases in either Norway or Denmark.	1	While Preconditions hold: ALLIES +5 PPs (Battle of the Atlantic benefit)
TB	TOTAL BLOCKADE	EB. Allied Naval Supremacy. No Axis Atlantic port in Rail Supply.	1	While Preconditions hold: Axis –5 PPs (Blockade of Germany)
SC	SWEDEN Cooperates with ALLIES	2F. SWEDEN <i>neutral/Complying</i> . Oslo or Narvik ALLIED controlled.	1-4	ALLIES + 4 PPs. Swedish Compliance ends & Axis Ore Supply lost (Axis–12 PPs)
SW	SWEDEN Joins ALLIES	SC. Norway ALLIED controlled	1-2	ALLIES can enter Sweden (Occup. Limits apply)
FI	FINLAND Joins ALLIES	FX <i>not</i> in effect. Sweden ALLIES OR 2F & Soviets control Mother Russia	1-2	[Re-] Deploy Finns as ALLIED <i>Minor</i> forces. Soviet & Finnish units must observe 20.53. [Finland's PPs may change ownership]
RE	REPUBLICAN SPAIN* Joins ALLIES [* Republicans won SCW]	Italy Axis. Soviets <i>belligerent</i> . ALLIES control Portugal.	1-2	Deploy Spanish <i>Republican</i> forces as per 20.74.
		As above, plus <i>Second Front (2F)</i> .	1-4	
* Soviet DEs are not affected by Allied Betrayal (20.36).				

AXIS DIPLOMACY

ALLIANCE REACTIONS (France Undefeated / Defeated)

New Belligerent	LINKED NEUTRALS (Become a New Belligerent on DR <= # below)													
	Italy	Hung*	Yugo ^Y	Rum	Bulg*	Greece [†]	Belgm	Holland	Spain	Port [†]	Denmk	Norway	Sweden	Finland
Italy	•	1*							3R / •					
Hungary	2	•	1 [†]	1										
Yugoslavia	1*	1* / 2*	•	3 / 2	1* / 2*	2 [†] / 3 [†]								
Rumania		5*	3 / 2	•	3* / 4*	1 [†] / 2 [†]								
Bulgaria	1				•	2 [†] / -								
Greece	1*		2	1 / -	2*	•								
Belgium							•	5 / 1						
Holland							6 / 1	•						
Spain	2								•	1 [†]				
Portugal									3N / 5N	•				
Denmark											•	2		
Norway											6	•	-- / 1 ^X	
Sweden											4	2	•	1
Finland													1	•

* Joins Axis in all cases

^R Only if Spain Republican: Joins ALLIES

^X Only if Norway Axis: Joins Axis

[†] Joins ALLIES in all cases

^N Only if Spain Nationalist: Joins Axis

^Y Deploy Serbs OR Croats (20.77)

AXIS DIPLOMATIC EVENTS

EVENT	PRECONDITIONS	DIEROLL	OTHER EFFECTS
PW AXIS Makes <i>Peace Offer</i> (Phony War)	Poland Defeated.	Always	Axis annexes Danzig and W. Poland (Allied PP occurs now if not already). Phony War begins: ALLIES cannot Declare War & France can only build one step /month
SJ SWEDEN Joins Axis	Soviets reject <i>Finnish Armistice</i> OR Declare War on Finland OR enter Norway before 2F	1–2	Axis + 6 PPs (+4 PPs if <i>Compliance</i>). Deploy Swedish forces [<i>semi-restricted</i> as <i>Interventionists</i> , see 16.3]. Axis units can enter Sweden (Occupation Limit 4).
DS DENMARK Submits to Ultimatum	<i>WF</i> Dry month. All <i>Scandinavia</i> neutral. ALLIED NX OR <i>Phony War</i> OR France defeated.	Always	Denmark becomes Axis controlled (+2 PPs) & <i>Swedish Compliance</i> begins (+2 PPs , see 21.492). <i>Weser Surprise</i> [see 21.493] in effect if <i>DoWar Norway</i> next AXIS turn and <i>Phony War</i> in effect. ALLIED NO possible
IX ITALY Joins Axis	AXIS controls hexes in France. COUNT # of controlled hexes <u>plus</u> eliminated French units.	Less than COUNT	<i>Med Front</i> is activated [see 21.32]. <i>Naval Parity</i> may come into effect [see 15.8].
	French border hex[es] adjacent to Italy are undefended.	1–4	Italian units are restricted to <i>Greater Italy</i> & adjacent hexes. Allied Events GR , RE may be possible
IU ITALY Unleashed	<i>Anglo-French Union</i> OR Soviet SM OR AXIS <i>Desert Victory</i> .	1–4	Italian units are no longer restricted (to <i>Greater Italy</i> & adjacent hexes).
RB RUMANIA Cedes Bessarabia	France & Poland Defeated. USSR & Rumania Neutral or Cooperating.	Always	USSR annexes Bessarabia (20.58). Adopt 1941 USSR-Rumania border. Axis RX possible.
RX RUMANIA Joins Axis [Vienna Award]	Rumania neutral. Axis RB OR RG.	1–2	Hungary annexes Transylvania and Cooperates with Axis [+5 PPs]. <i>Border Disputes</i> (16.42) in Bessarabia possible after 1 month. Axis BX & YX possible.
	Soviet units in Bulgaria	Always	Reduce die roll result by 1 for each prior failure.
RG RUMANIA Guaranteed by Axis [Vienna Award]	Soviet SM .	1–5	Hungary annexes Transylvania (use 1941 borders).
	Soviet SM . France Defeated	Always	HX (Hungary Joins Axis) automatically occurs now (Axis +5 PPs). Rumania Cooperates with Axis [+9 PPs].
HX HUNGARY Joins Axis	Yugoslavia or Rumania ALLIES.	1–3	Hungarian forces restricted . Axis YX possible
	Soviets <i>belligerent</i>	Always	
BP BALKAN PACT Cooperates with Axis	SM OR Soviets have Declared War on Rumania.	1–4	Bulgaria and Yugoslavia Cooperate with AXIS

AXIS DIPLOMACY (Continued)

EVENT		PRECONDITIONS	DIEROLL	OTHER EFFECTS
BX	BULGARIA <i>Joins Axis</i>	Rumania AXIS. BP OR Greece ALLIES.	1 1-3	Bulgarian forces <i>restricted</i> . Axis YX possible. <i>Allied SM possible, GR may be possible.</i>
YX	YUGOSLAVIA <i>Joins Axis</i>	Rumania AXIS. Hungary AXIS/Cooperating. As above, Bulgaria AXIS. BP (Balkan Pact)	1 1-2 1-4	If attempt succeeds , deploy Pro-Axis Yugoslav armies (3 units @ 2cv each), <i>restricted</i> . If attempt fails , <i>Allied YU</i> (Yugoslavia Joins ALLIES) automatically occurs now . Deploy Pro-Allied Yugoslav armies (5 units), <i>restricted</i> .
FL	FINLAND Conducts <i>Limited War</i>	Soviets ALLIES. <i>Finnish Armistice</i> in effect for 1 complete Season. COUNT # of undefended Soviet AREAs on Finnish border.	1-5 Less than or equal to COUNT	Finland = <i>Isolated Pro-Axis Minor</i> (see 20.64). Deploy Finns as of <i>Finnish Armistice</i> [see 20.82] + 100% PtProd, <i>restricted</i> . German units allowed in Oulu & Petsamo regions only /Occupation Limit 4
FX	FINLAND <i>Joins Axis</i>	FL. Leningrad AXIS controlled. Soviets ALLIES. SOVIET WW but no <i>Finnish Armistice</i> .	1-3 Always	Finnish Production transferred to Axis (+3 PPs). Saved PPs lost. Foreign Axis units allowed <i>anywhere</i> within Finland [Occupation Limits apply]. <i>Winter War</i> ends.
AC	ANTI-COMINTERN PACT <i>Activated</i>	Allied SM (Soviets Mobilize)	1-3	Italy and Nationalist Spain Cooperate with AXIS.
Jl	JAPAN Intervenes in Far East	Before W'41. Allied SM (Soviet Mobilization) has occurred.	1-3	SOVIET Basic Production <i>permanently</i> reduced by 10 PPs. Soviet 3 & 4 Shock armies [Dec/41] do not arrive .
SX	SPAIN (Nationalist) <i>Joins Axis</i>	AXIS <i>North Africa Victory</i> . All of France is AXIS controlled. As above, plus Allied 2F (2nd Front). ALLIED units in Portugal	1-3 1-2 1-5	Spanish forces <i>restricted</i> to Spain, Spanish Morocco, and adjacent nations/colonies
3R	3RD RUMANIAN Army <i>Released</i>	<i>Balkans Pacified*</i> . Odessa AXIS controlled.	1-4	Rumanian 3R is released from restriction until eliminated or Odessa Soviet controlled
XR	AXIS SATELLITE Army <i>Released</i>	<i>Balkans Pacified*</i> . Sevastopol & Greece AXIS controlled	1-3	One of: Rumanian 4R, Hung. 2H, or Italian 8I released until eliminated or Sevastopol Soviet controlled
ME	MID EAST Uprising [Syria / Iraq / Persia]	<i>Balkans Pacified*</i> . Bulgaria & Greece AXIS controlled. Specify ME Mandate. COUNT AXIS major ports in Libya / Egypt. <i>Balkans Pacified*</i> . Turkey AXIS controlled.	Less than or equal to COUNT. 1-4	A specified ME Mandate (Iraq or Syria, or if another DE ME has already succeeded AND the Soviets are belligerent, Persia) Joins Axis; deploy national forces. [1 success/Mandate.] Allied DoWar on ME Mandates is no longer <i>Betrayal</i> .
MR	MID EAST Rebellion [† Palestine, or defeated Syria / Iraq / Persia]	No Allied/Soviet units within a specified ALLIED controlled ME Mandate† (including within bases).	1-2	Specified ME Mandate Rebels : deploy 1 national unit at cadre strength . in the capital (<i>Conquest</i> applies). Multiple successes / Mandate allowed.
TC	TURKEY Cooperates with Axis	<i>Balkans Pacified*</i> . Bulgaria, Greece & Libya AXIS controlled. COUNT # of Axis controlled ME Mandate capitals.	Less than or equal to COUNT.	Axis +5 PPs, gains Rail Transit Rights within Turkey (but Axis units cannot remain within Turkey).
TX	TURKEY Joins Axis [** Batumi, Leninakan, Nakichevan, Yerevan]	Soviets ALLIES & <i>Balkans Pacified*</i> OR German units within Mother Russia. COUNT # of undefended Soviet cities on Turkish border**. Allies have committed <i>Betrayal</i> (20.36) on a ME Mandate. Baku or Iraq is Axis controlled.	Less than COUNT. 1 1-2	Deploy Turkish forces. ME may become possible . Foreign Axis units can enter Turkey (<i>Occupation Limits</i> apply). [Axis +5 PPs if no TC.] <i>East Front</i> activated if not already (see 21.22).
RS	RISING SUN (Japan threatens India)	S'42+. <i>Balkans Pacified*</i> . No Jl. No Allied units in India.	1-3	Allies -10 PPs as long as PreConditions prevail. (British retain control of India unless Axis occupied).
VX	VICHY Joins Axis	ALLIED units in Spain/Sp Morocco. NO AXIS DoWar on Spain.	1-5	
* Rumania, Hungary, Bulgaria, Yugoslavia, Albania & Greece are Axis, Cooperating, or controlled (see 16.6) by the Axis				

HISTORICAL DIPLOMATIC EVENTS

Month	Allied Diplomatic Event	Axis Diplomatic Event	Game Events
Sept/39	-----	-----	Axis DoWar on Poland
Oct/39	Polish Partition [PP]		Poland defeated
Nov/39	Curzon Line Occupied [CL]	Axis Peace Offer [PW]	
W'39			
Dec/39	Winter War [WW]		
Jan/40	Finnish Relief (FR)		
Feb/40	Norway Expedition Planned [NP]		Finnish Armistice
Mar/40	Norway Expedition Approved [NX]	Denmark Submits [DS]	Axis DoWar on Norway
April/40			Norway defeated
May/40			DoWar Belgium, Holland
S'40			
June/40	Soviets Begin Reforms [S1] fails		French Armistice
July/40	Soviets Begin Reforms [S1]	Italy Joins Axis [IX]	
Aug/40	Soviet Strategic Reserve [SR] fails	Rumania Cedes Bessarabia [RB]	
Sept/40	Soviet Strategic Reserve [SR]	Rumania Joins Axis [RX] fails	
Oct/40		Rumania Joins Axis [RX]	
Nov/40	Greece Joins Allies [GR]		
W'40			
Dec/40	Sovs Complete Reforms [S2] fails		
Jan/41	Soviets Complete Reforms [S2]		
Feb/41	Soviet Strategic Reserve [SR]		
Mar/41		Bulgaria Joins Axis [BX]	
April/41	Soviet Strategic Reserve [SR]	Yugoslavia Joins Axis [YX] fails	Yugoslavia, Greece defeated
May/41	Soviet Strategic Reserve [SR]	Mid East Uprising [ME] / Iraq	GreekConquest (Crete), Iraq defeated
S'41			France exploited
June/41		Mid East Uprising [ME] / Syria	Axis DoWar USSR (GP), Syria defeated
July/41		Finland Limited War (FL)	
Aug/41		Hungary Joins Axis (HX)	Allied/Sov DoW Persia; defeated.
Sept/41			
Oct/41			Odessa falls
Nov/41		Rum 3A Released [3R]	
W'41			
Dec/41			[SG possible]
Jan-Apr/42			
May/42			Sevastopol falls
S'42			Yugoslavia & Greece exploited
June/42	Second Front [2F] fails	Rum 4A Released [XR]	[RS possible]
July/42	Second Front [2F] fails	Satellite Released [XR] fails	
Aug/42	Second Front [2F] fails	Hung 2H Released [XR]	
Sept/42	Second Front [2F] fails	Satellite Released [XR] fails	
Oct/42	Second Front [2F]	Ital 8I Released [XR]	
Nov/42			

FRONT SPECIAL RULES SUMMARY

WEST FRONT

ACTIVATION: *Always* active.

WEATHER: Separate *West Front* weather die-roll every fortnight Nov thru Feb.

Possible storms in W. Baltic (7), Atlantic (5/9), or Med (3/11) *Basins*.

INITIATIVE: **Axis** until *Second Front* DE (then **ALLIED**).

AXIS LOGISTICS. **MF** HQs *disrupted/cannot Blitz*..

CROSS-COMMAND: Axis **OKW** / Allied **SHQs** in the *West Front* can command in the *Med Front* or *North Front* at **half** efficiency (& vice-versa).

Flex: **SHQs** in **Malta** / **Gibraltar**, can command in either the *West* or *Med Front* at full efficiency, and in the other at half. From **Copenhagen** or **Glasgow**, the same applies for the *West* and *North* fronts.

OKH in the *West Front* can cross-command into the *East Front* at half efficiency (and vice-versa). **Flex:** From **Berlin** [*EF Inactive*] or **Warsaw** [*EF Active*] it can command in *either Front* at *full* efficiency, the other at half.

AIRPOWER: Allied Extended Air Range (Dec/43+) and Allied Air Supremacy (Jun/44+) apply in the *West Front*.

PRODUCTION: **MF** & **NF** Production sources generate **WF** PPs, as do **EF** sources *when East Front* is inactive.

BASING: Allied/Axis units in the **MF** with **Morocco** / **Tunis** / **Istanbul Basing** can be built with **WF** PPs at **MF** costs (50% of **MF** Allocation maximum can be so used). Allied units in the **WF** (e.g., *Greece*) with **Cape Town Basing** only **must** build with **MF** PPs (at **WF** costs).

EAST FRONT

ACTIVATION: Soviet (or *Turkish*) *Belligerence*. Axis PPs on **EF** map are assigned to **East Front**. Axis initial Allocation (0-40 PPs) from **WF** to **EF** made next Production. **Deactivation:** *EF Allocation = 0* (re: **OKH Flex**).

WEATHER: Separate **EF** weather die-roll every fortnight Oct-March, may generate in E. Baltic (7), Arctic (5 & 9) or Black Sea (3 & 11) *basins*. Snow weather can occur. Axis HQs are *Disrupted* in Snow, but **can** deploy.

First Winter Paralysis: Axis Movement & Firepower are reduced.

INITIATIVE: Soviet in Snow; Axis otherwise. The order of Player-Turns alters at times to reflect Allied initiative on one Front and Axis initiative on another (12.7).

AXIS LOGISTICS: Axis *West Front* and *Med Front* HQs activated on the *East Front* are *disrupted/cannot Blitz*. Same for the Soviet *North Front* HQ.

AIRPOWER: Separate **EF** Airpower ratings. Allied Extended Air Range and Air Supremacy do **not** apply.

PRODUCTION: Soviets always tracked separately. Once the **East Front** is *active*, **Axis** units there must be built with *East Front* PPs (before this *West Front* PPs are used). Axis **EF** Allocations can be raised 10 PPs in June (to 40 PPs any time), or reduced by **multiples of 10** PPs any Production.

MED FRONT

ACTIVATION: Italian *Belligerence*. Non-Resident units can enter **Med Front**.

Next Production: Axis & Allies make initial Allocations (0-15 PPs) from **WF** to **MF**; Italian 20Cps & Brit ANZ reinforcement arrive.

WEATHER: No separate die-roll. Weather always Dry, but **West Front** weather rolls can produce Mediterranean (3 & 11) or Atlantic (5 & 9) basin storms.

INITIATIVE: Same as the *West Front*.

AXIS LOGISTICS: Axis **WF** and **EF** HQs activated in the **Med Front** are *disrupted/cannot Blitz*..

SHQ CROSS-COMMAND: Axis & Allied **SHQs** in the **WF** can command units in the **MF** at half efficiency (and vice-versa). **Flex:** from **Gibraltar** or **Malta** **SHQs** can command in **WF** or **MF** at **full** efficiency, and in the other at half efficiency.

ACCLIMATIZATION: **All** units lose 2 cv upon first entering the **MF**. **All** units that leave the **MF** must re-acclimatize upon re-entry. Cavalry, SS, Fort, and SiegeGun units prohibited.

SEA INVASIONS: *Sea Invasions* between **MF** locations **prohibited**; **allowed** between **WF** and **MF** ports (only) **only** if they originate in a **major** port.

PARADROPS: Prohibited in the **MF** unless combined with a Sea Invasion.

AIRPOWER: Same as *West Front*, except Axis Airpower never exceeds **DF** in the **MF**. Allied *Extended Air Range* and *Air Supremacy* **do** apply. No Airstrikes into the **MF** from **another front** unless by a **MF** HQ.

PRODUCTION: Tracked separately after **MF** is *activated* (before: use **WF** PPs & **double MF** costs). All **MF** PPs must be imported by Allocation/Transfer (**MF** Production sources generate **WF** PPs). Allocations can be raised 5 PPs in June/ Dec (to 15 any time), or decreased by **multiples of 5** PPs at any time. Only **MF Units** can be rebuilt there as cadres if eliminated.

PRODUCTION COSTS: Use **Extreme** unit costs.

DESERT MAINTENANCE: Players pay 5 **MF** PPs (1 die-roll) for each **MF** Alien unit within the *DESERT ZONE*. Maintenance reductions do not prevent Saving remaining MF PPs if **none** otherwise spent.

SHIPPING LOSSES: All PPs Allocated to the *Med Front* are subject to *Shipping Losses*. Roll 1d6 per 5PPs. Total cannot *exceed* actual Allocation. *Mare Nostrum*: No Axis Shipping Losses if Gibraltar, Malta or Suez is controlled.

BASING: Allied/Axis units in the **MF** with **Casablanca/Tunis** or **Istanbul Basing** can be built with *West Front* PPs (1/2 the current **MF** Allocation max). **MF** unit costs are always used.

ARRIVAL LOCATIONS: New/rebuilt Allied units can arrive in any controlled **major** port; Axis units in Tripoli **only**.

NORTH AFRICA VICTORY (control of **all 6** North African **major** ports): *Acclimatization* canceled.

DESERT VICTORY (control of **all 7 MF** Desert Zone **major** ports, including **Basra**): *Desert Maintenance* canceled.

MED FRONT VICTORY (control of **all MF** **major** ports *except S. Africa*): **MF** amalgamated into the **WF** for that side: **all MF** restrictions lifted / units build with **WF** PPs at **WF** costs. [*MF Residents remain restricted.*]

NORTH FRONT

ACTIVATION: *Always* active.

WEATHER: **WF** Weather in the **WF**; **EF** weather in the **EF**. **WF** Storms possible in W. Baltic/Atlantic basins; **EF** Storms in E. Baltic/Arctic basins.

COMMAND: For Command purposes **Norway/Sweden** are **WF**, **Finland/USSR** are **EF** (see map).

SHQ CROSS COMMAND: Axis & Allied **SHQs** in the **WF** can command into the **NF** at half efficiency (and vice-versa). **Flex:** from **Copenhagen/Glasgow** **SHQs** can command in either front at full efficiency, and in the other at half. **STAVKA** can command normally in the **NF**.

AIRPOWER: As **MF** Airpower (Axis maximum **DF**).

ACCLIMATIZATION: Upon entry, **NF** units - 1cv & **NF** Aliens - 2 cv. Cavalry, SS, SiegeGun units prohibited (Forts OK).

SEA INVASIONS: *Sea Invasions* prohibited between **NF** locations; **allowed** between **WF/EF** and **NF** ports (only).

PRODUCTION: For Production purposes **Norway/Sweden** are **WF**, **Finland/USSR** are **EF** (see map). Use **Extreme** unit costs (Scandinavians exempt). Only **NF** units can rebuild there if eliminated.

ARCTIC MAINTENANCE: Deduct 5 *home front* PPs per **NF** Alien unit within the *ARCTIC ZONE*.

ARRIVAL LOCATIONS: New/rebuilt Allied units can arrive in controlled **major** ports; Axis units in **Oslo** (or Stockholm).

NATIONAL SPECIAL RULES SUMMARY

GERMANY

- **1939 SETUP (20.11, 1939):** By *Army Group*. Must garrison borders with France, Belgium, and Poland.
- **Units (20.11):** DAK armor is *elite* within the **MF**.
- **Occupation Limits (20.132):** no more than 4 units inside territory of Axis minors (unless prior enemy entry).
- **Molotov Pact (20.14):** entry into Baltic States/Finland/Persia/Finland is a DoW on USSR. Must exit E Poland after DE **PP**.
- **Border Disputes (20.15):** must garrison Axis/Soviet borders in buffer states or risk losing territory (1 month grace period after changes).
- **Surprise (20.16):** attacked neutrals cannot repulse assaults or sea movement; HQs disrupted.
- **Betrayal (20.17):** attacking a pro-Axis neutral has negative Diplomatic effects, cancels *Surprise in future*.
- **Winter Paralysis (20.18):** during first **EF** Winter, Axis units on the **EF** are severely disadvantaged.
- **Oil & Ore Supplies (17.1/17.2):** Axis penalized if *Lines of Communication* to Ploesti/Gallivare broken.

ITALY

- **SETUP (20.22):** Must garrison major cities, Albania. *MF Residents*: 1/ **MF** port (in/adjacent). *Peacetime Production* applies.
- **Unit Restriction (20.23):** Restricted to *Greater Italy* if belligerent by DE **IX**. *MF Residents* restricted to the **MF**.
- **Demoralization/Surrender (20.25):** May *Surrender* if demoralized (16.71) by loss of a Major City, Libya, Albania, Sardinia or Sicily.
- **Defeat (20.26):** All *Mediterranean Basin* seas become Allied controlled regardless of naval base ownership.

BRITAIN/US

- **1939 SETUP (20.31, 1939):** *MF* units in/adjacent to Egypt ports. *ME* units in bases. Fortress garrisons therein. Other units in Britain.
- **Units (20.35):** Infantry/*Amphib* move 3 (motorized).
- **Unit Restriction (20.31 & 20.34):** *NF Expeds BGs* restricted to **NF** / Britain. *MF Residents* restricted to the **MF**. *Fortress garrisons* restricted to same. Cannot enter FNA prior to Axis entry or French defeat.
- **Command (20.33):** SHQs can command Allied minor units *anywhere*. Allies cannot issue DoWs before W/39 or during *Phony War*.

FRANCE

- **1939 SETUP (20.41, 1939):** Must garrison major cities. 1 unit allowed in Sedan/Phillipeville. Forts 1/*Maginot Line* hex. *MF Residents* 1/**MF** port (in/adjacent).
- **Units (20.41):** Infantry fires SF/**DF** (until *demoralized*).
- **Unit Restriction (20.41):** *MF Residents* restricted to the **MF**. Other units restricted to France/Belgium and adjacent nations.
- **Command (20.42):** Only French HQs can command French unit movement (can Combat Support for all Allied). GQG can command Allied minor units *anywhere*. **Gamelin:** Allied HQs in France cannot *Blitz in the fortnight of Belgian Surprise*.
- **Production (20.43):** France can only build **one** CV per month during *Phony War*.
- **Morale (20.44):** fails if a French/Belgian major city or Maginot fort is lost. Infantry fires SF/**SF**, HQs are disrupted, and *Solidarity* tested every **Axis** Politics.
- **Solidarity (20.45):** Check every Axis Politics after *demoralization*. Depends on # of BEF units. First test failure = *Pétain Regime*, 2nd failure = France must sue for *Armistice* (20.46).
- **Defeat (20.47):** IX mandatory as next Axis DE (Italy neutral), DE RB enabled. British units can enter FNA, 2 British *Home Guard* arrive next Production.

Vichy -- (French Armistice accepted)

- **Cooperation (20.482):** PPs/ Rail Transit to Axis.
- **SETUP (20.484):** Upon *belligerence*: 5 **MF** Residents 1/ FNA port (in/ adjacent); 2 other units inside Vichy. Use black or blue blocks.
- **Demoralization (20.486):** Upon DE 2F or Allied control of Libya. Can *Surrender* / *Capitulate*.

Free France -- (French Armistice rejected)

- **Anglo French Union (20.491):** If *Armistice* rejected, *French* units become *converted* to FF (= non-motorized British).
- **Converted French Units (20.493):** no rebuilding dead cadres, HQ command restricted to France/FNA & adjacent nations/colonies.
- **FF SETUP** (Upon *Vichy Betrayal*: 20.492): as for Vichy, use blue blocks.

SOVIET UNION

- **1939 SETUP (20.51, 1939):** By Military District.
- **Neutrality (20.51):** Units restricted to *Greater Russia*. Must garrison hexes bordering Axis or risk their loss. *Peacetime Production* = 1/3rd. Cannot issue *DoWar*, but can fight Finland via DE **WW** (20.57).
- **Belligerence (20.52):** By Axis *DoWar* or *Mobilization* (DE **SM**) **only**. Full Production. *Reserve Armies* arrive immediately (**not** *Strat Reserve*).
- **Units (20.53):** Use Allied costs until *Great Patriotic War* (20.56), then Soviet costs. HQ costs 20 PPs/CV until DEs **S1** & **S2** reduce this.
- **Occupation Limits (20.53):** no more than 4 units inside territory of Allied minors (unless prior Axis entry).
- **Oil Supply (20.591)/Lend Lease (20.592):** Loss of LOC/Sea Route to Baku or LOC to London reduces Soviet Production.

MINOR POWERS

- **SETUP (20.61):** Cannot stack. *Peacetime Production* applicable.
- **Production (20.64):** If has *National Supply* but *isolated*, can only build using national PPs (separate PP pool).

Belgium

- **SETUP (20.72):** 1 French unit allowed in Phillipeville while neutral. Fort must go in Liege (= inv vs airdrop).

Sweden & Finland

- *NF Veterans*, no *Extreme costs*, THQs support combat at home (SF air). Infantry moves 2 in Snow, fires SF/**DF** at home (Finns **DF/DF**).
- **FINLAND (20.82):** Can stack upon DE **WW**; begin 100% *PtProduction*.
- **SWEDEN (20.83):** *PtP* 3 after **DS**. Traces *National Supply* internally.

Spain & Portugal

- **SPAIN (20.74):** May trace *National Supply* internally, *Volunteers* may appear if Allied/Axis occupied (17.7).
- **PORTUGAL (20.75):** *Demoralized* / *Ambivalent* by DE 2F, may *Capitulate* / *Surrender*.

Norway & Denmark

- **DENMARK (20.71):** **No** *PtProduction*. May *Submit* (see Axis DE **DS**).
- **NORWAY (20.81):** Setup 1 unit/port **only**. Units are *NF Residents*. Defeated as **Major** Power (Oslo lost & all units eliminated). Upon Allied **NP**, can *Surrender*, units can *Capitulate* / *Defect*.

ME Mandates/Protectorates

- **Units (20.92):** *MF Residents*. **Do not react to Axis entry**.
- **Bases (21.397):** British bases in Iraq & Persia.

Turkey

- **Units (20.91):** Fort must go in Kanakkale. Within *home* territory, Turkish units fire SF/**DF**.
- **Supply (20.91):** Turkey can trace its *National Supply* internally (Ankara to Istanbul). Allied minors cannot trace *National Supply* through Turkey once Soviets belligerent.

DISTRICT / REGION / ROUTE SUMMARY

ROUTE (SYMBOL)	SHORT ROUTE (SMALL DOTTED LINE)	LONG ROUTE (LARGE DOTTED LINE)
Length / Type	2 HEXES / RAIL = red / ROAD = brown	5 HEXES / RAIL = red / ROAD = brown
COMMAND		
Activating HQs can deploy via	NO	NO
HQ Command / Air Range traced via	2 hexes	5 hexes
Field HQs can command movement along	Yes (by March)	NO
SHQ/THQs can command movement along	Yes (by March)	Yes (by DoubleMarch)
Field HQs can [deactivate] mobilize via	Yes (by March)	NO
SHQ/THQs can mobilize strategically via	YES	Rail: YES Road: Only if 1 Supreme Move reserved (to enable a DoubleMarch)
MOVEMENT		
Land Movement distance	1 March	1 DoubleMarch
Rail/Air/Command distance	2 hexes	5 hexes
Engagement Limit via	2 units / phase	2 units / phase
AREA (SYMBOL)	DISTRICT (CIRCLE)	REGION (SQUARE)
Size	± 2 hexes in diameter	± 5 hexes in diameter
Stacking / Control / Terrain	As for hexes	As for hexes
ENGAGEMENT		
Engage into friendly	Yes (by March or Strategic Move)	Yes (by March or Strategic Move)
Engage into enemy	Yes (by March only)	Yes (DoubleMarch only)
Rail through engagements in	NO	Only if friendly
Sea Move into engagements in	NO	Only if friendly Port
Disengage from by Strategic Move	Yes (not to Retreat)	Yes (not to Retreat)
Disengage and Re-engage into	Only if both areas friendly	Only if both areas friendly
HQs can enter engagements in	YES	YES
INVASIONS / PARADROPS		
Sea Invasion into	Yes (if Port present - regardless of terrain)	Yes (if Port present regardless of terrain)
Paradrop into	Yes (if within Air Range)	Yes (if within Air Range)
COMBAT	Optional (Assaults mandatory)	Optional (Assaults mandatory)
SUPPLY		
Rail Supply into engaged	Yes	Yes
Rail Supply through engaged	NO	Only if friendly
Sea Supply into engaged	Siege Supply only (if friendly port)	Only if friendly port
PRODUCTION		
Production Costs (unengaged)	Normal	Normal
Production Costs (unit engaged)	Double	Double

GAME DATA

SEASON BREAK

(June/Dec)

- Record Airpower Changes
- Record Basic Production Increases
- Increase **MF/EF** [June] Allocations

THE GAME MONTH

Production Phase

- Determine *Available PPs*
 - Allocated PPs
 - Add incoming PP Transfers
 - MF**: Deduct Maintenance
 - MF**: Deduct Shipping Losses
 - Add Previously Saved PPs
 - Deduct outgoing PP Transfers
- Spend ALL (OR save) *PPs*
- Build Replacement steps
- Rebuild/Deploy Cadres
- Deploy Reinforcements
- Disband Units
- Decrease **MF/EF** Allocations

Diplomacy Phase (Allies/Axis)

Fortnight I

- Weather Phase (Oct-May)
- First Player-Turn
- Second Player-Turn
- Third Player-Turn

Fortnight II

- Repeat FORTNIGHT I Procedure

THE PLAYER-TURN

Command Phase

- Declarations of War & Alliance Reactions
- Activate/Deploy HQs

Movement Phase

- Move units under command
- Reduce/Mobilize HQs (no support)
- Sea/Invasion Movement Interdiction

Combat Phase

- Target Airstrikes
- Select other Active Battles
- Resolve Active Battles (one by one)
 - Airstrike / Def. Fire / Off. Fire
- Reduce/Deactivate Support HQs

Blitz Movement Phase*

- Repeat MOVEMENT PHASE

Blitz Combat Phase*

- Repeat COMBAT PHASE

Supply Phase

- BH Placement
- Invasion Dispersal Recovery**
- Paradrop Linkup
- Sea [& BH] Supply Interdiction
- Supply Attrition

Politics Phase

- Morale
- French Armistice
- Revolt/Surrender
- Defeat/Conquest
- Naval Supremacy

* *Only if Blitz HQs Active*

UNIT DATA

Unit Type	SPEED			FIRE POWER	AXIS COSTS		ALLIED COSTS		SOVIET COSTS ¹¹		EXTREME COSTS	
	Dry	Sno	Mud		Step	Cad	Step	Cad	Step	Cad	Step	Cad
Armor	3	2	1	DF ¹	8	12	8	16	4	8	12	24
Mech	3	2	1	SF/DF ²	6	9	6	12	3	6	9	18
Infantry	2 ³	1 ³	1 ³	SF	4	6	4	8	2	4	6	12
Mountain	2	1	1	SF ⁴	5	8	5	10	3	6	8	16
Cavalry	3	2	2	SF	6	9	6	12	3	6	•	•
Para	2	1	1	SF/DF	12 ⁵	18 ⁵	12 ⁵	24 ⁵	6 ⁵	12 ⁵	18 ⁵	36 ⁵
Amphib	2 ³	1 ³	1 ³	SF ⁸	•	•	4	12	2	6	6	18
Shock	1	1	1	DF	•	•	•	•	3	6	•	•
Fort	0 ⁶	0 ⁶	0 ⁶	SF/TF	10	15	10	20	•	•	15	30•
Static	1 ⁷	1 ⁷	1 ⁷	SF	3	2	3	3	•	•	4	4
HQ	2	1	1	•	10 ⁹	20 ⁹	10 ⁹	20 ⁹	10 ¹²	20 ¹²	10 ¹⁰	20 ¹⁰
THQ	2	1	1	•	5	10	5	10	•	•	5	10

1 Armor TF/DF in desert

2 Mech DF/DF in desert

3 British/US infantry/amph move 3/2/1

4 Mountain units DF in mountains

5 Para costs halved if grounded

6 Rail/Sea Movement only (unengaged)

7 SHQ/THQ command only

8 Allied Amphib fires DF on own Beachhead

9 +5/10 in Sea Supply; +10/20 in BH Supply

10 +5/10 in Sea Supply; +10/20 in Road Supply

11 Use Allied Costs until Great Patriotic War

12 20/step, 40/cadre until Red Army Reforms

AIRPOWER	S39	W39	S40	W40	S41	W41	S42	W42	S43	W43	S44	W44
AXIS EF	TF	TF	TF	TF	TF	DF	DF	DF	DF	SF	SF	•
WF/MF	TF#	TF#	TF#	DF	DF	DF	DF	SF	SF	SF	•	•
ALLIES	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	DF	DF	DF	TF	TF+	TF*	TF*
SOVIETS	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	SF	DF	DF	DF	TF	TF
BASIC PROD	S39	W39	S40	W40	S41	W41	S42	W42	S43	W43	S44	W44
AXIS	-30	-30	-30	-30	-30	-25	-20	-15	-10	-5	0	0
ALLIES	-20	-15	-10	-5	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	60
SOVIETS	-24	-24	-24	-18	-12	-6	0	8	8	8	8	8
# DF in MF/NF			+ Extended Air Range				* Air Supremacy					

ASSAULT REPULSES

River	1-2 (1-3 in Mud, 1 in MF*)		
Air	1 (1-3 vs. Fortresses)		
Sea	ENS ¹	N Par	FNS ¹
Of Amph units	SR	DR	TR
Of other units	DR	TR	QR

SEA INTERDICTION

Of Enemy	ENS ¹	N Par	FNS ¹
Invasions	SR/SF	DR/DF	TR/TF
Sea Moves	DR/DF	TR/TF	QR/QF
BH Supply	SR	DR	TR
Sea Supply	DR	TR	QR

* Exc. Nile ¹ Enemy/Friendly Naval Suprem

SR: 1 = Repulse

DR: 1-2 = Repulse

TR: 1-3 = Repulse

QR: 1-4 = Repulse

HEX CONTROL EFFECTS

Command	FR	DIS	EN
Deploy HQ into	Yes*	No	No
Command through	Yes	Yes	No
Movement	FR	DIS	EN
Land Move into	Yes	Yes	Yes
Strategic Move into	Yes*	No	No
Engage into	Yes	Yes	Yes
Disengage into	Yes*	No	No
Supply	FR	DIS	EN
Rail Supply thru hex	Yes†	No	No
Land Supply thru hex	Yes	Yes	No

FR = Friendly, DIS = Disputed, EN = Enemy

* Not into battle hexes

† Into friendly battle hexes only (not through)

INDEX

Italicized text = see sidebar,
1942.1 = 1942 Scenario Rule #1

Acclimatization 6.73, 21.351, 21.441

MF Entry/Re-entry 21.351
MF Expeditions 20.11, 20.21, 20.31, 20.493
MF Residents 20.21, 20.31, 20.41, 20.493
MF Veterans 20.11, 20.31
MF Victory 17.63, 21.395
NF Entry/Re-entry 21.441
NF Expeditions 20.11, 20.31, 20.412
NF Residents 20.81, 20.411
NF Veterans 20.11, 20.53, 20.82, 20.83, 21.413

Active Player 4.3

Active Battles 7.14
 Counter-Attacks 7.23
 HQ Activation 4.313
 Politics 16.7
 Supply Interdiction 15.73
 Unsupported Combat 7.4

Air Assaults 7.64

Para Combat 14.41

Airpower 13.0

Air Range 13.11
 Air Firepower 13.23
 Airpower Disruption 13.12
 Airstrike[s] 7.13, 13.2
 Airstrike CV 13.22
 Allied Coordination 5.34
 Extended Air Range 13.31
 HQ Airpower 5.4, 13.1
MF Airstrikes 21.393
 Resolving Airstrikes 13.24
 Targeting 13.21

Alliance Reactions 16.5

Sequence of Play 4.312
 Cooperating Powers 16.2
 Secondary Reactions 16.52

Allied, Allies

Air Firepower 13.23
 Air Superiority 13.3
 Air Supremacy 13.32, 1944.02
 Allied Solidarity 20.45
 Belligerence 16.3
 Cape Town Basing 21.14, 21.381
 Casablanca Basing 21.382
 Command & Supply 5.34, 1940.03
 Command Coordination 5.34
 Extended Air Range 13.3, 1943.03
 Initiative 4.22
MF Basing 21.38
 Naval Supremacy 15.8
 Unit Capitulation [to] 7.7, 20.486
 Unit Restriction 20.34

Ambivalence 16.711

Amphibious Units 2.31

Beachheads [BH] 15.6
 BH Emplacement 15.62
 Full Motorization of 20.35
 Long-Range Invasions 15.542
MF Expeditions 20.31
 Sea Assaults 7.63
 Sea Evacuations 15.55
 Sea Invasion 15.5
 Shore Bombardment 15.66
 The Soviet BH 15.67

Anglo-French Union 20.491

Annexation 16.6, 20.1, 20.58

Arab Nationalism 20.47

Arctic Zone [NF] 21.4

Arctic Maintenance 21.461

Areas 18.0

Combat 18.4
 Command 18.2
 Command Range 18.22
 Control 18.1
 Engaging 18.35
 Engagement Limits 18.37
 HQs 18.21
 Marches 18.331
 Movement 18.3
 Production 18.6
 Rail Routes 18.32
 Road Routes 18.33
 Sea Movement 18.34
 Stacking 18.12
 Supply 18.5
 Unit Costs 18.62

Armistice 16.72

Assault 7.6

Air Assault 7.64
 Combined Assault 7.65
 Naval Supremacy Effects 15.823
 Repulse 7.61, 15.531
 River Assault 7.62
 Sea Assault 7.63, 15.53
 Unit Capitulation 7.7, 20.486
 Weather 12.6

Attack 6.4

Assaults 7.6
 HQ Airpower 13.1
 Supreme Move 5.71
 Weather 12.33, 12.44, 12.45

Axis

Air Firepower 13.23
 Amphibious units 21.493
 Surprise Attacks 20.16
 Axis-Soviet Borders 20.15
 Belligerence 16.3, 20.22

Betrayal 16.41, 20.17
 Border Disputes 16.42
 Border Garrisons 20.51
 Command and Supply 5.35, 20.12
 Cooperation with 16.2
EF Logistics 21.25
EF Production 21.23
 Finland 20.82
 Finnish Armistice 21.482
 French Morale checks 20.44, 20.45
 French Armistice 20.46
 Germany 20.1
 Initiative 4.22
MF Victory 17.63
MF Basing 21.382, 21.384
MF Production 21.37
 Mare Nostro 17.5
 Minor Powers 20.6
 Naval Supremacy 15.8
 Occupation Limits 20.132
 Oil Supply 17.1
 Paratroop Grounding 14.6
 Phony War 20.43
 PP Transfers 21.24
 French Refuse Armistice 20.46
 Satellites 16.3
 Territory 16.21
 Unit Restriction 20.23, 20.131, 21.316, 21.415
 Victory 19.2
 Winter Paralysis 12.45

Balkan Pacification 17.4

Baltic States 20.6

Axis-Soviet Borders 20.15
 Border Disputes 16.42
 Border Garrisons 20.51
 Minor Powers 20.6
 Molotov Pact 16.42, 20.14, 20.58
 Soviet Territory 20.51

Bases 1.452

Supply 10.71

Basing 21.14, 21.38

Cape Town [Allies] 21.14, 21.381
 Istanbul [Axis] 21.385
 Morocco [Allies] 21.382
 Tunis [Axis] 21.385

Battles 7.1

Active Battles 7.14
 Air Assaults 14.41
 Airstrikes 7.13, 13.21
 Assaults 7.6
 Attacks 6.4
 Battle Hexes 7.11
 Combat Resolution 7.2
 Combat Rounds 7.21
 Combat Sequence 7.22
 Counter-Attacks 7.23

INDEX

- Deploying HQs 5.21
- Disengaging 6.32
- Executing Fire 7.31
- Friendly Battle Hexes 8.31
- HQ Airpower 5.4, 13.1
- Hexside Limits 6.33
- Mandatory Combat 7.15
- Mobile HQs 5.51
- Original Attacker /Defender 7.12
- Rail Moves 9.21
- Rearguards 6.51
- Repulse 7.61
- Retreats 6.5
- Rivers 1.36
- Unit Capitulation 20.486
- Beachhead [BH] 15.6**
 - Advanced Arrival 11.82
 - BH Preparation 11.74, 15.61
 - BH Supply 10.34, 15.63, 11.733
 - BH Supply Interdiction 15.73
 - Emplacement 15.62
 - Mulberries 15.65
 - Shore Bombardment 15.66
 - Soviet BH 15.67
 - Storm Effects 12.51
- Belgium 20.72**
 - Allied Solidarity 20.45
 - National Supply 10.21
 - Phony War 20.43
 - Sedan 20.41, 20.72
- Belligerence 16.3**
 - Alliance Reaction 16.51
 - Italy 20.22
 - Minor Powers 20.6
 - Soviet 20.52
 - Turkey 20.91
- Berlin**
 - Allied Victory 19.3
 - Axis Supply 20.12, 20.24
 - Axis Supply Origin 10.2
 - Flex Points 5.723
 - National Supply 10.21, 20.485, 20.63
 - Oil Supply [Ploesti] 17.1
 - Rail Line Control 9.12
 - SHQ Disruption 5.7
 - Victory Cities 19.5
 - WF-EF** Cross Command 5.722
- Bessarabia 20.51**
 - Axis-Soviet Borders 20.15
 - Border Garrisons 20.51
 - Molotov Pact 16.42, 20.14, 20.58
 - Soviet Annexation DE 20.58
- Betrayal 16.41**
 - Allied Betrayal 20.36
 - Axis Betrayal 20.17
 - Declarations of War 16.41
- Border**
 - Border Disputes 16.42, 20.14, 20.15
 - [Garrisons 20.51](#)
 - Winter War 20.58
- Britain 20.3**
 - Anglo-French Union 20.491
 - British Protectorates 20.921
 - Command & Supply 20.33
 - MF** Expeditions 21.313
 - MF** Residents 21.311
 - MF** Veterans 21.312
- Bulgaria**
 - Balkan Pacification 17.4
 - Peacetime Production 16.32
 - Pro-Axis Minors 20.6
 - Surrender 16.82
- Cape Town Basing 21.381**
- Cavalry 2.25**
 - Marsh 1.32
 - Mountain 1.34
 - Movement 6.1, 12.33
 - Soviet 20.51, 20.521
- Chamberlain 16.4, 20.33**
- Cities 1.4**
 - Double Defense 7.34
 - Defensive Firepower 7.32
 - Major Cities 1.41
 - Minor Cities 1.42
 - Terrain Stacking 6.21
 - Victory Cities 1.411
- Clear Terrain 1.31**
 - Mud Weather 12.3
 - Terrain Stacking 6.21
- Combat 7.0**
 - Active Battles 7.14
 - Airstrikes 7.13
 - Applying Hits 7.33
 - Area Combat 18.4
 - Assaults 7.6
 - Attacks 6.4
 - Battle Hex Control 8.1
 - Blitz Combat 4.35
 - Blitz HQs 5.6
 - Combat Phase 4.33
 - Combat Support 5.52, 5.34
 - Combat Value [CV] 2.5
 - Counter-Attacks 7.23
 - Disengaging 6.32
 - Double Defense 7.34
 - [Engaging 6.31](#)
 - Fort Units 2.28
 - Fortresses 1.45, 7.5
 - Invasion HQ Combat Support 15.511
 - Mandatory Combat 6.4, 7.15, 7.5
 - Minor Command 20.62
 - Minor Fortresses 7.51
- Mud Weather 12.33
- Original Attacker/ Defender 7.12
- Para Combat 14.4
- Pursuit Fire 6.52
- Resolution 7.2
- Resolving Airstrikes 13.24
- Sequence 4.331, [7.22](#)
- SHQ Combat Support 5.74
- Snow Weather 12.44
- Step Reduction 2.6
- Targeting Airstrikes 13.21
- Triple Defense 7.35
- Unit Capitulation 7.7
- Unsupported Combat 7.4
- Command [HQs] 5.0**
 - Active Battles 7.14
 - Airstrikes 7.13
 - Allied Coordination 5.34
 - Allied/Soviet 5.34, 20.34
 - [Axis Coordination 5.35](#)
 - Axis Logistics 5.33
 - Blitz HQs 5.6
 - Blitz Invasion HQs 15.512, 15.54
 - British/US 20.33
 - Combat Support HQs 5.52
 - Command Range 5.31, [8.4](#), 18.22
 - Cross Command 5.72
 - Headquarters [HQ] 2.4, 5.1
 - HQ Activation 4.313, [5.2](#)
 - HQ Airpower 5.4
 - HQ Command Range 5.31
 - HQ Disruption 5.32
 - Invasion Command 15.51
 - Invasion/Paradrop HQs 5.9, [14.2](#), [15.5](#)
 - MF** Command 21.34
 - Minor Command 20.62
 - Mobile HQs 5.51
 - Mud Weather 12.31
 - NF** Command 21.43
 - Paradrop HQs 14.21
 - SHQ Combat Support 5.74
 - SHQ Command Range 5.72
 - SHQ Mobilization 5.73
 - Snow Weather 12.42
 - Strategic Movement 6.62, 6.72
 - Supreme HQs [SHQs] 5.7
 - Supreme Moves 5.71, 6.6
 - Theater HQs [THQs] 5.8
 - Unsupported Combat 7.4
- Command & Supply**
 - Britain/U.S. 20.33
 - France 20.42
 - Free France 20.494
 - Germany 20.12
 - Italy 20.24
 - MF** 21.34
 - NF** 21.43
 - Soviet Union 20.54

INDEX

Compliance (Swedish) 21.492 16.2

Control

- Hex Control 8.1
- National Territory 1.7, 16.6
- Zones of Control 8.2

Conquest 16.92

Cooperation 16.2

Curzon Line 20.14

Danzig

- Axis Annexation 20.1
- Free City 1939 Scenario—Borders

Declaration Of War 16.4

- Allied Betrayal 20.36
- Alliance Reactions 4.312, 16.5
- Axis Betrayal 20.17
- Axis Surprise Attacks 20.16, 20.42, 20.54
- Command Phase 4.311
- Soviets 20.51, 20.521

Defeat 16.9

- Conquest 16.92
- Defeated Forces 16.91
- French Defeat 20.47, 20.22
- French North Africa (FNA) Colony 20.4
- Italian Defeat 20.26
- Polish Defeat 20.43

Defection 16.84

Demoralization 16.71

Denmark 20.71

- Northern Seaway 15.81

Desert Terrain 1.35

- Area Combat 18.4
- Armor/Mech Firepower 7.32, 21.36
- Depressions 1.352
- Desert Maintenance 21.372
- Desert Victory 17.62
- MF** Areas 18.0
- Sand Seas 1.351
- Terrain Stacking 6.21

Diplomacy

- Beginning Play 22.2
- Diplomacy Phase 4.12

Disengaging 6.32

- Hexside Limits 6.33
- Retreats 6.5

Districts (circles) 18.0

- Combat 18.4
- Command 18.2
- Command Range 18.22
- Control 18.11
- Engaging 18.35
- Engagement Limits 18.37
- HQs 18.21
- Marches 18.33

- Movement 18.3
- Production 18.61
- Rail Routes 18.32
- Road Routes 18.33
- Sea Movement 18.34
- Stacking 18.12
- Supply 18.5
- Unit Costs 18.62

Double Defense 7.34

- Forest/Hill terrain 1.32
- Major Cities 1.41
- Marsh terrain 1.33
- Minor Fortresses 7.51
- Mountain terrain 1.34
- Mud weather 12.33
- Resolving Airstrikes 13.24

Double Fire [DF] 7.32

- Desert Combat 21.36

Dry Weather 12.2

- Repulse 7.61
- River Assaults 7.62, 12.6
- Weather Determination 12.1

East Front [EF] 21.2

Eben Emael 20.72

Engagement 6.3

- (see also Disengaging)
- Area Movement 18.35
- Attacks 6.4
- Hexside Limits 6.33

Factions

- Belligerence 16.3
- Betrayal 16.41
- Conquest 16.92
- Declarations of War 4.311, 16.4
- Defeat 16.9
- Diplomacy Phase 4.12
- Isolated Minors 11.34, 20.64
- Minor Powers 20.6
- Minor Production 20.64
- National Supply 10.21
- Supply Origin 10.2

Finland 20.82

- Greater Finland 20.82
- Molotov Pact 20.14, 20.58
- Ports 15.1
- Road Supply 10.33
- Ski Troops 20.8, 21.442
- Winter War 20.57, 1939

Firepower 7.32

- Airstrike 13.23
- Amphibious 2.31
- Armor 2.21, 1.35, 21.36
- Axis Winter Paralysis 12.45
- Cavalry 2.25
- Combat Fire 7.32
- Desert 1.35

- Executing Fire 7.31
- Fort Units 2.28
- French Army Artillery 20.41
- Headquarters [HQ] 2.4, 5.1
- Infantry 2.23
- Marsh terrain 1.33
- Mechanized 2.22, 1.35
- Mountain Infantry 2.24
- Mud Weather 12.33
- Paratroops 2.32
- Pursuit Fire 6.52
- Resolving Airstrikes 13.24
- Shock Unit 2.26
- SS Unit 2.33

Flexpoints 5.723

Forest Terrain 1.32

- Double Defense 7.34
- Hexside Limits 6.33
- Mud Weather 12.3
- Snow Weather 12.4
- Terrain Stacking 6.21

Fortnight 4.2

- Beginning Play 22.2
- Game Month 4.1
- Initiative 4.22, 12.7
- Weather 4.21, 12.1

Fort Units 2.28

- Belgian Fort Unit 20.72
- French Fort Units 21.41
- Restrictions 21.316, 21.415

Fortified Ports 1.44

Fortresses 1.45, 7.5

- Air Assaults vs. 14.41, 14.42
- Combat 7.5
- Counter-Attacks 7.23
- Firepower 7.32
- Fortress Supply 10.7
- Garrisons 20.31
- Gibraltar 1.45
- Leningrad 20.51
- Malta 1.45
- Minor Fortresses 7.51
- Sevastopol 17.3
- Siege Supply 15.41
- Stacking 1.45, 6.21
- Supply Attrition 10.6
- Triple Defense 7.35
- Triple Fire 7.32
- Unsupported Combat 7.4

France 20.4

- Allied Solidarity 20.45
- Anglo-French Union 20.491
- Bessarabia DE 20.58
- Command and Supply 20.42, 20.494
- Defeat 20.47
- Demoralization 16.71, 20.44

INDEX

Forces 20.41
 Free France 20.49
 French Armistice 16.72, 20.46
 French Colonies 20.4
 FNA (French North Africa) 20.4
 Morale 20.44, 16.71
 National Supply 20.63
 National Territory 1.7
 Occupied 20.481
 Phony War 20.43
 Revolt 16.731
 Successor States 20.4
 Vichy 20.48
 Vichy Territory 20.481

Fronts 21.0

Active & Inactive 21.12, 21.22, 21.32
 Air Firepower 13.23
 Air Range 13.11
 Allocations 11.5
 Available PPs 11.4
 Basic Production 11.31
 HQ Command 5.31
MF Acclimatization 6.73, 21.351
NF Acclimatization 6.73, 21.441
 Production Overview 11.1
 PP Sources 11.3
 PP Transfers 11.6
 SHQ Air Range 5.75
 SHQ Command Range 5.72
 SS Builds 2.33
 Transferring PPs 11.61
 Weather Determination 12.1
WF-EF Cross Command 5.722
WF-MF/NF Cross Command 5.721

FrontlineHexes 22.31

Germany 20.1

MF Expeditions 20.11
MF Veterans 20.11
 Molotov Pact 16.42, 20.14, 20.58
 National Territory 1.7
MF Veterans 20.11
 OB Cards 22.1
 Phony War 20.43
 Supply Origin 10.2

Gibraltar

Flex Points 5.723
 Fortress Combat 7.5
 Fortress Supply 10.7
 Mare Nostro 17.5
 Stacking 1.45
 Triple Defense 7.35

Great Power

Britain/U.S. 20.3
 Defeat 16.9
 Germany 20.1
 National Supply 10.21
 Soviet Union 20.51

Greece 20.73

Allied **MF** Basing 21.381
 Revolt 16.731
 Greater Italy 20.2
 National Territory 1.7
 Balkan Pacification 17.4

Headquarters [HQs] 5.0

Activation 4.313, 5.2
 Airpower 5.4, 7.13, 13.1
 Air Range 13.11
 Airstrike CV 13.22
 Airstrikes 7.13
 Allied Command 20.33
 Applying Hits 7.33
 Area Command 18.2
 Axis Command 20.24
 Axis Logistics 5.33
 Axis **EF** Logistics 21.25
 Axis HQ Costs - Oil Supply 11.735, 17.1
 Axis Surprise 20.16, 20.42, 20.54
 Axis Winter Paralysis 12.45
 Blitz Combat 4.35
 Blitz HQs 5.6
 Blitz Invasion HQs 15.512
 Building Costs 11.73, 18.62
 Combat Support HQs 5.52
 Command Range 5.31, 8.4, 18.22
 Disruption 5.32
 Invasion Command 15.51
 Invasion HQ Combat Support 15.511
MF Overseas Supply 11.731
MF Command 21.34
 Minor Power Command 20.62
 Oil Supply [Ploesti] 17.1, 20.54
 Paratroop HQs 14.21
 Red Army Reforms 20.54, 20.57
 Sea Evacuation 15.55
 Sea Invasion 15.5, 15.822
 SHQ Combat Support 5.74
 Soviet Costs 20.54, 20.57, 20.591
 Soviet Oil Supply 20.591
 Spain 20.74
 Stalin's Purges 20.5
 Supreme Moves 6.6
 Theater HQs 5.8
 Unit Type 2.2
 Unsupported Combat 4.33, 7.4

Hex Control 8.0

Control Effects 8.4
 Hex Status 8.3
 Invasion Dispersal 15.56
 Paratroop Dispersal 14.3
 Paratroop Linkup 14.5

Hexside

Clear 1.31
 Forest/Hills 1.32
 Fortresses 1.45

Frozen River 12.43
 Limits 6.33, 21.352
 Marsh 1.33
 Mountain 1.34
 River Assaults 12.6
 Rivers 1.36
 Straits 1.371
 Terrain 1.3
 Zones of Control 8.2

Hexside Limit 6.33

Engagement 6.33
 River Assaults 12.6
 Road Movement 21.352

Hill Terrain 1.32

Double Defense 7.34
 Mud Weather 12.3
 Terrain Stacking 6.21

Hit

Applying Hits 7.33
 Firepower 7.32
 Pursuit Fire 6.52

Holland

Phony War 20.43

Home Cities 1.4

Home Front 11.31

Home Territory 1.7

Hungary 16.82

Pro-Axis Minors 20.6
 Surrender 16.82
 Balkan Pacification 17.4

Impassable Terrain

Alpine Mountain 1.34
 Air Range 13.11
 Depressions 1.352
 HQ Command 5.31
 Lakes 1.37
 Sand Seas [**MF**] 1.351
 Supply Lines 10.4
 Zones of Control 8.2

Initiative 4.22, 12.7

Isolated Powers 11.34, 20.64

Istanbul

MF Basing 21.385

Italy 20.2

Belligerence 20.22, 20.47
 Command and Supply 20.24
 Cooperation 16.2
 Demoralization 16.71
 Defeat 20.26, 15.21
 Forces 20.21
MF Expeditions 21.313
MF Residents 21.311
 National Supply 20.24, 20.63
 National Territory 1.7
 Occupation Limits 20.132

INDEX

Surrender 16.71, 16.81, 20.25
Unit Restriction 20.23

Lakes 1.36

Lend-Lease 20.592

Leningrad

Fortresses 1.45
Fortress Combat 7.5
Triple Defense 7.35
USSR Territory 20.51

Line of Communication 10.21

London

Supply Origin 10.2, 20.33, 20.42, 20.494
National Supply 10.21, 20.63
Rail Line Control 9.12
SHQ Disruption 5.7

Maintenance

Arctic Maintenance 21.461
Desert Maintenance 21.372

Maginot Line 20.41

Anglo-French Union 20.491
French Morale 16.71, 20.44
Fort units 2.28
Free French Forces 20.492

Major Power, Introduction

Defeat 16.9
France 20.4
Italy 20.2

Malta

Flex Points 5.723
Fortress Combat 7.5
Fortress Supply 10.7
Mare Nostro 17.5
Stacking 1.45
Triple Defense 7.35

Mandatory Combat 7.15

Attacks 6.4
Unsupported 7.4

Mare Nostro 17.5

1940A.4e

Marsh Terrain 1.33

Cavalry 2.25
Double Defense 7.34
Firepower 7.32
Salt Marsh 1.331
Sea Invasions 15.5
Terrain Stacking 6.21
Unit Movement 6.1

Med Front [MF] 21.3

Mediterranean Basin 15.1

Sea Basin Control 15.21

Mid East (ME) 21.3

ME Mandates 20.92
ME Rebellion 21.399, 1944.05
ME Uprising 21.398, 1940.09

Minor Powers 20.6

Allied Command Coordination 5.34
Axis Betrayal 20.17
Belligerence 16.31
Cooperation 16.2
Defeat 16.9
Demoralization 16.71
Isolated Minor 11.7, 20.64
Minor Command 20.62
National Supply 10.21, 20.63
Occupation Limits 20.132, 20.53
THQs 5.8
Vichy 20.48

Molotov Pact 16.42, 20.14, 20.58

Border Disputes 16.42
German Unit Restriction 20.14
Soviet Belligerence 20.521
Soviet Mobilization 20.55
Soviet Neutrality 20.51
USSR/39 Territory 20.51

Month 4.1

Advanced Arrival 11.82, 21.321
Diplomatic Events 16.6
Game Continuity 3.3
Peacetime Production 16.32
Reinforcements 11.8
Unit Arrival Codes 2.7
Weather 4.21

Morocco Basing 21.382

Morale, French 20.44, 16.71

Moscow

SHQ Disruption 5.7

Mountain Terrain 1.34

Cavalry 2.25
Double Defense 7.34
Mud Weather 12.3
Paradrop Range 14.22
Sea Invasions 15.52
Terrain Stacking 6.21
Unit Movement 6.1

Mountain Units 2.24

Firepower 7.32, 21.45
FF Reinforcement 20.493
Sea Assaults 15.53, 21.493
Tito 16.732

Movement 6.0

Air Supremacy 13.32
[Area](#) 18.3
Blitz Movement 4.34
Cities 1.4
Clear terrain 1.31
Deploying HQs 4.313, 14.21, 15.51
Engaging 6.31, 18.35
Forest/Hills terrain 1.32
Headquarters [HQ] 2.4, 5.1
Hexes 1.2

Hex Control Effects 8.4

Hexside Limits 6.33
Mobilizing HQs 5.51
Land Movement 6.71
MF Movement 21.35
Marches 18.331
Mountain Terrain 1.34
Movement Phase 4.32
Mud Weather 12.32
NF Movement 21.44

Off Road Movement 21.353
Overstacking 6.22
Paradrop Range 14.22
Rail Movement 9.2, 18.32
Retreats 6.5
Rivers 1.36
Sea Evacuations 15.55
Sea Invasion 15.5
Sea Movement 15.3
Snow Weather 12.43
Stacking Limits 6.2
Straits 1.371
Strategic Movement 6.62, 6.72
Suppression 13.32
Unit Movement 6.1
Weather 4.21

Mud 12.3

Cavalry 2.25
Combat 12.33
Initiative 4.22, 12.7
River Assaults 7.61, 7.62, 12.6
Sea Storms 12.5
Weather Determination 4.21, 12.1

Nation

Belligerence 16.3
Betrayal 16.41
Conquest 16.92
Declarations of War 16.4
Minor Powers 20.6
Production 16.21
Surrender 16.8

National Supply 10.21

Cooperating Powers 16.21
Free French 20.493
French 20.42
Greek 20.73
Italian 20.24
Minor Power 20.63
Neutrality 16.1
Siege 10.21
Straits 10.21
Vichy 20.485

Naval Base 15.1

Naval Supremacy 15.8

Determination 15.81
Effects 15.82
1939.05

INDEX

1940.05

Neutrals 16.1

Area Control 18.11
Air Range 13.11
Alliance Checks 16.51
Allied Betrayal 20.36
Axis Betrayal 20.17
Axis Surprise 20.16
Cooperation 16.2, 20.131
Declarations of War 4.311, 16.4
Minor Powers 20.6
National Supply 10.21
OB Cards 3.21
Peacetime Production 16.32
Sea Control 15.2
Soviet Neutrality 20.51
Supply Lines 10.4
Vichy 20.48
War and Peace 16.0

North Africa Victory 17.61

North Front 21.4

Norway 20.81

Axis Ore Supply 17.2
[Expedition 21.491](#)
Northern Seaway 15.81
Ski Troops 20.8
Surrender/Defection 16.83
Weser [Operation] 21.49, 1939.10

Occupation Limits

Axis Unit Restrictions 20.132
Soviet Unit Restrictions 20.53

Odessa

Sevastopol & Odessa 17.3
1941.02

Oil

Axis Oil Supply [Ploesti] 17.1
Resource Centers 1.5
Soviet Oil Supply 17.8, 20.54, 20.591

Original Attacker/Defender 7.12

Paratroops 14.0

Blitz 14.21, 15.54
Dispersal 14.3
Eben Emael 20.72
[Firepower 2.32](#)
HQs 5.9, 14.21
MF Paradrrops 21.392
NF Paradrrops 21.472
Linkup 14.5
Paradrrops 14.2
Paratroop Grounding 14.6
Paratroop Corps 2.32

Paris

French Supply 20.42
SHQ Disruption 5.7

Passive Player 4.3

Sea Movement Interdiction 15.72

Sea Supply Interdiction 15.73

Peacetime Production 16.32

Finland 20.82
Italian 20.22
Minor Power 20.61
Soviet 20.51

Player Turn 4.3

Ploesti 17.1

1944.03

Phony War 20.43

Poland

Axis-Soviet Borders 20.15
Defeat 16.9, 20.1, 20.43, 20.44, 20.58
French Demoralization 16.71, 20.44
East Poland 20.51 sidebar
Isolated Minor 20.64
Minor HQ Command 20.62
Molotov Pact 16.42, 20.14, 20.58
National Supply 10.21
Phony War 20.43
Soviet Border Garrisons 20.51

Ports 1.44

Areas 18.0
Invasion Command 15.51
Invasion Movement 15.52
National Supply 10.21
Maritime Satellite Surrender 16.81
MF Paradrrops 14.21, 21.392
MF Sea Invasions 15.9, 21.391
NF Paradrrops 21.492
NF Sea Invasions 15.9, 21.47
Overseas Supply 11.731
Port Capacity 15.32
Sea Areas 15.1
Sea Control 15.2
Sea Invasion 15.5
Sea Movement 15.3, 18.34
Sea Moves 15.31
Sea Supply 15.4
Siege Supply 15.41, 15.825
Storm Effects 12.51

Portugal 20.75

[Ambivalence 16.711](#)
Unit Capitulation 7.7

PP Transfers 11.6

East Front 21.24
Med Front 21.37

Production 11.0

Advanced Arrival 11.82, 21.321
Arrival Locations 11.81
Available PPs 11.4
Basic Production 11.31
Beginning Play 22.2
Belligerence 16.31
Building Units 11.7

Cities 1.41, 1.42

Cooperating Powers 16.21

Disbanding 11.84

EF Activation 20.521, 21.22

EF Allocations 11.52

EF Production 21.23

MF Activation 21.322

MF Allocations 21.37

MF Production 11.9 21.37

Minor Power 20.64

NF Production 11.9 21.46

Peacetime PPs 16.32, 20.22, 20.61

PP Allocations 11.5

PP Sources 11.3

PP Transfers 11.6, 21.24

Production Phase 4.11, 11.0

Production Point [PP] 11.1

Rebuilding Cadres 11.72

Replacements 11.71

Resource Centers 1.5

Saved PPs 11.4, 11.2

Shipping Losses 21.371

WF Production 21.13

Railroads 9.0, 1.6

Air Supremacy Effects 13.32
Area Rail Routes 18.3
Area Rail Supply 18.5
Control 9.12
Cooperating Neutrals 16.21
Hex Control Effects 8.4
Minor Production 20.64
Rail Disengagement 9.22
Rail Ferry Straits 9.11
Rail Lines 9.1
Rail Movement 9.2
Rail Supply 9.3, 10.31
Rail/Sea Supply Network 10.32
SHQs 5.7
Strategic Movement 6.62, 6.72
Supply Sources 10.31
THQs 5.8

Red Army 20.53

Unit Restriction 20.34, 20.53
Soviet Steamroller (upgrades) 20.593
Stalin's Purge 20.54
Reforms 20.54, 20.57

Regions 18.0

Combat 18.4
Command 18.2
Command Range 18.22
Control 18.11
Engaging 18.35
Engagement Limits 18.37
HQs 18.21
Marches 18.331
Movement 18.3
Production 18.6

INDEX

- Rail Routes 18.32
- Road Routes 18.33
- Sea Movement 18.34
- Stacking 18.12
- Supply 18.5
- Unit Costs 18.62
- Reinforcements 11.8**
 - Advanced Arrival 11.82, 21.321
 - Acclimatization 21.351, 21.441
 - Advanced Arrival 11.82, 21.321
 - Arrival Codes 2.7
 - Arrival Locations 11.81
 - Available Forces 22.2
 - Delayed Arrival 11.83
 - OB Cards 22.2
- Restriction (units) 16.311**
 - Britain/U.S. 20.34
 - Italy 20.23
 - France 20.41
 - Germany 20.13
 - Minor Powers 16.311
 - USSR 20.51, 20.53
- Resources**
 - Centers 1.5
 - MF** Resource PPs 21.37
 - PP Sources 11.33
- Retreat 6.5**
 - Assault Repulses 7.6
 - Area Retreats 18.36
 - Rearguards 6.51
 - Pursuit Fire 6.52
 - Strategic Movement 6.62
 - Supreme Land Moves 6.61
 - Tito 16.732
- Revolt 16.73**
- Rivers 1.36**
 - Combined Assaults 14.42
 - River Assaults 7.62, 12.61
- Routes (Areas) 18.31**
- Rumania**
 - Balkan Pacification 17.4
 - Bessarabia 20.58, 20.51
 - Restricted Unit Release 17.3
 - Soviet Mobilization 20.55
 - Surrender 16.82
- Russia (see Soviet Union)**
- Satellites [Axis] 16.3**
- Scandinavia 20.8, 21.4**
- Sea Areas 15.1**
 - Invasion Movement 15.52
 - Long-Range Invasions 15.542
 - Ports 1.44
 - Sea Basin Control 15.21
 - Sea Area Control 15.2
 - Sea Interdiction Values 15.71
- Sea Invasions 15.822
- Sea Moves 15.31
- Sea Interdiction 15.7**
 - Naval Supremacy Effect 15.824
 - Values 15.71
 - Sea Movement 15.71
 - Sea Supply 15.72
- Sea Invasions 15.5**
 - Blitz Invasions 15.54
 - Combat Support Range 15.511
 - Invasion HQs 15.51, 5.9
 - Invasion Movement 15.52
 - MF** Sea Invasions 21.391
 - NF** Sea Invasions 21.471
 - Naval Supremacy Effect 15.822
 - Opposed Invasions 15.521
 - Prohibited Terrain 15.52
 - Prohibited Units 15.52
- Sea Assaults 15.53**
 - Prohibited Units 15.53
 - Repulse 15.531
 - Sea Interdiction 15.7
 - Sea Lane 15.4
 - Supply Interdiction 15.73
- Sea Movement 15.3**
 - Area Sea Movement 18.34
 - Naval Supremacy Effect 15.821
 - Port Capacity 15.32
 - Sea Interdiction 15.72
 - SHQ Mobilization 5.73
- Sea Supply 11.731, 15.4**
 - BH Disruption 15.64
 - Area Sea Supply 18.5
- Siege Supply 10.8, 15.41**
- Sea Terrain 1.37**
 - Canals 1.373
 - Shoals 1.372
 - Straits 1.371
- Seasons 3.3**
 - Season Breaks 3.3, 22.2
- Second Front (DE 2F)**
 - Initiative 4.22
 - Demoralization 16.71
- Secure Supply 11.71**
- Sedan 20.42**
 - Belgium 20.72
- Sevastopol**
 - Fortresses 1.45
 - Fortress Combat 7.5
 - Sevastopol & Odessa 17.3
 - Triple Defense 7.35
- Shipping Losses**
 - MF** Production 21.371
 - Naval Supremacy Effect 15.826
 - PP Transfers 11.6
- Siberia**
 - Soviet Supply Origin 10.2, 9.12
- Siege [see Siege Supply]**
- Siege Guns 2.34**
 - Invasion Movement 15.52
- Siege Supply 10.8, 15.41**
 - National Supply 10.21
 - Naval Supremacy Effects 15.41, 15.825
 - Supply Attrition 10.6
- Snow 12.4, 4.21**
 - Axis Winter Paralysis 12.45
 - Combat 12.44
 - Command 12.42
 - [Dietl Disruption 21.43](#)
 - Initiative 4.22, 12.41, 12.7
 - Movement 12.43
 - River Assaults 7.62, 12.6
 - Sea Storms 12.5
 - Weather Determination 12.1
- Soviet Union 20.5**
 - Air Firepower 13.23
 - Allied Betrayal 20.36
 - Annexations 20.58
 - Axis Surprise 20.16, 20.54
 - Axis-Soviet Borders 20.15
 - Beachhead [BH] 15.67
 - Belligerence 16.3, 20.52
 - Border Garrisons 20.51
 - Command & Supply 20.54
 - East Front Production 21.23
 - Forces 20.53
 - Great Patriotic War 20.56
 - Initiative 4.22, 12.7
 - Mobilization 20.55
 - Molotov Pact 16.42, 20.14, 20.58
 - Neutrality 16.1, 20.51
 - Occupation Limits 20.53
 - Oil Supply 20.591
 - Peacetime Cavalry 20.51
 - Peacetime Production 20.51
 - Soviet Emergency 20.561
 - Soviet Steamroller 20.593
 - Strategic Reserve 20.51
 - Supply 20.54, 20.591
 - Territory 20.51
 - Unit Arrival Locations 11.81
 - Unit Restrictions 20.53
 - Winter War 20.57
- Spain 20.74**
 - Minor Command 20.62
 - National Territory 20.74
 - Spanish Volunteers 17.7
 - Surrender 16.81
- SS Units 2.33**
 - Building 11.7
 - Restrictions 21.316, 21.415.

INDEX

Stacking 1.3, 6.21

Deploying HQs 5.21
Marsh terrain 1.33
Mountain terrain 1.34
Mud 12.3
Overstacking 6.22
Snow 12.4

Storms 12.5

EF Weather 12.13
MF Weather 12.12
NF Weather 21.42
Storm Effects 12.51
WF Weather 12.11

Straits 1.371

Rail Ferry Straits 9.11

Strategic Movement 6.6

Between Fronts 6.72
Rail Movement 9.2
Road Movement 21.352, 18.33
Sea Movement 15.3
SHQ Mobilization 5.73
Supreme HQs 5.7
Supreme Moves 6.62
Theater HQs 5.8

Supply 10.0

Area Supply 18.5
Axis Supply 20.12
Axis Ore Supply 17.2
Axis Resource Centers 1.5
Beachhead Supply 11.733, 15.63
Cape Town Basing 21.14, 21.381
Casablanca Basing 21.382
Cooperating Powers 16.21
District Supply 18.52
Fortress Supply 10.7
France 20.42
Free French 20.492, 20.493
Hex Control Effects 8.4
Italy 20.24
MF Basing 21.38
National Supply 10.21, 20.485, 20.63
Neutrality 16.1
Oil Supply 20.54, 20.591
Overseas HQs 11.731
Rail Supply 10.31
Region Supply 18.51
Road Supply 10.33, 11.732
Sea Areas 15.1
Sea Interdiction 15.7
Sea Supply 15.4
Secure Supply 11.71
Siege Supply 10.8, 15.825
Soviet Supply 20.54, 20.591
Storm Effects 12.51
Supply Attrition 10.6
Supply Checks 10.5
Supply Interdiction 15.73

Supply Lines 10.4
Supply Origin 10.2
Supply Phase 4.36
Supply Source 10.3
Supply Status 10.1
Tito Supply 16.732
Vichy Supply 20.48

Surprise Attacks 20.16

Surrender 16.8

Sweden 20.83

Axis Ore Supply 17.2
NF Veterans 21.413
Swedish Compliance 21.492
Ski Troops 20.8

Switzerland 20.76

Temperate Zone [**NF**] 21.4

Tito 2.35

Yugoslavian Revolt 16.732

Triple Defense 7.35

Fortresses 7.5
Fort Units 2.28

Triple Fire [**TF**] 7.32

Tunis Basing 21.385

Turkey 20.91

Allied National Supply 10.21
East Front Activation 21.22
Soviet Emergency 20.561
Istanbul Basing 21.385

Units 2.0

AMPHIBIOUS 2.31
ARMOR 2.21
Arrival Locations 11.81
Building 11.7
Capitulation 7.7, 20.486
CAVALRY 2.25
Desert Maintenance 21.372
Firepower 7.32
FORT 2.28
Fortress Garrisons 20.31, 21.315
HEADQUARTERS [**HQ**] 2.4, 5.1
ID Codes 2.7
Home Guard 20.31, 20.47
INFANTRY 2.23
Labels 2.1
Maginot Line Forts 20.41
MF Aliens 21.314
MF Expeditions 21.313
MF Prohibited Units 21.316
MF Residents 21.311
MF Veterans 21.312
MF Units 21.31
MECHANIZED 2.22
Movement 6.1
NF Aliens 21.414
NF Expeditions 21.412

NF Prohibited Units 21.415

NF Residents 21.411

NF Veterans 21.413

NF Units 21.41

Nationality 2.11

PARATROOPS 2.32, 14.1

Reinforcements 11.8

Replacements 11.71

SHOCK 2.26

Siege Gun 2.34

Spanish Volunteers 17.7

SS 2.33

STATIC 2.27

SUPREME HQs [**SHQs**] 5.7

THEATER HQs [**THQs**] 5.8

Tito 2.35, 16.732

Types 2.2

Volunteers 2.36

US (United States) 20.3

Belligerence 20.32

British/US Forces 20.31

Vichy 20.48

Ambivalence 7.7, 1942.2

Belligerence 20.484

Cooperation 16.2, 20.482

Demoralization 16.71

Forces 20.483

French Armistice 20.46

French Defeat 20.47

FNA (French North Africa) 20.481

National Supply 20.485

Revolt 16.731

Surrender 16.81, 20.487

Territory 20.481

Unit Capitulation 7.7, 20.486

Victory 19.0

3-Way Game Victory 19.5

Allied Victory 19.3

Axis Victory 19.2

[Desert Victory 17.62](#)

Med Front Victory [17.63](#)

[N. Africa Victory 17.61](#)

Victory City 1.412

Weather 12.0

Axis Winter Paralysis 12.45

Command 12.31, 12.42

Deploying HQs 5.21

Determination 12.1

Double Defense 7.34

Dry weather 12.2

EF Weather 12.12, 21.21

HQ Disruption 5.32

Initiative 4.22, 12.7

MF Weather 12.13, 21.33

Movement 6.1, 12.32, 12.43

Mud weather 12.3

NF Weather 21.42

INDEX

Repulse 7.61

River Assaults 7.62, 12.6

Sea Storms 12.5

Snow 12.4

WF Weather 12.11, 21.11

Weser [Operation] 21.493, 1939.10

West Front [WF] 21.1

Winter Paralysis 12.45, 1941.05

Winter War 21.48, 1939.9

Soviet Union 20.57

Withdrawal 16.721

Yugoslavia

Balkan Pacification 17.4

Greater Italy 20.2

Revolt 16.732

Tito 2.35, 16.732

Zones 18.0

Areas 18.0

Combat 18.4

Command 18.2

Districts 18.0

Movement 18.3

Regions 18.0

Supply 18.5

Zones of Control [ZoC] 8.2

INSTRUCTIONS

1. Entries along each month row follow the *Sequence of Play*. Shaded months begin seasons.
2. Fill in **Game Record Sheet** as play progresses. Check off each entry to confirm completion of an item.
3. **Production Phase:** Record current (arrived) PPs per front. Circle for saved, check-off for spent. Prompts are provided for:
 - Basic Production changes ["+5" in Total PPs box].
 - Opportunities to increase | **EF/MF** Allocations "+5 MF" or "+10 EF".
 - Airpower changes (if any) for a specific front.

Tot = total.

Re = # of Reinforcements arriving.
Beachheads are identified "b".

4. **Diplo** = Diplomacy phase.
DE = Diplomatic Events.

Al = Allies Ax = Axis

Prompts are provided for time-sensitive DEs. Circle successes, cross out failures. Record PP effects.

5. Fortnights

Weather: Prompts are provided for possible weather.

D = Dry M = Mud S = Snow

- Alternatives shown when variable. Circle weather result. Record Weather die roll result ["9"] in 2nd box for Storms. • = No Storms possible.

Turns. Prompts provided show order of Player Turns.

A = Allies **X** = Axis **S** = Soviets

Blank spaces indicate variable turn order due to Weather and 2F DE. Determine turn order and record.

- Check off Player-Turns as completed to maintain a positive record of game-time.

6. Notes

- Record PP sources captured/lost (name and PP value).
- Record nations becoming *Belligerent* (with PP values).
- Record Political Events like *Defeats* and/or *Surrenders* (with PP effects).
- Record Strategic Objectives achieved (or lost), Ore Supply, **MF** Victory, Naval Supremacy, etc.

DATE		PRODUCTION / AIRPOWER										DIPLO		FORTNIGHT I						FORTNIGHT II						GAINS/LOSSES (Notes)		
		AXIS PPs					ALLIED PPs					SOV		DEs		Weather			Turns			Weather			Turns			
		Tot	WF	MF	EF	Re	Tot	WF	MF	Re	EF	Re	AI	Ax	WF	EF	1	2	3	WF	EF	1	2	3				
		•	TF	DF	TF	•	•	SF	SF	•	SF	•																
AIRPOWER																												
SEP 39	0	38	•	•	•	24	•	•		55/3						D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •	X	A	S		0	
OCT 39	1				2				1	18	1	PP	PW	D •	M/D	X	A	S	D •	M/D		X	A	S		1		
NOV 39	2	45			2				1	56/3		CL	PW	M/D	M/S				M/D	M/S						2		
DEC 39	3	+0		(+5)	4	+5		(+5)		+0	1	VW		M	S	S	X	A	M	S		S	X	A		3		
JAN 40	4				2	29			2	18		FR		M	S	S	X	A	M	S		S	X	A		4		
FEB 40	5				4							NP		M/D	S	S	X	A	M/D	S		S	X	A		5		
MAR 40	6				2				1			NX	DS	D •	M/S				D •	M/S						6		
APR 40	7				4					1				D •	M	X	A	S	D •	M		X	A	S		7		
MAY 40	8													D •	M/D	X	A	S	D •	M/D		X	A	S		8		
JUN 40	9	+0		(+5)	1	+5		(+5)		+0	1	S1	IX	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •		X	A	S		9		
JUL 40	10					34			hg	18	1	S1	IX	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •		X	A	S		10		
AUG 40	11	70	55	15	1	22	7	15	1			SR	RB	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •		X	A	S		11		
SEP 40	12	78	58								1	SR	RX	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •		X	A	S		12		
OCT 40	13											SR		D •	M/D	X	A	S	D •	M/D		X	A	S		13		
NOV 40	14	92	77		2						1	GR	BX	M/D	M/S				M/D	M/S						14		
DEC 40	15	+0	DF	(+5)	5	+5		(+5)		+6	1	S2		M	S	S	X	A	M	S		S	X	A		15		
JAN 41	16				1	27	7	20		20	1	S2		M	S	S	X	A	M	S		S	X	A		16		
FEB 41	17				2						1	SR		M/D	S	S	X	A	M/D	S		S	X	A		17		
MAR 41	18				5						1	SR		D •	M/S				D •	M/S						18		
APR 41	19				1						2	SR		D •	M	X	A	S	D •	M		X	A	S		19		
MAY 41	20	96			1				1		2	SR	ME	D •	M/D	X	A	S	D •	M/D		X	A	S		20		

EUROFRONT

GAME RECORD SHEET

DATE		PRODUCTION / AIRPOWER										DIPLO		FORTNIGHT I						FORTNIGHT II						GAINS/ LOSSES (Notes)		
		AXIS PPs					ALLIED PPs					SOV		DEs		Weather			Turns			Weather			Turns			
		Tot	WF	MF	EF	Re	Tot	WF	MF	Re	EF	Re	AI	Ax	WF	EF	1	2	3	WF	EF	1	2	3				
JUN 41	21	+0		(+5)	(+10)	3	+5				+6	VF	ME	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •	X	A	S	[FRA /NOR exploited]				
JUL 41	22	96	17	25	54	4	32	7	25		68	VF	HX	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •	X	A	S	22				
AUG 41	23											VF	FL	D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •	X	A	S	23				
SEP 41	24					1								D •	D •	X	A	S	D •	D •	X	A	S	24				
OCT 41	25													D •	M/D	X	A	S	D •	M/D	X	A	S	25				
NOV 41	26										2b			M/D	M/S				M/D	M/S				26				
DEC 41	27	+5		(+5)	DF	2	+10	DF	(+5)		+6 (3)			M	S	S	X	A	M	S	S	X	A	27				
JAN 42	28			30			42	12	30					M	S	S	X	A	M	S	S	X	A	28				
FEB 42	29									1				M/D	S	S	X	A	M/D	S	S	X	A	29				
MAR 42	30													D •	M/S				D •	M/S				30				
APR 42	31					2					2			D •	M	X	A	S	D •	M	X	A	S	31				
MAY 42	32					1					1			D •	M/D	X	A	S	D •	M/D	X	A	S	32				
JUN 42	33	+5		(+5)	(+10)	2	+10		(+5)		+6 1	2F	RS	D •	D •			S	D •	D •			S	[YUGO / GRE exploited]				
JUL 42	34			35		2	52	17	35		1	2F	RS	D •	D •			S	D •	D •			S	34				
AUG 42	35					1						2F	RS	D •	D •			S	D •	D •			S	35				
SEP 42	36					2						2F	RS	D •	D •			S	D •	D •			S	36				
OCT 42	37					2					1b	2F	RS	D •	M/D			S	D •	M/D			S	37				
NOV 42	38					2				2b		2F	RS	M/D	M/S				M/D	M/S				38				
DEC 42	39	+5	SF	(+5)		2	+10		(+5)		+8 DF	2F	RS	M	S	S			M	S	S			39				
JAN 43	40			35		2	62	22	40			2F		M	S	S			M	S	S			40				
FEB 43	41					2						2F		M/D	S	S			M/D	S	S			41				
MAR 43	42					2								D •	M/S				D •	M/S				42				
APR 43	43					6				1				D •	M	A	X	S	D •	M	A	X	S	43				
MAY 43	44					4								D •	M/D	A	X	S	D •	M/D	A	X	S	44				

DATE		PRODUCTION / AIRPOWER										DIPLO		FORTNIGHT I						FORTNIGHT II						GAINS/ LOSSES (Notes)		
		AXIS PPs					ALLIED PPs					Sov		DEs		Weather			Turns			Weather			Turns			
		Tot	WF	MF	EF	Re	Tot	WF	MF	Re	EF	Re	AI	Ax	WF	EF	1	2	3	WF	EF	1	2	3				
JUN 43	45	+5		(+5)	(+10)	6	+10	TF	(+5)		+0			D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
JUL 43	46					3								D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
AUG 43	47					2				1				D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
SEP 43	48					2				1				D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
OCT 43	49									1				D •	M/D	A	X	S	D •	M/D	A	X	S					
NOV 43	50													M/D	M/S				M/D	M/S								
DEC 43	51	+5		(+5)	SF		+10	TF++	(+5)	1b	+0			M	S	S	A	X	M	S	S	A	X					
JAN 44	52					2				1				M	S	S	A	X	M	S	S	A	X					
FEB 44	53					2				2				M/D	S	S	A	X	M/D	S	S	A	X					
MAR 44	54									1b				D •	M/S				D •	M/S								
APR 44	55					2				2				D •	M	A	X	S	D •	M	A	X	S					
MAY 44	56									1				D •	M/D	A	X	S	D •	M/D	A	X	S					
JUN 44	57	+5	ØF	(+5)	(+10)		+10	TF*	(+5)	1	+0	TF		D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
JUL 44	58					1				1				D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
AUG 44	59									2				D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
SEP 44	60									2				D •	D •	A	X	S	D •	D •	A	X	S					
OCT 44	61									1				D •	M/D	A	X	S	D •	M/D	A	X	S					
NOV 44	62									2				M/D	M/S				M/D	M/S								
DEC 44	63	+0		(+5)	Nil	1	+0		(+5)		+0			M	S	S	A	X	M	S	S	A	X					
JAN 45	64													M	S	S	A	X	M	S	S	A	X					
FEB 45	65													M/D	S	S	A	X	M/D	S	S	A	X					
MAR 45	66													D •	M/S				D •	M/S								
APR 45	67													D •	M	A	X	S	D •	M	A	X	S					
MAY 45	68													D •	M/D	A	X	S	D •	M/D	A	X	S					